English: Bible Commentary, Condensed Translation Notes, Translation Notes, Translation Words, Unlocked Literal Bible for Luke

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

A picture containing text, clipart

Description automatically generated

TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

### Introduction to the Gospel of Luke

## Overview

Luke wrote about Jesus and the things he did. He also wanted people to know that Jesus was fully human and fully God. Jesus did the things all people do. That is, he was born, he grew up, he suffered, and he died. However, Luke also wrote Jesus lived a perfect life without sinning while he was on earth. Because Jesus did this, God accepted his death as a sacrifice so that people could be at peace with God.

See: Jesus is God; Sin; Sacrifice; Atone (Atonement)

#### Who was the author of the Gospel of Luke?

Scholars think the author of the Gospel of Luke was a man named Luke. Luke also wrote the book of Acts. Scholars think Luke wrote both books as one book.

The following things are known about the author of this gospel.

1. He did not see many of the things that he wrote about. He wrote what other people saw and told him about.
2. He was well-educated.
3. He knew earlier writings about Jesus and he used them in his gospel.
4. He looked for people who saw the events he wanted to write about.
5. He wrote more than any other person in the New Testament.
6. He was a Gentile.
7. Some scholars think Luke was the physician that Paul wrote about in Colossians 4:14. Other scholars think Paul wrote about a different person named Luke.

See: Gospel; Gentile

#### Who was the audience to whom Luke wrote?

Some scholars think Luke wrote his gospel to a man named Theophilus. Theophilus was thought to be a wealthy person who gave money for Luke to research and write his book. It was normal for writers to address their books to those who helped them with money. Also, scholars think Theophilus was a leader in the Roman government because Luke wrote very respectfully to Theophilus (see: Luke 1:1).

However, other scholars believe “Theophilus” referred to all Christians. His name meant “lover of God” or “friend of God”. In Luke's gospel, this name represented all Christians because all Christians love God and are friends of God.

Whether or not “Theophilus” was a single person or a word for all Christians, Luke tried to make Gentiles understand the things the Jews did and believed.

#### What did Luke write about in this gospel?

##### Prayer

Luke wrote that Jesus prayed and taught people about prayer. Luke was the only gospel that wrote Jesus prayed when the Holy Spirit came down on him at his baptism (see: Luke 3:21.22), when Jesus chose the twelve apostles (see: Luke 6:12-13), and when God changed the appearance of Jesus on a mountain (see: Luke 9:28-29). Luke was also the only gospel that wrote a parable about prayer (see: Luke 18:1-8).

See: Pray (Prayer); Holy Spirit; Baptize (Baptism);Apostle; Gospel; Parable

##### Holy Spirit

Luke wrote about the Holy Spirit when he wrote about John the Baptist and Jesus being born (see: Luke 1:15,35,41; 2:25-35). Luke wrote Jesus “rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit” (see: Luke 10:21). Luke was the only gospel where Jesus talked about the promise of God the Father, which was the promise of the Holy Spirit (see: Luke 24:49).

See: Holy Spirit;Gospel;God the Father

##### Poor People

Luke wrote about how God cared for poor people. When Mary, the mother of Jesus, brought her offering to the temple it was an offering poor people brought (see: Luke 2:24). The other three gospels did not write about this. When Jesus read from Isaiah, he read about taking the good news to poor people (see: Luke 4:18). The other three gospels did not write about this. Luke wrote how Jesus talked about the rich man and the poor man Lazarus (see: Luke 16:19-31), but the other three gospels did not write about it.

See: Temple; Offer (Offering)

##### Women

In the ancient world, people did not often write about what women did. However, Luke wrote about several things women did. God chose Elizabeth to give birth to John the Baptist (see: Luke 1:18-25,57-66). The angel Gabriel told Mary she found favor with God (see: Luke 1:26-38). Mary served God (see: Luke 1:38) and she sang a song of praise to God because God chose her to give birth to Jesus (see: Luke 1:46-55). Jesus made alive again the only son of a widow (see: Luke 7:11-17). A woman anointed the feet of Jesus (see: Luke 7:36-50). Several women served Jesus and the twelve disciples (see:Luke 8:3). Jesus spoke well of Mary, the sister of Martha (see: Luke 10:38-42). Also, Jesus used examples of women when he talked about a lost coin and an unjust judge (see: Luke 15:8-10;18:1-8).

See: Angel; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Anoint (Anointing); Disciple

##### Samaritans

Luke wrote about how Samaritans did things God wanted them to do.

See: Samaria

#### What was the purpose of the Gospel of Luke?

Luke wrote this gospel so that people would know about Jesus and the things he did. Luke wanted people to believe in Jesus so they can be at peace with God. He also wanted them to live in a way that honors God.

## Outline of the Gospel of Luke

1. Luke named whom he wrote to and wrote why he wrote (1:1-4)
2. The birth of Jesus (1:5-2:38)
3. When Jesus was a boy (2:39-52)
4. Jesus’ baptism (3:1-4:13)
5. Jesus in Galilee (4:14-9:50)
6. Jesus traveled to Jerusalem (9:51-19:27)
7. The last week before Jesus died (19:28-23:56)

See: Baptize (Baptism)

## Luke

Chapter 1

1Many have taken on the work of putting together an account of the things that have been accomplished among us,2just as they were passed down to us by those who from the first were eyewitnesses and servants of the word.3So it seemed good to me also, because I have accurately investigated everything from the beginning, to write an orderly account for you, most excellent Theophilus,4so that you might know the certainty of the things you have been taught.

5In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah from the division of Abijah; his wife Elizabeth was also a descendant of Aaron.6They were both righteous before God, walking blamelessly in all the commandments and statutes of the Lord.7But they had no child because Elizabeth was barren, and they were both advanced in their days.

8Now it came about that Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties in the order of his division.9According to the customary way of choosing which priest would serve, he had been chosen by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense.10The whole crowd of people was praying outside at the hour when the incense was burned.11Now an angel of the Lord appeared to him and stood at the right side of the incense altar.12When Zechariah saw him, he was troubled, and fear fell on him.13But the angel said to him, "Do not be afraid, Zechariah, because your prayer has been heard. Your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son. You will call his name John.14You will have joy and gladness, and many will rejoice at his birth.15For he will be great in the sight of the Lord. He must never drink wine or strong drink, and he will be filled with the Holy Spirit from his mother's womb.16Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God.17He will go before the face of the Lord in the spirit and power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous—to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him."

18Zechariah said to the angel, "How can I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days."19The angel answered and said to him, "I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God. I was sent to speak to you, to bring you this good news.20Behold! You will be silent, unable to speak, until the day these things take place. This is because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled at the right time."21Now the people were waiting for Zechariah. They were surprised that he was spending so much time in the temple.22But when he came out, he could not speak to them. They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent.23It came about that when the days of his service were over, he went to his house.

24After these days, his wife Elizabeth conceived and for five months she kept herself hidden. She said,25"This is what the Lord has done for me when he looked at me with favor in order to take away my shame before people."

26In the sixth month, the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city in Galilee named Nazareth,27to a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph, who was a descendant of David, and the virgin's name was Mary.28He came to her and said, "Greetings, you who are highly favored! The Lord is with you."29But she was very confused by his words, and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be.30The angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God.31See, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son. You will call his name 'Jesus.'32He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. The Lord God will give him the throne of his ancestor David.33He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and there will be no end to his kingdom."

34Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not known any man?"

35The angel answered and said to her, "The Holy Spirit will overshadow you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God.36See, your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age. This is the sixth month for her, she who was called barren.37For nothing will be impossible for God."

38Mary said, "See, I am the female servant of the Lord. Let it be for me according to your message." Then the angel left her.

39Then Mary arose in those days and quickly went into the hill country, to a city in Judea.40She went into the house of Zechariah and greeted Elizabeth.41Now it happened that when Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, the baby in her womb jumped, and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit.42She cried out with a loud shout and said, "Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb.43Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?44For see, when the sound of your greeting came to my ears, the baby in my womb jumped for joy.45Blessed is she who believed that there would be a fulfillment of the things that were told her from the Lord."

46Mary said,"My soul praises the Lord,47and my spirit has rejoiced in God my Savior.48For he has lookedat the low condition of his female servant.For see, from now on all generations will call me blessed.49For the Mighty One has done great things for me,and his name is holy.50His mercy lasts from generation to generationfor those who fear him.51He has displayed strength with his arm;he has scattered those who were proudabout the thoughts of their hearts.52He has thrown down princes from their thronesand he has raised up those of low condition.53He has filled the hungry with good things,but the rich he has sent away empty-handed.54He has given help to Israel his servant,so as to remember to show mercy55(as he said to our fathers)to Abraham and his descendants forever."

56Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.

57Now the time had come for Elizabeth to deliver her baby and she gave birth to a son.58Her neighbors and her relatives heard that the Lord had shown his great mercy to her, and they rejoiced with her.

59Now it happened on the eighth day that they came to circumcise the child. They would have called him "Zechariah," after the name of his father.60But his mother answered and said, "No. He will be called John."61They said to her, "There is no one among your relatives who is called by this name."62They made signs to his father as to how he wanted him to be named.63His father asked for a writing tablet and wrote, "His name is John." They all were astonished at this.64Immediately his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed. He spoke and praised God.65Fear came on all who lived around them. All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea.66All who heard them stored them in their hearts, saying, "What then will this child become?" For the hand of the Lord was with him.

67His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied, saying,68"Praised be the Lord, the God of Israel,for he has come to helpand he has accomplished redemption for his people.69He has raised up a horn of salvation for usin the house of his servant David70(as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago),71salvation from our enemiesand from the hand of all who hate us.72He will do this to show mercy to our fathersand to remember his holy covenant,73the oath that he sworeto Abraham our father.74He swore to grant to us that we,having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies,would serve him without fear75in holiness and righteousnessbefore him all our days.76Yes, and you, child,will be called a prophet of the Most High,for you will go before the face of the Lordto prepare his paths,to prepare people for his coming,77to give knowledge of salvation to his peopleby the forgiveness of their sins.78This will happen becauseof the tender mercy of our God,because of which the sunrisefrom on high will come to help us,79to shine on those who sit in darknessand in the shadow of death.He will do this to guide our feetinto the path of peace."

80Now the child grew and became strong in spirit, and he was in the wilderness until the day of his public appearance to Israel.

### Luke 1 Commentary

## 1:1-4

#### How did Luke begin his gospel?

[1:1, 1:2, 1:3, 1:4]

The first four verses of the Gospel of Luke introduce his gospel. Luke began his gospel in the same way that other people in ancient times began to write their own books. Like them, Luke said why he wrote his gospel, and how he wrote it.

See: Gospel

#### Who was Theophilus?

[1:3]

Luke wrote his gospel to someone named Theophilus. Luke called him “most excellent,” so he showed that he respected him. Some scholars think that Theophilus was a government official. Some scholars have said that his name is perhaps a metaphor, because his name means “lover of God” or “friend of God.” These scholars believe that his name showed that Luke wrote his gospel to anyone who wanted to love God or be a friend of God.

Luke did not call Theophilus a brother, so some scholars think that he was not a Christian. However, someone had taught Theophilus about Jesus. Perhaps Luke considered him to be in the group of Christians whom he called “us” in verses 1-2. Scholars do not know anything else about Theophilus.

See: Name

Folktales are stories that people tell to one another. They are passed down from parents to children, even though they know that these stories did not actually happen. How did Luke describe the events that actually happen? Luke spoke about things that actually happened. These things did not come from folktales. People could find out that the things that Luke wrote about were true because they did happen. People who saw these things happen told other people about them. It was from these people, the ones who saw these things, that Luke learned much about what Jesus did.

In ancient times, when Jews thought about why some nations became strong, and other nations became weak, they wanted to know what God did to make these things happen. The Gentiles thought in the same way. They were always thinking about what their gods made happen.

However, it is not the same today. Today, if someone says that God makes things happen in the world, many people think that that person is not telling the truth. However, the men who wrote the Old Testament wrote what the Holy Spirit told them to write. They showed that God did many things for the Israelites in ancient times.

When Luke wrote his gospel, he was thinking in the same way. He told about the wonderful things that God did. Luke wrote many things everywhere in his gospel, and in Acts, about what the Holy Spirit did.

See: Acts 1:1-4

#### How did Luke write?

[1:3, 1:4]

Luke wrote “order”(καθεξῆς/g2517) in verse three in order to tell how he wrote his gospel. Perhaps he wanted to say that he thought much about the things he wrote about.

Perhaps Luke wanted to say that he wrote first about the things that happened first. However, sometimes he wrote about later things first. For example, in 3:19-20, Luke wrote about why John the Baptist went into prison. He wrote this before he wrote that John baptized Jesus. However, John went into prison some time after he baptized Jesus.

See: Luke 3:19-20; Acts 18:24-28; 19:1-7

## 1:5-25

#### When was John the Baptist born?

[1:5]

Luke said that John was born when Herod was king of Judea. The Old Testament writers also said who was king when something happened. In this way, Luke wrote as the Old Testament writers wrote (see: Isaiah 1:1).

King Herod ruled Judea for the Romans between the years 40 B.C. and 4 or 5 B.C. Scholars think that he was close to dying when the first things that Luke wrote about happened.

The Jews knew that Herod was very cruel. He murdered many people. But he did rebuild the Jewish temple. Luke begins his story by telling about something that happened in this temple.

See: Isaiah 1:1

See: King Herod

#### What did Zechariah’s and Elizabeth’s names mean?

[1:5]

Zechariah’s name meant, “The Lord remembers.” His wife Elizabeth’s name meant, “My God is an oath or a promise.” This was because they had no children, and they were too old to have any. Why did God punish Zechariah? God punished Zechariah for not thinking that the angel Gabriel was telling him the truth (see: Luke 1:20). Zechariah should have remembered that God healed many women in the Old Testament who could not have children.

Instead, Zechariah was not able to speak until God made what he told Gabriel happen. Since Elizabeth was unable to have children, people thought that God had punished her and humiliated her. However, this did not happen because she had sinned.

See: Romans 3:21-31

See: Angel; Gospel; Sin

#### Why did Luke write Zechariah and Elizabeth were righteous and blameless?

[1:6]

Luke wrote Zechariah and Elizabeth “lived in a way that honored God or lived the right way”(δίκαιος/g1342) and “innocent, blameless, or obeyed the rules”(ἄμεμπτος/g0273). Luke meant that Zechariah and Elizabeth honored God completely and did their best to obey him. Luke wanted his readers to think that God was pleased with Zechariah and Elizabeth because they did so.

Luke also wrote about people who lived in a way that honored God in verse seventeen. He said that John the Baptist helped many people to become wise like other people who honor God.

However, there were many other Jews who did not know God’s law and who did not care about obeying it. These Jews were the people that the Pharisees called “sinners or people who sinned”(ἁμαρτωλός/g0268). The Pharisees said that Jesus was a “sinner” because they thought that he did not obey the law, even though he did (see: John 9:24).

However, when the Apostle Paul wrote about people who lived rightly and sinners, he meant something different. Paul wanted to show everyone that they have all sinned, and that they needed for Jesus Christ to die for them. He showed that God considers righteous anyone who believes in Jesus, even if that person still sins (see: Romans 3:21-31).

See: Righteous (Righteousness); Blameless; Pharisees; Sin

#### Why did Luke write about the Jewish temple?

[1:9]

About one thousand years before Jesus lived, King David ordered the priests to serve in different divisions or groups at the temple. After the Jews returned to Jerusalem from Babylon and rebuilt the temple, the priests served in these divisions again.

Zechariah belonged to the division of Abijah. The priests in each division served at the temple two weeks every year. There were about 18,000 priests, so not all priests got the chance to serve at the temple even one time their whole life. The leaders of the priests cast lots to choose which priests would burn incense at the morning and evening sacrifice that happened each day.

Luke began telling about what happened before Jesus was born. He began in this chapter by telling about what Zechariah the priest saw in the temple. Luke ended the next chapter by writing about what Jesus did in the temple when he was twelve years old. It is in this way that words about the temple begin and end this part of Luke’s gospel.

See: 1 Chronicles 24

See: Temple

#### What did John the Baptist succeed in doing by serving God?

[1:16, 1:17]

John the Baptist had to get the people ready to receive the Messiah. He did this by telling them to repent because they sinned.

Gabriel repeated some words the prophet Malachi wrote (see: Malachi 4:6). These words were about bringing the fathers’ hearts back to their children. This was a prophecy about John the Baptist. Perhaps Luke was also thinking about what Malachi said right after that, and to bring back “the heart of the children to their fathers.” When people “repent”(μετανοέω/g3340), fathers begin to love their children again, and children love their fathers.

Malachi also said that if this did not happen, God would curse the land of Israel. However, Gabriel did not say anything about this. So perhaps Gabriel was thinking that after the people “repented”, God would do for Israel everything he had promised to do in his covenant with Israel.

See: Serve; Repent (Repentance); Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Curse; Covenant

#### How did Zechariah’s son come with the spirit and power of Elijah?

[1:17]

Some scholars note that about eight hundred years earlier, some prophets said Elisha also had the spirit of Elijah because Elisha did powerful miracles like the ones that Elijah did (see: 2 Kings 2:15). This meant that Elisha did his work in the way that Elijah had done his. God caused Elisha to continue to serve him as Elijah had done. Much later, God caused John the Baptist to do the same kind of work as Elijah. This is what Malachi said would happen (see: Malachi 4:5-6).

Later in this chapter, when the angel told Mary that she would have a son (see: Luke 1:35), the angel said that the Holy Spirit and God’s power would come upon her. Also, in Luke 4:14, Luke said that Jesus came out of the wilderness with the power of the Holy Spirit.

In verse fifteen, Luke said that the Holy Spirit would fill John even before he was born. Here in verse seventeen, when the angel told Zechariah that John the Baptist would come in the spirit and power of Elijah, perhaps the angel was talking about the Holy Spirit. However, most scholars think that the angel was saying that John would think and act in the same way that Elijah had done. This is how John would serve God.

See: Filling of the Holy Spirit

#### Why did Elizabeth hide herself for five months?

[1:24]

When Zechariah and Elizabeth returned to their house in Judea, Elizabeth decided to stay in her house for five months without coming out. Scholars give reasons for this.

1. She was afraid of a having a miscarriage.
2. She was afraid people would not believe she was really pregnant, so she wanted to wait until everyone was able to see she was pregnant.
3. She wanted to pray.
4. She wanted to follow her husband’s example of not spreading this good news.
5. She wanted to be sure that Mary would be the first person to know she was pregnant.

See Map: Judea

## 1:26-38

#### How the angel Gabriel greet Mary?

[1:28]

Most scholars believe the angel Gabriel greeted Mary in a way that the Jews usually greeted each other (see: Luke 1:28). They think the angel said that God favored Mary. This was why he chose her to bear the baby Jesus and to raise him. These scholars also say that in the Old Testament, some people greeted other people like this. When they greeted a person like this, they meant that God had chosen this person to do something very good for him.

Fewer scholars think the angel meant that Mary was able to show favor to other people and help them in this way. These scholars think this because of an old translation of scripture that said Mary is ‘full of grace.’ These scholars also believe that Mary never sinned in her whole life.

See: Exodus 33:16; Proverbs 12:2

See: Grace; Old Testament (Law and Prophets)

See Map: Galilee

**Advice to Translators**: Translate “the house of Jacob” as you did in your local version of the gospel of Luke.

#### How will Jesus make come true what God had promised King David that he would do?

[1:32]

The angel Gabriel described Jesus, then he said what Jesus would do (see: Luke 1:32-33). Jesus would become king and rule forever over Israel, the “house of Jacob.” This is what God said he would make happen to King David. He made this happen by means of Jesus (see: 2 Samuel 7:14).

However, some scholars think that God has now made these things happen. They say that he made these things happen when Jesus was born. This is because Jesus began to rule over the hearts of those who believed in him.

Other scholars think that God will make these things happen when Jesus returns to earth. They say that this will happen when Jesus becomes king.

Still other scholars say that both of these things are true. They think that God made some of these things happen when Jesus was born, and that God will make the rest of them happen when Jesus comes back to earth.

**Advice to Translators**: Translate “the son of the Most High” here as you did in your local version of the gospel of Luke.

The angel Gabriel called Jesus “the Son of the Most High.” This shows that Jesus, the Messiah who is a descendant of King David, is also God. It was God who gave King David the power to rule over Israel. But after the Babylonians took the Jews to their own country as prisoners, the Israelites never had a king again. However, the Israelites will once again prosper because Jesus, a descendant of King David, will rule over them.

In the Old Testament, the Israelites had many kings, one after another. They were descendants of King David. But now Jesus the Messiah, also a descendant of David, will rule forever.

#### Why did Mary have to be a virgin when she became pregnant?

[1:34]

It was necessary for Mary to be a virgin when she became pregnant with Jesus. This meant that God was Jesus’ father, not any man. God was Jesus’ father, so Jesus was born without wanting to sin in any way.

When God created Adam and Eve, they did not sin at first, either. God was Jesus’ father, so when Mary gave birth to Jesus, Jesus did not sin. However, after Adam and Eve sinned for the first time, all people have been born wanting to sin. All men and women pass this desire on to their children. Every person who was born after Adam, God considered to be guilty of sin because they were born wanting to sin. When a person wants to sin, this is wrong and it is a sin. But God was Jesus’ father, so Jesus never sinned, and He was not born wanting to sin. Therefore, God did not consider Jesus guilty of wanting to sin.

See: Isaiah 7:14; Psalm 51:5; 71:6; Romans 5:12

See: Virgin; Sinful Nature

#### Did God sleep with Mary?

[1:35]

The Holy Spirit came upon Mary to make her pregnant with Jesus. But when God gave Mary this baby, he did not sleep with her.

Jesus, the Son of God, has always been the son of God the Father. When Mary gave birth to Jesus, this was the same Son of God, but he became a human being when Mary became pregnant with him. But he did not stop being God. This is why Jesus is called the “God-Man,” that is, the man who is also God, and God who is also man. It is because he is human, even though he is also God.

See: Incarnation; Son of God

#### Mary asked Gabriel a different question from what Zechariah asked him. How was it different?

[1:34, 1:38]

Luke wrote that both Mary and Zechariah asked the angel Gabriel a question. However, Luke showed that they thought differently. Zechariah wanted Gabriel to do something that would make him think he was saying the truth (see: Luke 1:18). This was because Zechariah did not believe Gabriel. But Luke made his readers know that Mary believed what Gabriel told her (see: Luke 1:38). Also, Mary’s cousin Elizabeth knew that Mary had believed what Gabriel said to her (see: Luke 1:45). Mary even called herself a servant of God, ready to do anything that God commanded her to do (see: Luke 1:20).

## 1:39-45

#### How was Mary the mother of Elizabeth’s “Lord” in Luke 1:43?

[1:43]

Elizabeth called Mary the mother of my “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). This word can mean “master” or “God.” Some scholars think that Elizabeth knew that Mary’s baby would be God because God was referred to as the “Lord.” However, other scholars think that Elizabeth called the baby my “Lord” because she knew that the baby would become someone very great. So when she said “my Lord,” she was showing respect for the baby.

In some places the New Testament called Mary the mother of Jesus (see: John 2:1). Today, some people call Mary the mother of God. However, Mary is not as great as Jesus.

See: Love

See Map: Judah

## 1:46-56

#### What was Mary’s Song?

[1:46]

This section of poetry is called “Mary’s Song.” After Elizabeth greeted Mary, Mary praised God with this song. Mary knew the Old Testament, and during her journey of two or three days to visit Elizabeth, Mary probably thought about people in the Old Testament whom God had helped, and people to whom God had sent angels.

In her song, Mary repeated words from two Psalms. She was probably thinking about Hannah, whom God enabled to have a son, and also about how God had brought the Israelites out of Egypt. In the first part of her song, Mary sang about herself. In the second part, she sang about Israel. This song shows that Mary was thinking much about being a servant of God, giving him honor, and about God giving her more than she deserved.

See: Psalms 103:17; 107:9; 1 Samuel 2:1-10; Exodus 6:6

#### Why did Mary call herself “a low condition”?

[1:48]

Mary said that she was a humble servant of God. She knew that she was not great. She belonged to the village of Nazareth, a place that no one in the Old Testament even spoke about. But she said that many, many people would come to honor her because she obeyed God. Mary was thinking of Psalm 103:17. She was not thinking about all Jewish people who were not yet born, but of all the Christians everywhere in the world who would later honor her.

See Map: Nazareth

**Advice to Translators**: Everything in Greek in these verses that Mary said seemed to be about things that God had already done. However, many translations make it seem that God is now doing these things, or that he will do them in the future. Translators must decide if they want to use this entry or not.

#### Mary talked as if God had already had mercy on Israel. Why did she talk this way?

[1:50]

In verses 51-55 (see: Luke 1:51-55) Mary said that God had already done all these things for Israel. However, she meant that God was going to do them, not that he had already done them.

In the Old Testament, prophets often spoke about what would happen later as if it had already happened. They thought that those things were certain to happen, so they spoke of them as if they had happened. Mary said that God would one day defeat all of Israel’s enemies and set the nation free from those who were ruling over it.

## 1:57-66

#### How did people in Israel choose what names to give to their children?

[1:59]

Israelite parents usually named their children when they were born. Usually these were names that others in their family had, or they gave certain names because of something that happened when they were born (see: Genesis 29:32-35). Sometimes they waited one week after the babies were born (see: 2 Samuel 12; Luke 2:21). God also changed Abram’s name when he was circumcised (see: Genesis 17).

Zechariah and Elizabeth waited one week to name their child. They named him when he was circumcised. They surprised people by giving him a name that was different from the names of all the other people in their own family. In this way, they helped them to know that God was going to make this boy do great things.

The angel Gabriel had told Zechariah (see: Luke 1:20) that he must name the boy “John,” which means, “the Lord has mercy.” When Zechariah began to speak and praise God, this also made what the angel had said to him come true.

See: Circumcise (Circumcision)

## 1:67-79

#### What does Luke mean by being “filled with the Holy Spirit”?

[1:67]

The Gospel of Luke is the only gospel with the words “‘filled’”(πίμπλημι/g4130) with the Holy Spirit.” Luke almost always wrote “fill” when he wrote about the Holy Spirit coming on people. He never shortened “Holy Spirit” to “Spirit” when using “fill”.

In this chapter, many people were “filled” with the Holy Spirit. Gabriel said that the Spirit is holy and would give John the power to serve God (see: Luke 1:15,17). For Elizabeth and Zechariah, when the Holy Spirit filled Elizabeth, she blessed Mary and Mary’s child right away. When the Spirit filled Zechariah, right away he praised God and said what God would do for Israel.

Luke used different words to tell how the Holy Spirit would come upon Mary. This was probably because she was going to bear the baby Jesus, something that no one else would ever do. When Luke said this, he called the Holy Spirit the power from the “Most High” God (see: Luke 1:35). When the Holy Spirit filled people, one thing most of them did was immediately say things that the Spirit enabled them to say.

See: Acts 13:52

**Advice to Translators**: Some versions use ideas different from “filled with the Holy Spirit.” Translators should choose what ideas in this entry to translate.

#### What was Zechariah’s prophecy?

[1:68]

This poetic section is called “Zechariah’s prophecy.” In this section, Zechariah answered the question that the people asked in verse 66 (see: Luke 1:66). Zechariah was a priest, so he knew the Old Testament. During the time that he could not speak, he was probably thinking about things that people in the Old Testament had wrote.

He repeated some words from a psalm (see: Psalm 106:10), and from what the prophets Malachi (see: Malachi 3:1) and Isaiah (see: Isaiah 9:2) had written. He was also thinking about things that other people in the Old Testament had said.

Zechariah spoke two kinds of things. In the first part, he spoke about the Messiah. He did this when he spoke about the family of King David.

In the second part, Zechariah began talking to his newborn son about how he would serve God. Zechariah spoke much about how God was helping the Israelites, how God was giving them more than they deserved and how God would rescue them from their enemies.

See: Priest (Priesthood)

#### How did Zechariah think that God will save people?

[1:71]

Some scholars say that Zechariah spoke about how God would rescue Israel from its enemies in the first part of his song. They say that then he spoke in the second part about how God would rescue the Israelites by forgiving their sins.

However, if a person thinks about everything together that Zechariah said, then it is easier to understand Zechariah’s song. In verse 71, Zechariah repeated words from Psalm 106:10. Those words were about the time when God rescued the Israelites from the people of Egypt. When Zechariah talked about “the ‘horn’(κέρας/g2768) of salvation” in verse 69, he was thinking about Psalm 132:17. There “horn of salvation” meant the power of King David, who defeated the enemies of Israel. In verses 72-74, Zechariah talked about the covenant that God had made with Abraham, the ancestor of the Israelites. In that covenant, God promised Abraham that he would defeat Israel’s enemies and rescue the Israelites so Israel could worship him.

In the second part of his prophecy, Zechariah stopped speaking about what God did for Israel in the past. He began speaking about what the Messiah was going to do, and about what his own son John would do to get the people ready to believe in the Messiah.

Zechariah was no longer speaking about Israel’s enemies. Now he was saying that God would forgive the Israelites and make them live in peace (see: 1:78-79). Some scholars also say that Zechariah was thinking that Jesus would heal people and rescue them from evil spirits.

See: Covenant; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

## 1:80

#### How did John the Baptist grow up “in spirit”?

[1:80]

Most scholars think when Luke wrote “in spirit,” he meant John’s mind and heart. However, some scholars think that Luke was talking about the Holy Spirit. Perhaps Luke meant both at the same time (see: Ephesians 3:16). Where did John the Baptist grow up? John the Baptist was in the wilderness until he began to preach to the Israelites, so some scholars think he may have been among some more radical religious people. Other scholars do not think he did this. This is because these radical, religious people rejected the temple and its priests. But John’s family had priests who served in the temple. Luke did not say what part of the wilderness John lived in.

See: Zeal (Zealous, Zealot)

#### Luke 1:1

##### of the things that have been accomplished among us

"about those events that have happened among us"

#### Luke 1:2

##### were eyewitnesses and servants of the word

"saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

#### Luke 1:3

##### I have accurately investigated

"I have carefully researched"

##### most excellent Theophilus

This phrase should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to put this greeting at the beginning of verse 1 and say, "To the most honorable Theophilus" or "Dear most noble Theophilus."

#### Luke 1:5

##### In the days of Herod king of Judea

"When King Herod ruled over Judea"

##### from the division of Abijah

"from the group of priests who were descendants of Abijah." All of the priests were descendants of Aaron.

#### Luke 1:6

##### before God

"in God's sight" or "in God's judgment"

##### all the commandments and statutes of the Lord

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

#### Luke 1:7

##### they were both advanced in their days

"they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

#### Luke 1:8

##### Now it came about that Zechariah

This phrase shows that Luke is starting to tell what happened to Zechariah. Alternate translation: "Now it happened that Zechariah" or "One day Zechariah"

##### Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties

"Zechariah was in God's temple, doing the work of a priest"

##### in the order of his division

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

#### Luke 1:9

##### the customary way

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

##### he had been chosen by lot

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

#### Luke 1:11

##### Now

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

##### appeared to him

"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah"

#### Luke 1:12

##### When Zechariah saw him

"When Zechariah saw the angel"

##### and fear fell on him

and felt afraid

#### Luke 1:13

##### your prayer has been heard

"God has heard your prayer"

##### will bear you a son

"will have a son for you" or "will give birth to your son"

#### Luke 1:14

##### at his birth

"because of his birth"

#### Luke 1:15

##### he will be great in the sight of the Lord

"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

##### he will be filled with the Holy Spirit

"he will be full of the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him"

##### from his mother's womb

"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

#### Luke 1:16

##### Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God

"He will turn many of the descendants of Israel to the Lord their God" or "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

#### Luke 1:17

##### He will go before the face of the Lord

"He will go before the Lord" or "He will go ahead of the Lord"

##### in the spirit and power of Elijah

"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word you use does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

##### to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children

"to persuade fathers to care about their children again" or "to cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"

##### and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous

"and to persuade disobedient people to accept the wisdom of righteous people"

##### to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him

"to make the people ready for the Lord" or "to prepare the people for the Lord"

#### Luke 1:18

##### How can I know this?

"How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?" or "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"

#### Luke 1:19

##### I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God

“I am Gabriel. I stand in God’s presence.” This statement shows that Gabriel was important and had authority from God.

##### I was sent to speak to you

"God sent me to speak to you"

#### Luke 1:20

##### Behold

"Pay attention"

##### you did not believe my words

"you did not believe what I said"

#### Luke 1:21

##### Now

This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: "While that was happening" or "Meanwhile"

#### Luke 1:23

##### It came about that when

This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's time of service at the temple ended. Alternate translation: "When"

##### he went to his house

Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

#### Luke 1:24

##### kept herself hidden

"did not leave her house"

#### Luke 1:25

##### This is what the Lord has done for me

This refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

##### he looked at me with favor

"he showed me favor" or "he regarded me kindly" or "he was kind to me"

##### my shame

"the shame I felt." She felt ashamed because she was not able to have children.

#### Luke 1:26

##### In the sixth month

"in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy"

##### the angel Gabriel was sent from God

"God told the angel Gabriel to go"

#### Luke 1:27

##### a virgin engaged to ... Joseph

Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Joseph and Mary had not had sexual relations, but Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.

#### Luke 1:28

##### He came to her

"The angel came to Mary"

##### Greetings

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

##### you who are highly favored!

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

#### Luke 1:29

##### she was very confused by his words and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

#### Luke 1:30

##### you have found favor with God

"God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

#### Luke 1:31

##### you will conceive in your womb

"you will become pregnant"

#### Luke 1:32

##### and will be called

"and his title will be"

##### the Son of the Most High

This refers to the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the Most High

“The Most High” is a title for God. It means that God is greater or more powerful than everyone else. Alternate translation: “the Greatest One”

##### give him the throne of his ancestor David

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

#### Luke 1:33

##### the house of Jacob

"Jacob's descendants"

##### there will be no end to his kingdom

"his kingdom will never end"

#### Luke 1:34

##### How will this happen

Mary did not understand how it could happen, but she did not doubt that it would happen.

##### I have not known any man

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

#### Luke 1:35

##### The Holy Spirit will overshadow you

"The Holy Spirit will cover you like a shadow." God's Spirit would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

##### So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God

"So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God" or "So the holy one who will be born will have the title Son of God"

#### Luke 1:36

##### your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age

"your relative Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son, even though she is very old" or "Your relative Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son." Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old.

##### the sixth month for her

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

#### Luke 1:37

##### nothing will be impossible for God

"everything is possible for God" or "God can do anything"

#### Luke 1:38

##### I am the female servant of the Lord

"I am the Lord's servant." This shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

##### Let it be for me according to your message

"Let this happen to me, according to your message" or "May what you have said happen to me"

#### Luke 1:39

##### Mary arose

"Mary got ready" or "Mary started out"

##### the hill country

"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

#### Luke 1:41

##### the baby in her womb jumped

"the baby in Elizabeth's womb moved suddenly"

#### Luke 1:42

##### cried out with a loud shout and said

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to show how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

##### Blessed are you among women

"You are blessed more than any other woman"

##### the fruit of your womb

"the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

#### Luke 1:43

##### Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

Elizabeth was surprised and very happy. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

##### the mother of my Lord

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

#### Luke 1:44

##### when the sound of your greeting came to my ears

"when I heard the sound of your greeting"

##### jumped for joy

"moved suddenly with joy" or "rolled over because he was so happy"

#### Luke 1:45

##### Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told you from the Lord"

##### Blessed is she who believed

"She is blessed because she believed" or "The Lord has blessed her because she believed"

##### there would be a fulfillment of the things that were told her from the Lord

"the things that were told her from the Lord would actually happen" or "the Lord's message to her would come true"

#### Luke 1:46

##### My soul praises

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

#### Luke 1:47

##### my spirit has rejoiced

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

##### God my Savior

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

#### Luke 1:48

##### has looked at

"has looked at with concern" or "has cared about"

##### the low condition of his female servant

"the humble condition of his servant" or "his lowly servant" or "his unimportant servant"

##### from now on

"now and in the future"

##### all generations

"people in all generations"

#### Luke 1:49

##### the Mighty One has done great things

"God, the Powerful One, has done great things"

##### his name is holy

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God. Alternate translation: "he is holy"

#### Luke 1:50

##### from generation to generation

"through all generations" or "to people in every time period"

#### Luke 1:51

##### He has displayed strength with his arm

"He has shown that he is very powerful" or "He has shown his power by what he has done"

##### those who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts

"those who were proud in their thoughts" or "those who thought proudly in their hearts"

#### Luke 1:52

##### He has thrown down princes from their thrones

"He has taken away the authority of princes" or "He has made rulers stop ruling"

##### he has raised up those of low condition

"he has has made lowly people important" or "has given honor to humble people"

#### Luke 1:53

##### He has filled the hungry with good things

"He has given good food to hungry people" or "He has given poor people good things"

#### Luke 1:54

##### Israel his servant

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it could be translated as "his servant, the nation of Israel" or "Israel, his servants."

##### so as to remember to show mercy

Here "remember" represents doing what he promised. Alternate translation: "by remembering to show mercy" or "by continuing to show mercy"

#### Luke 1:55

##### as he said to our fathers

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do" or "because he promised our ancestors he would be merciful"

##### his descendants

"Abraham's descendants"

#### Luke 1:57

##### to deliver her baby

"to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 1:58

##### had shown his great mercy to her

"had been very kind to her"

#### Luke 1:59

##### on the eighth day

"on the eighth day of the baby's life"

##### they came to circumcise the child

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

##### after the name of his father

"his father's name" or "like his father"

#### Luke 1:61

##### who his called by this name

"who has that name"

#### Luke 1:62

##### They made signs to his father as to how he wanted him to be named

"They motioned to the baby's father to ask what name he wanted to give to the baby"

#### Luke 1:63

##### a writing tablet

"something on which to write"

##### astonished

greatly surprised or amazed

#### Luke 1:64

##### his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed

"God opened his mouth and freed his tongue" or "he was able to speak again"

#### Luke 1:65

##### Fear came on all who lived around them

"All who lived around them became afraid" or "All who lived around them were in awe of God"

##### All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea

"All these matters were spoken about throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People talked about all these events throughout the hill country of Judea "

#### Luke 1:66

##### stored them in their hearts

"thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"

##### What then will this child become?

Possible meanings are "What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" or "What a great man this child will become!"

##### the hand of the Lord was with him

The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"

#### Luke 1:67

##### His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit

See how you translated "filled with the Holy Spirit" in 1:15 and 1:41.

##### prophesied, saying

"prophesied by saying" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"

#### Luke 1:68

##### the God of Israel

"the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom the people of Israel worship"

#### Luke 1:69

##### He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

An animal's horn is a symbol of the animal's power to defend itself. The Bible often calls a powerful person a horn. Here, to raise up someone means to bring him into existence or to enable him to act. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone in the house of his servant David who has power to save us"

##### in the house of his servant David

David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"

#### Luke 1:70

##### as he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "as he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"

#### Luke 1:71

##### salvation from our enemies

"who will save us from our enemies" or "He will save us from our enemies"

##### from the hand of all who hate us

"from the power of all who hate us" or "from the control of all who hate us"

#### Luke 1:72

##### to show mercy to our fathers

"to be merciful to our ancestors"

##### to remember his holy covenant

"to fulfill his holy covenant" or "to do what he said in his holy covenant he would do"

#### Luke 1:74

##### He swore to grant to us that we ... would serve him without fear

"He swore to make it possible for us ... to serve him without being afraid of our enemies"

##### to grant to us that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear

"to rescue us from the control of our enemies and to make it possible for us to serve him without fear"

#### Luke 1:75

##### in holiness and righteousness

Possible meanings are "doing what is holy and righteous" or "being holy and righteous."

##### before him

"in his presence" or "in his sight"

#### Luke 1:76

##### you, child, will be called a prophet

"as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet." Zechariah was speaking to his son, John.

##### of the Most High

"who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

##### will go before the face of the Lord

See how you translated a similar phrase in 1:17.

#### Luke 1:77

##### to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins

"to teach God's people about salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach God's people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

#### Luke 1:78

##### because of the tender mercy of our God

"because our God is compassionate and merciful"

##### the sunrise from on high

"the Savior, who is like the sunrise, will come from heaven"

#### Luke 1:79

##### to shine on those

"to give spiritual light to those"

##### those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death

Darkness can represent sin, separation from God, and the lack of spiritual truth. The shadow of death represents the threat of death. Alternate translation: "those who are in spiritual darkness and are in danger of dying"

##### to guide our feet into the path of peace

"to guide us into the path of peace" or "to teach us how to live at peace with God"

#### Luke 1:80

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of John's ministry as an adult.

##### became strong in spirit

"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

##### was in the wilderness

"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

##### until the day of his public appearance to Israel

"when he began to preach in public to Israel"

Chapter 2

1Now in those days, it came about that Caesar Augustus sent out a decree ordering that a census be taken of all the people living in the world.2This was the first census made while Quirinius was governor of Syria.3So everyone went to his own city to be registered for the census.4Joseph also went up from Galilee, from the city of Nazareth, to Judea, to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem, because he was of the house and family line of David.5He went there to register along with Mary, who was engaged to him and was pregnant.6Now it came about that while they were there, the time came for her to deliver her baby.7She gave birth to a son, her firstborn child, and she wrapped him in long strips of cloth and laid him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.

8There were shepherds in that region who were staying in the fields, guarding their flock at night.9An angel of the Lord appeared to them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were filled with great fear.10Then the angel said to them, "Do not be afraid, because I bring you good news that will bring great joy to all the people.11Today a Savior was born for you in the city of David! He is Christ the Lord!12This is the sign that will be given to you: You will find a baby wrapped in strips of cloth and lying in a manger."13Suddenly there was together with the angel a great multitude from heaven, praising God and saying,

14"Glory to God in the highest,and may there be peace on earthamong people with whom he is pleased."[1](#footnote-target-1)

15It came about that when the angels had gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us."16They hurried there and found Mary, Joseph, and the baby, who was lying in a manger.17After they had seen him, they made known what had been said to them about this child.18All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds.19But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.20The shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for everything that they had heard and seen, just as it had been spoken to them.

21When it was the end of the eighth day, when he was circumcised, he was named Jesus, the name he had been given by the angel before he was conceived in the womb.

22When the required number of days for their purification had passed, according to the law of Moses, they brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord.23As it is written in the law of the Lord, "Every male who opens the womb will be set apart to the Lord."24So they offered a sacrifice according to what was said in the law of the Lord, "a pair of doves or two young pigeons."25Behold, there was a man in Jerusalem whose name was Simeon, and this man was righteous and devout. He was waiting for the consolation of Israel, and the Holy Spirit was upon him.26It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ.27Led by the Spirit, Simeon came into the temple. When the parents brought in the infant Jesus, to do for him according to the custom of the law,28he took him into his arms and praised God, and he said,

29"Now let your servant depart in peace, Lord,according to your word.30For my eyes have seen your salvation,31which you have prepared in the presence of all peoples:32A light for revelation to the Gentilesand glory to your people Israel."

33His father and mother[2](#footnote-target-2)were amazed at what was said about him.34Simeon blessed them and said to Mary his mother, "Behold, this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel and for a sign that is rejected—35and a sword will pierce your own soul—so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed."

36A prophetess named Anna was there. She was the daughter of Phanuel from the tribe of Asher. She was advanced in her days. She had lived with her husband for seven years after her virginity,37and was a widow for eighty-four years. She never left the temple but was serving with fastings and prayers, night and day.38At that very hour she came near to them and began giving thanks to God, and she spoke about the child to everyone who had been waiting for the redemption of Jerusalem.

39When they had finished everything they were required to do according to the law of the Lord, they returned to Galilee, to their own town of Nazareth.40The child grew and became strong; he was full of wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.

41His parents went every year to Jerusalem for the Festival of the Passover.42When he was twelve years old, they again went up at the customary time for the festival.43After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast, they began to return home. But the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem and his parents did not know it.44They assumed that he was with the group that was traveling with them, so they traveled a day's journey. Then they started to search carefully for him among their relatives and friends.45When they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem and started to search carefully for him there.46It came about that after three days they found him in the temple, sitting in the middle of the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions.47All who heard him were amazed at his understanding and his answers.48When they saw him, they were astonished. His mother said to him, "Son, why have you treated us this way? Look, your father and I have been anxiously searching for you."49He said to them, "Why were you searching for me? Did you not know that I had to be about my Father's business?"[3](#footnote-target-3)50But they did not understand what he meant by those words.51Then he went back home with them to Nazareth and was obedient to them. His mother treasured all these things in her heart.

52But Jesus continued to grow in wisdom and stature, and increased in favor with God and people.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient Greek copies have different spellings that suggest two possible meanings of the last phrase of verse 14, the second being preferred. The suggestions are:good will toward people oramong people with whom he (God) is pleased .[2](#footnote-caller-2)Some copies of the ancient Greek text have his father's name,Joseph .[3](#footnote-caller-3)Some scholars translate "about my Father's business" asin my Father's house.

### Luke 2

## 2:1-7

#### When did this census occur?

[2:1]

It is often important for a government to count its people. This is called a “census.” Near the time when Jesus was born, the Roman emperor began a census. This census required people to go to where they were born or where their family was from. During this census, the Roman emperor was Augustus and the governor of the province of Syria was Quirinius.

However, some scholars do not think that the Romans held a census at that time. They believe that Quirinius did not become governor of Syria until A.D. 6. This was at least ten years after Jesus was born. Despite this, other scholars believe that Quirinius became governor before A.D. 6. Scholars have given different explanations concerning Quirinius and the census.

1. Quirinius was governor of Syria at two different times. Or he had been an administrator in Syria when he ordered a census before A.D. 6, before he became governor (see: Acts 5:37).
2. The word “first” in verse two meant “before.” If it meant “before” here, then the census was held before Quirinius was governor of Syria.
3. An earlier governor of Syria began the census and Quirinius completed it.
4. The emperor in Rome had ordered the census and it took several years to complete.

Because of some things in the past, scholars think the Romans held many censuses. However, there is little that is known about these censuses.

#### Why did the Romans hold this census?

[2:1, 2:3]

The Romans held a census to collect taxes and enlist men to serve as soldiers. However, God used this census to cause Mary to go to the place where the Messiah would be born, in the way the Old Testament prophets had said centuries before. In this way, God used the Roman emperor, the most powerful ruler in the world at that time, to fulfill Micah’s prophecy (See: Micah 5:2; Acts 4:27-28).

See: Prophecy (Prophesy)

#### Why was Bethlehem called the “city of David”?

[2:4]

Here, “city of David” referred to Bethlehem. Bethlehem had been the hometown of King David. Luke called Bethlehem the “city of David” in order to say that both David and the Messiah were born in the same place. This was not always the “city of David.” In the Old Testament, the “city of David” was Jerusalem.

See: 2 Samuel 5:7,9; 2 Samuel 20:6

See Map: Judah; Bethlehem

#### Why did Mary put the infant Jesus into a feeding trough?

[2:7]

Mary put the infant Jesus into a “trough”(φάτνη/g5336) for feeding animals. Because of the census, many people travelled to Bethlehem at this time. Therefore, Luke explained there was no room for Mary and Joseph in the “inn”(κατάλυμα/g2646).

#### What was the “inn”?

[2:7]

Scholars give different ideas of what the “inn” was.

1. A room for guests in someone’s home.
2. A stopping place for travelers.
3. A stable for animals.

See: Luke 9:58; 7:44-46; 9:52-53

## 2:8-20

#### What season was Jesus born?

[2:8}

Most people believe that Jesus was in the winter. However, some scholars do not think that Jesus was born in the winter. This is because it would have been too cold for sheep to stay in pastures. However, other scholars believe that the winters in ancient Israel were warm enough for the sheep to be outdoors. Luke did not say what season Jesus was born.

**Advice to Translators**: For languages that do not speak of four seasons (spring, summer, autumn, and winter), the idea of winter can be expressed as “the cold season.”

#### How did Luke write the word “today”?

[2:11]

Luke wrote the word “today” (see: Luke 2:11) many times in his gospel (see: Luke 4:21; 5:26; 19:9; 23:43). Some scholars think that he wrote this word to show that something fulfilled a prophecy. However, other scholars think that “today” did not have any special meaning. They think that in this verse “today” means simply the day of Jesus’ birth.

**Advice to Translators**: The sentence below about fulfilling a prophecy can be restructured as, “Some scholars think that Luke writes ‘today’ when he is showing that a message from a prophet in the past came true in his gospel.”

#### What did the angel call the baby Jesus at his birth?

[2:11]

The angel called Jesus three different things when he was born.

1. The angel called Jesus “Savior”(σωτήρ/g4990). People who worshiped many gods sometimes called their gods “savior”, and the people of Rome sometimes called their leaders “savior”. However, here “Savior” refers to Zechariah’s prophecy that Jesus would save people from their sins (see: Luke 1:77).
2. The angel called Jesus the “Christ”(Χριστός/g5547). That is, Jesus is the “anointed one” whom God chose to be Israel’s Messiah.
3. The angel called Jesus “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). This word is usually translated “Lord,” but God the Father is called “Lord” in the Greek Old Testament. Scholars say when the angel called Jesus this same thing, he meant that Jesus is himself God.

When the angel called Jesus “Savior,” “Christ,” and “Lord,” perhaps he was explaining what the angel Gabriel said to Mary (see: Luke 1:32-35).

See: Angel; Incarnation; Messiah (Christ); Savior

#### What were “signs”?

[2:12]

The angel told the shepherds that the newborn baby would be wrapped in cloths and lying in a feeding trough. He said that this would be a “sign”(σημεῖον/g4952) for them. Signs are things that show people that God has power, or that he is telling the truth about something.

When the shepherds saw the baby in a feeding trough, they would know that this was the child of which the angel had spoken. They would also know that the angel had told them the truth. Luke often wrote about signs. He wrote about signs in the sky (see: Luke 21:25), and signs that King Herod wanted to see Jesus do (see: Luke 23:8). Even though Luke did not call it a sign, some scholars believe the judgment on Zechariah was a sign (see: Luke 1:20).

See: Sign

**Advice to Translators**: Some languages prefer to use a verb instead of a noun such as “sign.” For example, instead of translating, “This will be a sign for you: You will find a baby wrapped in cloths, lying in a feeding trough,” some languages will want to translate, “This is how you will know what I am talking about: You will find a baby….” In the same way, instead of writing, “Signs are things that show people that God has power…,” some languages will prefer to say, “God uses things to show people that he has power….”

#### What did the angels mean when spoke about peace on earth?

[2:14]

The angels either promised or wished that God would give peace to certain people on earth. They did not speak, as many believe, of God giving general peace to everyone on earth. Here, “peace” meant complete well-being. It means more than just not worrying, or just not fighting with other people.

See: Luke 7:50; 8:48

#### Did the angels say “among people with whom God is pleased” or “among people who please God”?

[2:14]

The oldest Greek copies disagreed about whether the angels said “among people whom God ‘favors’”(εὐδοκία/g2017) or “among people who please God”. The difference of meaning is whether God choose people because of his “favor”, or whether he gave peace to people who had “favor” for God, that is, who loved God.

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

## 2:21-40

#### Why did the parents of Jesus take him to the temple in Jerusalem?

[2:22]

Mary and Joseph were careful to obey the Law of Moses (see: Luke 2:22,23,24,27,39). Because Bethlehem was near the temple in Jerusalem, they were able to take Jesus to the temple. There, they asked God to bless Jesus.

See: Temple

See Map: Jerusalem; Bethlehem

#### How was Jesus’ family poor?

[2:24]

Some scholars believe that Mary and Joseph were poor because they brought two small birds to sacrifice for her. This was for them to obey the law of Moses. The normal sacrifice was a lamb, but it could be two small birds if the family was poor.

Some scholars believe that Mary and Joseph made this trip to the temple before the “learned men”(μάγος/g3097) visited Jesus. Mary and Joseph would have been able to buy a lamb after the “learned men” brought Jesus valuable gifts (see: Matthew 2:11).

See: Leviticus 12:8

#### Who was Simeon?

[2:25]

Luke wrote nothing about Simeon except that he honored God and obeyed him. He was waiting for the “helper”(παράκλησις/g3874) of Israel. That is, he was waiting for God to help Israel. Also the Holy Spirit was “on him”. That is, was with him. This was how Simeon was able to speak about what Jesus would do in the future.

#### What were the “helper” of Israel and the “deliverer” of Jerusalem?

[2:25]

The “helper”(παράκλησις/g3874) of Israel and the “deliverer”(λύτρωσις/g3085) of Jerusalem are both in this passage (see: Luke 2:25,38). They were both things that Simeon, Anna, and others were “waiting”(προσδέχομαι/g4327) for God to make happen. Some scholars believe that they were waiting for God to free Israel from the Romans, who ruled over it. Others believe that they were waiting for the kingdom of God, that is, for God to begin to rule in Israel.

Simeon, Anna, and others like them were probably waiting for the Messiah to come and rescue them from their suffering. Some scholars say that when Jews talked about the “helper” of Israel, they were talking about the Messiah, the person they were expecting to come.

See: Redeem (Redemption); Kingdom of God

#### Why was the Holy Spirit was upon Simeon?

[2:25]

The Holy Spirit was “upon”(ἐπί/g1909) Simeon. Because of this, Simeon honored God (see: Luke 2:25). Also, the Holy Spirit told Simeon that he would see the Messiah (see: Luke 2:26). The Holy Spirit guided Simeon’s life until he went to the temple at the right time to see the Messiah (see: Luke 2:27). Finally, the Holy Spirit made Simeon able to recognize the Messiah and to prophesy about him.

See: Holy Spirit;Filling of the Holy Spirit

#### What did Simeon believe about Jesus?

[2:26]

Simeon believed that Jesus is the Messiah God sent (see: Luke 2:26). He also believed that Jesus would “save”(σωτήριος/g4992) the people of Israel (see: Luke 2:30). Simeon also called Jesus the “light”(φῶς/g5457) for the Gentiles. This metaphor meant that Jesus would enable Gentiles to also know God. Simeon also believed that Jesus would bring “glory”(δόξα/g1391) to Israel (see: Luke 2:32). Some scholars say all the people in the world will honor Israel because of Jesus. Other scholars say Jesus is the Israelite whom all people in the world will honor in the future (see: Isaiah 49:5). God also honored Israel by planning to save people everywhere through Jesus, an Israelite man.

See: Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins); Metaphor; Light and Darkness (Metaphor)

#### Why were Joseph and Mary amazed at what Simeon said about Jesus?

[2:33]

Jesus’ parents were amazed at what Simeon said about Jesus (see: 2:33). Most Jews did not believe that Gentiles could live together with God forever. Mary probably did not expect Simeon to praise God because of her child.

#### How did Simeon say to Mary that Jesus will be very great?

[2:34]

Simeon said that Jesus was “appointed”(κεῖμαι/g2749) to do a certain task. He meant that God had sent Jesus in order to cause many in Israel to “rise” and many others to “fall.” That is, God would bless many Israelites through Jesus, and would condemn many others, those who would reject Jesus. Some scholars also believe that “rise” represents living with God forever, and that “fall” represents suffering forever away from God.

Simeon also called Jesus a “sign,” that is, someone that God would show to the people. Despite this, many people would speak against him and not accept his message.

See: Luke 11:23

See: Appoint; Heaven; Hell; Sign

#### How will a sword pierce Mary’s “soul”?

[2:35]

Simeon told Mary that a sword will pierce her “soul”(ψυχή/g5590). By saying this, Simeon meant that Mary would become very sad. Many scholars believe that it was over the death of Jesus that Mary would become sad like this. Some scholars believe that she would become sad over the division in Israel between those who would accept her Son and those who would reject him. Other scholars believe that she would become sad over grief Jesus caused when he stayed in the temple (see: Luke 2:49), and when he gave his disciples priority over his own family (see: Luke 8:21). It is also possible that Simeon spoke about the sword for more than one of these reasons. In any case, Mary would suffer greatly in the years ahead.

See: John 19:25; Luke 12:51-53

#### How did the birth of John the Baptist compare to Jesus’ birth?

There were some ways in which the birth of John the Baptist was born in the same way Jesus was born.

1. The angel Gabriel announced beforehand that each would be born.
2. Both John’s mother and Jesus’ mother did not expect to become pregnant.
3. Men gave prophecies about each of the babies.
4. Both babies caused people to rejoice.

However, scholars have pointed out several differences.

1. John was born to old and barren parents, but Jesus was born to a virgin.
2. John was a prophet of God, but Jesus is the Son of God.
3. The Holy Spirit filled John while he was in his mother’s womb, but Jesus’ mother conceived him as the Holy Spirit came on her.
4. Neighbors and relatives rejoiced because of John’s birth, but angels rejoiced because of Jesus’ birth.
5. John grew and became strong in spirit (see: Luke 1:80), but Jesus also increased in wisdom.
6. John was the greatest human to ever live, but Jesus is more excellent than John.

These differences were how Jesus was greater than John.

#### How did the Holy Spirit begin to work in a different way after Jesus was born?

[2:38]

Most scholars believe that God stopped sending prophets to Israel about four hundred years before Jesus was born. These four hundred years are called the “inter-testamental years,” that is, the years between when the last book of the Old Testament was written and when Jesus was born.

However, since Luke calls Anna a “prophetess”(προφῆτις/g4398), some scholars believe that the Holy Spirit continued to work in the same way in Israel. Still other scholars believe that God began to send prophets again after these four hundred years.

See: Holy Spirit; Prophecy (Prophesy)

## 2:41-52

#### Why did Jesus’ parents go to Jerusalem every year?

[2:41]

The Law of Moses required Jewish men to go to three festivals in Jerusalem each year (see: Deuteronomy 16:16), but it was often impossible for the poor to go so often, because for many of them, Jerusalem was very far away. Probably many people went only to the Passover festival, as Mary and Joseph did. In doing so, they showed themselves to be people who honored God. At the Passover, they offered sacrifices and celebrated for a week. This festival was to remember how God had brought the Israelites out from Egypt and freed them from being slaves.

See: Leviticus 23:6

See: Passover

See Map: Jerusalem

#### When did Jesus’ parents take him to the Passover?

[2:41]

Some scholars believe that this was the first time that Jesus’ parents took him to Jerusalem for the Passover. Other scholars believe that they took him every year. Either is possible.

#### How did Jesus become a son of the Law of Moses?

[2:43]

The Jews thought that when boys became twelve years old, they were old enough to know the difference between right and wrong. It was at this age that a Jewish boy began to have to obey the Law of Moses. People then began to call him a “son of the Law”.

See: Law of Moses

#### How did Jesus’ parents leave him in Jerusalem?

[2:44]

Jesus and his parents traveled to Jerusalem in a large group of people. Mary and Joseph probably thought that everyone in the group made sure that all the children were with them.

#### Where did Mary and Joseph find Jesus?

[2:46]

Mary and Joseph found Jesus in the temple. Jesus was not inside the temple itself. He was in the courtyard of the temple.

See: Temple; Temple Courtss

#### How did Jesus amaze teachers in the temple?

[2:47]

During Passover, many teachers came to the temple. They taught by asking questions and then answering their own questions. At the end of the festival, although most visitors had left Jerusalem, the boy Jesus stayed behind in the temple. Perhaps Jesus asked questions of the teachers because he truly wanted to know various things about the Law of Moses. Perhaps he also asked questions in the same way the teachers did, in order to answer them himself. In any case, he answered questions in a way that amazed the teachers.

See: Temple

#### Why did Mary ask Jesus a question?

[2:48]

Mary asked Jesus a question because she cared for her son. She was very worried after she and Joseph could not find Jesus for three days. She thought that Jesus had done wrong when he left their group and stayed behind in Jerusalem. However, Jesus did not do anything wrong.

#### Who was Jesus’ Father?

[2:49]

See: Son of God; God the Father

#### What was “necessary” to happen?

[2:49]

Luke wrote the word “necessary”(δεῖ/g1163) to say God required Jesus to be in his Father’s house, or to be busy with his Father’s affairs. Jesus had no choice other than to honor and obey God. At the age of twelve, Jesus understood that he had to do what his Father wished him to do.

#### How did Jesus grow in wisdom?

[2:52]

Jesus grew up like other children grow up. Even though he was God, he was also a human being, so he needed to learn just like any other child. Luke seems to want to say that as Jesus grew, he understood better and better how he was going to serve God his Father.

See: Incarnation

#### Luke 2:1

##### Now ... it came about that

These words mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### Caesar Augustus

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." He was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

##### sent out a decree ordering

"sent messengers with a decree ordering"

##### that a census be taken of all the people living in the world

"that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

##### the world

Here the word "world" represents the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

#### Luke 2:2

##### Quirinius

This is the name of a man.

#### Luke 2:3

##### his own city

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived" or "the city of his ancestors"

##### to be registered for the census

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

#### Luke 2:4

##### to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem

"to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David had lived"

##### because he was of the house and family line of David

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

#### Luke 2:5

##### who was engaged to him

"his fiancée" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but they would not have been physically intimate.

#### Luke 2:6

##### while they were there

"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

##### the time came for her to deliver her baby

"it was time for her to give birth to her baby"

#### Luke 2:7

##### wrapped him in long strips of cloth

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

##### laid him in a manger

A manger is a box or frame where people put hay or other food for animals to eat. Mary may have used dry hay as a cushion for the baby.

##### there was no room for them in the inn

"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room.

#### Luke 2:9

##### An angel of the Lord appeared to them

"An angel from the Lord came to them" or "An angel who served the Lord suddenly stood near the shepherds"

#### Luke 2:10

##### that will bring great joy to all the people

"that will make all the people very happy"

#### Luke 2:11

##### the city of David

This refers to Bethlehem.

#### Luke 2:12

##### This is the sign that will be given to you

"God will give you this sign"

##### the sign

This was either a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby, or it was a sign to prove that what the angel said was true.

#### Luke 2:13

##### a great multitude from heaven

"a large group of angels from heaven"

#### Luke 2:14

##### Glory to God in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."

##### may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased

"may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"

#### Luke 2:15

##### Let us now go

"We should go now"

#### Luke 2:17

##### they made known what had been said to them about this child

the shepherds told people what the angels had said to them about the baby

#### Luke 2:18

##### what was spoken to them by the shepherds

"what the shepherds told them"

#### Luke 2:19

##### treasuring them in her heart

Mary considered the things she heard about her son to be precious like a treasure. Alternate translation: "keeping them like treasure in her heart" or "carefully remembering them"

#### Luke 2:20

##### The shepherds returned

"The shepherds went back to the sheep"

##### glorifying and praising God

"talking about God's greatness and praising him"

#### Luke 2:21

##### When it was the end of the eighth day, when he was circumcised

"When the eight days ended and they circumcised the baby" or "Eight days after the baby was born, they circumcised him, and"

##### he was named Jesus, the name he had been given by the angel

"they named him Jesus, the name the angel had called him"

#### Luke 2:22

##### When the required number of days ... had passed

"When the number of days that God required ... had ended"

##### for their purification

"for them to become ceremonially clean"

##### they brought him up to the temple

"Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"

##### to present him to the Lord

"to bring him to the Lord"

#### Luke 2:23

##### As it is written in the law of the Lord

"They did this because Moses wrote in the law of the Lord" or "They did this because the law of the Lord says"

##### Every male who opens the womb

"The first male that a mother gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

#### Luke 2:25

##### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story.

##### was righteous and devout

"did what was right and feared God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

##### the consolation of Israel

"the one who would comfort the people of Israel"

##### the Holy Spirit was upon him

"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with Simeon in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction.

#### Luke 2:26

##### It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit

"The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit had told him"

##### he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ

"Simeon would not die before he had seen the Lord's Christ" or "he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

#### Luke 2:27

##### Led by the Spirit

"As the Holy Spirit directed him"

##### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard." Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building.

#### Luke 2:28

##### he took him into his arms

"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon held Jesus in his arms"

#### Luke 2:29

##### Now let your servant depart in peace

"I am your servant; let me die in peace" or "Let me, your servant, die in peace"

##### according to your word

"as you promised"

#### Luke 2:30

##### my eyes have seen

"I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

##### your salvation

"the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save people"

#### Luke 2:31

##### which you

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

#### Luke 2:32

##### A light for revelation to the Gentiles

"This child will be like a light that reveals God to the the Gentiles"

##### and glory to your people Israel

"and will bring glory to your people Israel" or "and he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

#### Luke 2:33

##### what was said about him

"the things that Simeon said about the child"

#### Luke 2:34

##### said to Mary his mother

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

##### Behold

"Look" or "Listen." By saying this, Simeon tells Mary that what he is about to say next is extremely important.

##### this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

"this child will cause many people in Israel to fall or rise"

#### Luke 2:35

##### a sword will pierce your own soul

"your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

##### so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed

"so that he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "so that he may reveal what many people secretly think"

#### Luke 2:36

##### Phanuel

This is a man's name.

##### She was advanced in her days

"she had lived many days" or "she had lived many years" or "she was very old." See how you translated similar words in Luke 2:7.

##### after her virginity

"after she married him"

#### Luke 2:37

##### a widow for eighty-four years

Possible meanings are 1) she was a widow and was now 84 years old, or 2) she became a widow and lived another 84 years.

##### She never left the temple

"She was always at the temple" or "She never stopped going to the temple"

##### with fastings and prayers

"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering prayers"

#### Luke 2:38

##### she came near to them

"she approached Mary and Joseph"

##### for the redemption of Jerusalem

"for God to redeem Jerusalem" or "for the one who would rescue Jerusalem" or "for the one who would set Jerusalem free"

#### Luke 2:39

##### When they had finished everything they were required to do according to the law of the Lord

"When Joseph and Mary had finished doing everything the law of the Lord required them to do"

##### their own town of Nazareth

"the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

#### Luke 2:40

##### he was full of wisdom

"he was becoming wiser" or "he was learning what was wise"

##### the grace of God was upon him

"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

#### Luke 2:42

##### they again went up

“they again went to Jerusalem.” Jerusalem was in a region of high hills.

##### at the customary time

"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

#### Luke 2:43

##### After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast

"After celebrating the feast for the required number of days" or "When the days for the feast ended"

#### Luke 2:44

##### They assumed

"They thought"

##### they traveled a day's journey

"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

#### Luke 2:46

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

##### in the middle of the teachers

"among the teachers" or "together with the teachers" or "surrounded by those who taught people about God"

#### Luke 2:47

##### at his understanding

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much"

##### and his answers

"and at how well he answered them" or "and that he answered their questions so well"

#### Luke 2:48

##### When they saw him

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

##### why have you treated us this way?

They rebuked Jesus because he had not gone with them and this had caused the to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have treated us like this!" or "you should not have done this to us!"

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention"

#### Luke 2:49

##### Why were you searching for me?

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents. Alternate translation: "You did not need to look for me."

##### Did you not know ... business?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

##### I had to be about my Father's business

Possible meanings are "I had to do the work my Father gave me" or "I had to be in my Father's house."

#### Luke 2:51

##### he went back home with them

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

##### was obedient to them

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

##### treasured all these things in her heart

See how you translated a similar phrase in 2:19.

#### Luke 2:52

##### to grow in wisdom and stature

"to become wiser and stronger." This refers to mental and physical growth.

##### and increased in favor with God and people

“and God and people were more and more pleased with him”

Chapter 3

1In the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—while Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Iturea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene,2during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas—the word of God came to John son of Zechariah in the wilderness.3He went into all the region around the Jordan, preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.4As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,"A voice of one crying out in the wilderness,'Make ready the way of the Lord,make his paths straight.5Every valley will be filled,and every mountain and hill will be made low,and the crooked roads will be made straight,and the uneven places will be built into roads,6and all flesh will see the salvation of God.'"

7So John said to the crowds who were coming out to be baptized by him, "You offspring of vipers! Who warned you to run away from the wrath that is coming?8Therefore, produce fruits that are worthy of repentance, and do not begin to say within yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father,' for I tell you that God is able to raise up children for Abraham from these stones.9Even now the ax is set against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire."

10Then the crowds kept asking him, saying, "What then are we to do?"

11He answered and said to them, "If someone has two tunics, he should share with a person who has none, and the one having food should do the same."

12Tax collectors also came to be baptized, and they said to him, "Teacher, what must we do?"

13He said to them, "Do not collect more money than you have been ordered to collect."

14Some soldiers also asked him, saying, "What about us? What must we do?"

He said to them, "Do not take money from anyone by force, and do not accuse anyone falsely. Be content with your wages."

15Now as the people were eagerly expecting the Christ to come, everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ.16John answered by saying to them all, "As for me, I baptize you with water, but someone is coming who is more powerful than I, and I am not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.17His winnowing fork is in his hand to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor and to gather the wheat into his storehouse. But he will burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out."

18With many other exhortations also, John was announcing the good news to the people.19When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved for marrying his brother's wife Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done,20he added this to them all, that he locked John up in prison.

21Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized, and while he was praying, the heavens opened,22and the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove, and a voice came from heaven: "You are my beloved Son. I am pleased with you."

23When Jesus began his ministry, he was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, the son of Heli,24the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph.

25Joseph was the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos, the son of Nahum, the son of Esli, the son of Naggai,26the son of Maath, the son of Mattathias, the son of Semein, the son of Josech, the son of Joda.

27Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa, the son of Zerubbabel, the son of Salathiel, the son of Neri,28the son of Melchi, the son of Addi, the son of Cosam, the son of Elmadam, the son of Er,

29the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer, the son of Jorim, the son of Matthat, the son of Levi.30Levi was the son of Simeon, the son of Judah, the son of Joseph, the son of Jonam, the son of Eliakim,

31the son of Melea, the son of Menna, the son of Mattatha, the son of Nathan, the son of David,32the son of Jesse, the son of Obed, the son of Boaz, the son of Salmon, the son of Nahshon.

33Nahshon was the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin, the son of Arni, the son of Hezron, the son of Perez, the son of Judah,34the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham, the son of Terah, the son of Nahor,

35the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of Peleg, the son of Eber, the son of Shelah.36Shelah was the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, the son of Shem, the son of Noah, the son of Lamech,

37the son of Methuselah, the son of Enoch, the son of Jared, the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan,38the son of Enos, the son of Seth, the son of Adam, the son of God.

### Luke 3

## 3:1-20

#### Who was Tiberius Caesar?

[3:1]

Tiberius Caesar ruled the entire Roman Empire from A.D. 14 to 37. The fifteenth year of his reign was A.D. 27.

See: Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)

#### Who was Pontius Pilate?

[3:1]

Pontius Pilate was a “leader”(ἡγεμονεύω/g2230) in the Roman Empire. He ruled over Judea and the area near Judea from A.D. 26 to 36.

See Map: Judea

#### Who was Herod?

[3:1]

There are several men named Herod in the Bible. The man in this verse is Herod Antipas, one of the sons of King Herod the Great. He ruled a “fourth”(τετρααρχέω/g5075) of the area that his father ruled. Herod Antipas ruled over Galilee from 4 B.C. to A.D. 39.

See: King Herod

#### Who was Philip?

[3:1]

Philip was another one of the sons of Herod the Great. He ruled a “fourth”(τετρααρχέω/g5075) of the area that his father ruled. This included the regions of Iturea and Trachonitis, which were located east of Caesarea Philippi, and south of Damascus.

See Map: Israel

#### Who was Lysanias?

[3:1]

The only thing that is known about Lysanias is that Luke said he was ruler of Abilene at this time. Abilene was place north of Mt. Hermon. Perhaps he was another son of Herod the Great. He ruled a “fourth”(τετρααρχέω/g5075) of the area that his father ruled.

See: King Herod

See Map: Israel

#### Why did Luke give the names of Roman and Jewish rulers at the time of John the Baptist?

[3:1]

Luke gave the names of Roman and Jewish rulers at the time of John because John was a prophet who served God. In the Old Testament, when someone wrote about a prophet, they often said what kings were ruling when the prophets served God (see: Isaiah 1:1; Zechariah 1:1). Although Luke did not call John a prophet in this scripture (see: Luke 3:2), Zechariah and Jesus called John a prophet (see: Luke 1:76; 7:26). This was because God told him what to say to people.

Also, Luke gave the names of the rulers because his readers knew them. They knew that these rulers had did many evil things, and that the prophets suffered because of them. When the people of Israel read about these things, perhaps they thought about how kings in the past made the prophets suffer and die (see: Hebrews 11:32-40). John suffered and died because of evil rulers in the same way other prophets suffered and died.

See: Prophet

**Advice to translators**: Use the expression for “clean” or “ritually pure” that you use in your version of the gospels.

#### Why was John’s baptism different than other kinds of baptism?

[3:3]

See: Baptize (Baptism); Repent (Repentance); Messiah (Christ); Clean and Unclean

See Map: Jordan

#### How did Luke write about repenting?

[3:3]

“Repentance”(μετάνοια/g3341) is a turning, in the same way when someone turns from facing one way to facing another way. Some scholars think that it means to stop dishonoring God and to turn to follow a path that honors him. Other scholars think it means for a person to change what he thinks about God. John used the word “repentance” because he wanted the people to get ready for the messiah to come to them.

See: Isaiah 40:3-5

See: Repent (Repentance)

#### How did God forgive a Jew’s sins?

[3:3]

God will only forgive a person for sinning if that person believes in him. Before Jesus came to Earth, the Jews showed God that they believed in him by obeying the Law of Moses. When John the Baptist preached, some Jews showed that they trusted God by “repenting”(μετάνοια/g3341) and asking John to baptize them. However, it was not because of the way that they acted that God forgave them. It was because they trusted in him.

See: Baptize (Baptism); Repent (Repentance)

#### How did John serve God and Jesus?

[3:4]

John served God by helping the Jewish people to know that Jesus was the messiah and to believe in Jesus. Luke wrote about the way John served Jesus as if John was announcing that a king was coming (see: Luke 3:5). When a king visited, the people often repaired the road and made it easy to travel on. John explained to the people that the right way to receive Jesus was to repent and trust in God to save them.

See: Repent (Repentance); Messiah (Christ)

#### Why did Luke write all flesh will see God’s salvation?

[3:6]

Luke wrote all flesh will see God’s salvation. Luke was repeating Isaiah 40:5. The Greek translation of the Old Testament used the word “salvation” in Isaiah 40:5. Luke may have also thinking about Isaiah 45:8,17; 46:13 and other scriptures in Isaiah. Isaiah wrote about God’s salvation many times.

See: Luke 2:30; Isaiah 12:2-3; 17:10; 25:9; 52:7; 59:17

#### What was flesh?

[3:6]

Flesh was “people”(σάρξ/g4561). That is, flesh was a metaphor to say that all people will know about the salvation God brings.

#### Why did John call the Jews poisonous snakes?

[3:7]

John called the Jews children of poisonous snakes because they did evil things. The Jews thought they were Abraham’s children and friends with God. While Abraham was their ancestor, they did not do the things that Abraham did. Therefore, they were not friends with God. Isaiah said that God’s enemies among the Israelites were poisonous snakes (see: Isaiah 59:5).

See: Luke 19:40

See: Wrath; Fire

**Advice to translators**: “Imply” means to want to say something without saying it clearly.

#### Why did John speak of the wrath to come?

[3:7]

John implied that God will be angry with the people who do not “repent”(μετάνοια/g3341). He also implied that he was talking about the “Day of the Lord,” when God will judge the whole world.

See: Isaiah 13:9; Zephaniah 2:2

See: Repent (Repentance); Day of the Lord; Day of Judgment

#### How did John speak about fruit?

[3:8]

John spoke about people doing good things as if they were trees producing fruit. That is, when people “repented”(μετάνοια/g3341), they made fruit. John said that if there was no fruit, then they did not truly “repent”.

If Jews did not do good things, then John said they did not live in the same way Abraham lived. If Jews did good things, then John said they were “true” descendants of Abraham. That is, they lived in the way that Abraham lived. However, the Jews thought they were “true” descendants of Abraham even when they did evil things. John said they were wrong to think that. He said they needed to do good things.

John said when trees did not make fruit, they were useless. Therefore, men cut them down and burned them. In the Bible, when God punishes sinners it is often spoken about as if they were being burned (see: Matthew 13:49-50; Revelation 21:8). If the Jews did not “repent”, God would punish them. They only had a short period of time in which to repent.

Finally, when people “repented,” they changed how they treated other people. They were to share with those who lacked what they needed every day. They were also to treat all people the same way. John wanted people to think about the things they did.

See: Repent (Repentance); Fruit (Metaphor)

#### What did the Jews think about tax collectors?

[3:12]

The Jews hated tax collectors for many reasons.

1. Tax collectors collected taxes for the Roman government. The Jews hated the Roman government because they were Gentiles and they treated the Jews badly.
2. Tax collectors often took more money than they needed to take.
3. The Jews believed they were giving money to people who were evil and reject God.

Because of this, the Jews considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people so that they could gain money for themselves.

See: Tax (Tax Collector, Toll)

**Advice to translators**: A sandal is a type of shoe that does not completely surround the foot. When someone wears a sandal, you can see his toes.

#### Why was John unworthy to untie Jesus’ sandals?

[3:16]

Except for Jesus, John the Baptist honored God more than anyone else who ever lived (see: Luke 7:28). He was humble, and he knew that Jesus was far stronger than himself. He knew Jesus is God. Because of this, John did not feel that he was good enough to approach Jesus. For the Jews, God could not be approached because he is perfectly “holy”(ἅγιος/g0040). That is, God is perfect and completely different from men.

In ancient Israel, people’s feet got dirty from the dusty ground they walked on. Only servants would touch someone’s feet; they did so in order to wash them for them. People wore sandals on their feet, so their sandals also became dirty. John thought that Jesus was so much greater than himself, that he did not deserve even to help him remove his sandals.

See: Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)

#### Why did people baptize other people?

[3:16]

See: Baptize (Baptism)

#### How did Jesus baptize in the Holy Spirit and in fire?

[3:16]

Some scholars say Jesus baptized in the Holy Spirit and in fire when he punished people who did evil things (see: Luke 3:9,17). Other scholars say Jesus baptized in the Holy Spirit and fire by filling people with the Holy Spirit so they could serve God (see: Acts 1:5; 2:3-4).

See: Filling of the Holy Spirit

**Advice to translators**: This entry is mainly for people in cultures that do not know or use threshing floors.

#### What was a threshing floor?

[3:17]

A threshing floor was a bare place on the ground where people separated grain from its stalk. In some places, people made threshing floors inside large buildings. At the time of John the Baptist, most threshing floors were outside.

When people separated the grain from its stalk, they often beat the stalks or they had large animals pull heavy loads across the stalks. Then, the people threw the stalks into the air, where the wind blew away the useless parts. The grain, which was heavier, fell back to the ground. Then the people put the grain into bags.

When John said that the messiah would separate grain, he meant that the messiah would separate the people who believed in him from those who rejected him. The writers of the Bible often spoke of God punishing the wicked people as if he were making a fire burn forever (see: Matthew 25:41; Revelation 20:10,15).

See: Metaphor; Hell; Fire; Punish (Punishment)

#### What was the good news John announced?

[3:18]

When Luke said that John announced the “good news” or “gospel”(εὐαγγελίζω/g2097) to the Jews, he meant that John told everyone to repent of their sins. They must also be “baptized”(βαπτίζω/g0907) to get ready for the messiah.

When Jesus began to teach the people, he told them more things about this good news. He told people that the “kingdom of God” was coming. He also spoke more and more clearly about what he would do. He would die on a cross but he would rise again. This was what he must do as the “Lamb of God.” However, it seems that he only said this to the twelve disciples. It does not seem that he ever told the people in general about these things.

See: Gospel; Repent (Repentance); Messiah (Christ); Kingdom of God; Lamb of God

## 3:21-22

#### Why was Jesus praying when he was baptized?

[3:21}

Jesus was praying when he was baptized because he wanted the Holy Spirit to help him serve God. Luke often wrote about someone praying at the same time when he wrote about the Holy Spirit. He wrote about how Jesus taught his disciples how to pray to God. Later, God the Father gave the Holy Spirit to them (see: Luke 11:13). God filled Christians with the Holy Spirit when they prayed (see: Acts 4:31).

See: Pray (Prayer); Filling of the Holy Spirit

**Advice to translators**: For “the Holy Spirit filled Christians,” consider using the expression in your version of Acts 2:4.

#### Why was the Holy Spirit in bodily form of a dove?

[3:22]

In the Bible, a dove represented many different things. Only Luke wrote the Holy Spirit was in the “bodily”(σωματικός/g4984) “form”(εἶδος/g1491) of a dove.” Luke wrote that because he noted well the service of the Holy Spirit at the start of his Gospel (see: Luke 1:15,35,41,67; 2:25-27).

See: Matthew 3:16; Mark 1:10; Isaiah 42:1

**Advice to translators**: For “the bodily form of a dove,” use the expression in your Bible version.

#### Why did God call Jesus his Son?

[3:22]

God called Jesus his Son because God was announcing that Jesus was the messiah whom he had promised to send. In Psalms 2:7, God said the person he made king was his “Son”. God also loves Jesus and is pleased with him. God spoke from heaven when Jesus was baptized. The people heard him, but they did not see him.

See: Messiah (Christ); Son of God

#### Why was Jesus baptized?

[3:22]

John “baptized”(βαπτίζω/g0907) people as part of their “repenting”(μετανοέω/g3340) from their sins. He did this so that they would be able to welcome the Messiah, Jesus Christ. He also “baptized” Jesus (see: Mark 1:9), because Jesus asked him to do so, even though Jesus had never sinned. He never needed to “repent” of having sinned. Most scholars think that Jesus wanted to be “baptized” in order to prepare him to be a sacrifice to God. He would die in the same way a sacrifice was done to allow people to be at peace with God.

See: 2 Corinthians 5:21

See: Repent (Repentance); Messiah (Christ); Atone (Atonement)

## 3:23-38

#### Why did Luke write how old Jesus was when he began to serve the people?

[3:23]

Luke wrote that Jesus was about thirty years old when he began to serve the people. The Jews thought that this was when a man should begin doing the work that he would do for the rest of his life. Joseph was thirty years old when he became a leader in Egypt (see: Genesis 41:46). David was thirty when he began to rule over Israel (see: 2 Samuel 5:4). The Levites began serving in the tent of meeting at the age of thirty (see: Numbers 4:3).

See: Tent of Meeting

**Advice to translators**: A genealogy is a list of someone’s ancestors or descendants.

#### How was Luke’s genealogy of Jesus different from Matthew’s genealogy of Jesus?

[3:23]

Luke’s genealogy of Jesus is different from Matthew’s genealogy in several ways.

1. Matthew wrote the genealogy first in his gospel. However, Luke wrote the genealogy after he wrote about how Jesus was “baptized”(βαπτίζω/g0907). However, he wrote about it before he wrote about how Satan tried to make Jesus sin.
2. Matthew started Jesus’ genealogy with Abraham. He wrote Jesus’ descendants until Joseph, who people thought was the father of Jesus. However, Luke started Jesus’ genealogy with Joseph. He wrote Jesus’ ancestors all the way back to Adam, the first man.
3. Matthew wrote about David’s son Solomon in his genealogy. However, Luke wrote about David’s son Nathan.
4. Matthew wrote about women in his genealogy. However, Luke did not write about any women.
5. Matthew wrote about three groups of fourteen people. This was forty-two people. Luke wrote about eleven groups of seven people. This was seventy-seven people.
6. The people between Jesus to David are different in Matthew and Luke.

See: Gospel;Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs); Genealogy; Son of David

**Advice to translators**: A genealogy is a list of someone’s ancestors or descendants.

#### Why was Luke’s genealogy of Jesus different from Matthew’s genealogy of Jesus?

[3:23]

Scholars give different reasons why Luke’s genealogy of Jesus was different from Matthew’s genealogy.

1. Matthew and Luke thought different kinds of people would read their gospels. Matthew wrote for Jewish Christians and Luke wrote for Gentile Christians.
2. Luke wrote Jesus’ ancestors from his mother Mary but Matthew wrote Jesus’ ancestors from Joseph.
3. Luke wrote about Nathan instead of Solomon because of prophecies that David would stop having descendants (see: Jeremiah 22:28-30; 36:30-31).
4. Luke wanted to imply that Jesus was also a prophet.

See: Gospel; Prophet

**Advice to translators**: A genealogy is a list of someone’s ancestors or descendants.

#### Why did Luke write a genealogy of Jesus?

[3:23]

Luke’s genealogy named the ancestors of Jesus back to Adam, the first man, and then back to God. Luke wanted people to know that Jesus was related to all mankind, not only to the Jews. Therefore, Luke also wanted his readers to know that Jesus came to bring the gospel to all mankind.

Some scholars think Luke wanted people to know Jesus was different than Adam (see: Romans 5:12-21). When Adam sinned, the whole world rebelled against God and began to die. However, Jesus came so that people could live forever with God.

See: Gospel

#### Luke 3:1

##### Tiberius ... Pontius Pilate ... Herod ... Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

##### Judea ... Galilee ... Iturea ... Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of regions or territories.

##### tetrarch

"ruler"

#### Luke 3:2

##### during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas

"while Annas and Caiaphas were high priests"

##### the word of God came to John

"God spoke his message to John"

#### Luke 3:3

##### preaching a baptism of repentance

"and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

##### for the forgiveness of sins

"so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

#### Luke 3:4

##### As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet,

"This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

##### A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

"The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

##### Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

#### Luke 3:5

##### Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they make the road level. This is part of the image started in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every valley ... they will level every mountain and hill" or "They will fill in every low place in the road ... they will remove every high place in the road"

#### Luke 3:6

##### will see the salvation of God

"will see how God saves people" or "will learn how God saves people from sin"

#### Luke 3:7

##### to be baptized by him

"for John to baptize them"

##### You offspring of vipers

Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Here "offspring of" means "being like." Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes"

##### Who warned you ... coming?

John was rebuking the people because they wanted him to baptize them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

##### from the wrath that is coming

"from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

#### Luke 3:8

##### produce fruits that are worthy of repentance

Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the fruit of righteousness that shows that you have repented"

##### to say within yourselves

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

##### We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

##### to raise up children for Abraham

"to create children for Abraham"

#### Luke 3:9

##### the ax is set against the root of the trees

This is an image of the punishment that is about to begin. Alternate translation: "God is like a man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees"

##### every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"he chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

#### Luke 3:10

##### kept asking him, saying

"kept asking him and said" or "kept asking John"

#### Luke 3:11

##### answered and said to them

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"

##### should do the same

"should share it with a person who does not have food"

#### Luke 3:13

##### than you have been ordered to collect

"than the government has told you to take"

#### Luke 3:14

##### What about us? What must we do?

"What must we soldiers do?"

##### do not accuse anyone falsely

"do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

##### Be content with your wages

"Be satisfied with your pay"

#### Luke 3:15

##### everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ

"they were all wondering in their hearts if John might be the Christ"

#### Luke 3:16

##### I baptize you with water

"I baptize you using water" or "I baptize you by means of water"

##### not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals

"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." This was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

##### He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

"He will baptize you using the Holy Spirit and fire" or "He will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and fire"

#### Luke 3:17

##### His winnowing fork is in his hand

John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as being like a farmer who is ready to separate wheat seeds from chaff. Alternate translation: "He is like a farmer whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

##### winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat grains into the air to separate the wheat seed from the chaff. The heavier seed falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind.

##### threshing floor

The threshing floor was the place where people beat the wheat stalks so that the grains would fall off of them. Then they would winnow the grain.

##### to gather the wheat

"to gather the wheat seeds." This is the part of the wheat that is stored and used for food.

##### will burn up the chaff

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

#### Luke 3:18

##### With many other exhortations

"With many other strong urgings"

#### Luke 3:19

##### When Herod the tetrarch had been reproved

"When John reproved Herod the tetrarch"

##### for marrying his brother's wife Herodias

"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife." This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive.

#### Luke 3:20

##### he locked John up in prison

Herod probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock him up. Alternate translation: "Herod had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

#### Luke 3:21

##### General Information:

The events in verses 21 and 22 happened before John was arrested.

##### Now it came about

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

##### when all the people were baptized

"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people who were there with John.

##### Jesus also was baptized

"John baptized Jesus also"

##### the heavens opened

"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds. It might mean that a hole appeared in the sky.

#### Luke 3:22

##### the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove

"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

##### a voice came from heaven

"a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying"

##### my beloved Son

God was calling Jesus his own Son. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Luke 3:23

##### General Information:

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of Joseph.

##### thirty years of age

"30 years old"

##### He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph

"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or "People assumed that he was the son of Joseph" or "People thought that Joseph was his father"

##### the son of Heli

"who was the Son of Heli" or "Joseph was the son of Heli" or "Joseph's father was Heli"

#### Luke 3:27

##### the son of Salathiel

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel, which is in some versions.

#### Luke 3:38

##### Adam, the son of God

This list goes all the way back to the first man, Adam. God created Adam, and Luke indicates that God was Adam’s father.

Chapter 4

1Then Jesus, being full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan River and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness,2where for forty days he was tempted by the devil. He ate nothing during those days, and at the end of that time he was hungry.3The devil said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command this stone to become bread."

4Jesus answered him, "It is written, 'Man does not live on bread alone.'"

5Then the devil led Jesus up and showed him all the kingdoms of the world in an instant of time.6The devil said to him, "I will give to you all this authority and all their glory, for they have been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want.7So then, if you will bow down and worship me, it will be yours."

8But Jesus answered and said to him, "It is written, 'You will worship the Lord your God, and you will serve only him.'"

9Then the devil led Jesus to Jerusalem and put him on the very highest point of the temple building, and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down from here.10For it is written,'He will give orders to his angels regarding you,to protect you,'11and, 'They will lift you up in their hands,so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.'"

12Answering him, Jesus said, "It is said, 'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'"

13When the devil had finished tempting Jesus, he went away and left him until another time.

14Then Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and news about him spread throughout the entire surrounding region.15Then he began to teach in their synagogues and he was praised by all.

16He came into Nazareth, where he had been raised, and, as was his custom, he entered the synagogue on the Sabbath day and he stood up to read aloud.17The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him. He opened the scroll and found the place where it was written,18"The Spirit of the Lord is upon me,because he anointed meto announce good news to the poor.He has sent me to proclaim freedom to the captivesand recovery of sight to the blind,to set free those who are oppressed,19to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor."

20Then he rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant, and sat down. The eyes of all in the synagogue were fixed on him.21He began to speak to them: "Today this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing."

22Everyone there spoke well of him and they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth, and they asked, "Is this not the son of Joseph?"

23He said to them, "Surely you will say this proverb to me, 'Doctor, heal yourself. Whatever we heard that you did in Capernaum, do the same in your hometown.'"24But he said, "Truly I say to you, no prophet is received in his own hometown.25But in truth I tell you that there were many widows in Israel during the time of Elijah, when the sky was shut up for three years and six months and a great famine came upon all the land.26But Elijah was sent to none of them, but only to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there.27There were many lepers in Israel during the time of Elisha the prophet, but none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian."28All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things.29They got up, forced him out of the town, and led him to the cliff of the hill on which their town was built, so they might throw him off the cliff.30But he passed through the middle of them and he went to another place.

31Then he went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee, and he began to teach them on the Sabbath.32They were astonished at his teaching, because he spoke with authority.33Now in the synagogue there was a man who had the spirit of an unclean demon, and he cried out with a loud voice,34"Ah! What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are—the Holy One of God!"

35Jesus rebuked the demon, saying, "Do not speak! Come out of him!" When the demon had thrown the man down in the middle of them, he came out of him, and did not harm him in any way.

36All the people were very amazed, and they kept talking about it with one another. They said, "What kind of words are these? He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power and they come out."37So news about him began to spread into every part of the surrounding region.

38Then Jesus left the synagogue and entered into the house of Simon. Now Simon's mother-in-law was suffering with a high fever, and they pleaded with him on her behalf.39So he stood over her and rebuked the fever, and it left her. Immediately she got up and started serving them.

40When the sun was setting, people brought to Jesus everyone who was sick with various kinds of diseases. He laid his hands on every one of them and healed them.41Demons also came out from many of them, crying out and saying, "You are the Son of God!" Jesus rebuked the demons and would not let them speak, because they knew that he was the Christ.

42When daybreak came, he went out into a solitary place. Crowds of people were looking for him and came to the place where he was. They tried to keep him from going away from them.43But he said to them, "I must also preach the gospel about the kingdom of God to many other cities, because this is the reason I was sent here."

44Then he continued to preach in the synagogues throughout Judea.

### Luke 4

## 4:1-13

#### Why did Luke write that Jesus was full of the Holy Spirit when he went into the wilderness?

[4:1]

Luke wrote that the Holy Spirit wanted Jesus to go into the wilderness. In the wilderness, the devil tried to make Jesus sin. Matthew and Mark also wrote about the Holy Spirit doing this (see: Matthew 4:1; Mark 1:12). However, only Luke wrote that Jesus was full of the Holy Spirit. Some scholars say Jesus had the Holy Spirit in him and was full of the Holy Spirit since he was baptized (see: Luke 3:21-22). Other scholars say Luke wanted people to know that Jesus was not “tempted or tested”(πειράζω/g3985) because he did something wrong.

See: Filling of the Holy Spirit; Holy Spirit; Wilderness; Tempt (Temptation); Test

**Advice to translators**: The devil tried to trap Jesus and get him to sin, this was a “temptation.” A “temptation” was a certain type of test or a trap. A “wilderness” was an area that was very hot and had no water.

See Map: Judea

#### How did Jesus in the wilderness compare with the Israelites?

[4:1, 4:2]

Jesus in the wilderness compared to the Israelites because God tested Israel in the wilderness after they left Egypt with Moses. They did not obey God. However, Jesus obeyed God when the devil tried to make him sin. Also, the forty days Jesus was in the wilderness compared to the forty years the Israelites were in the wilderness. The Israelites were in the wilderness one year for each day the spies were in the promised land. In the same way Jesus was in the wilderness one day for each year the Israelites were in the wilderness (see: Numbers 14:33-34).

See: Wilderness; Canaan (Promised Land)

#### Why did Jesus fast for forty days?

[4:2]

The Old Testament used the number forty is used many times. Moses and Elijah began to serve God in a special way after they fasted for forty days (see: Exodus 34:28; 1 Kings 19:8). After Jesus fasted, he began to serve God in a special way and tell Israel that he was the messiah.

See: Fasting; Messiah (Christ)

#### The devil tried to convince Adam to sin. He also tried to convince Jesus to sin. How did Satan do this?

[4:2]

The devil tried to convince Adam to sin. He also tried to convince Jesus to sin. Some scholars think that Satan did this in the same way. They think that he did it in a certain way for a certain reason. Perhaps, John talked about these reasons in 1 John 2:16.

See: Incarnation; Tempt (Temptation);Satan (The Devil)

**Advice to translators**: In some translations, Satan said “if” you are the son of God. However, Satan knew that Jesus was the Son of God. This question may need to be adapted to explain your local translation.

#### Did Satan know that Jesus is the Son of God?

[4:3]

Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. However, the devil wanted Jesus to stop being the Son of God. Perhaps he thought that God would reject Jesus if Jesus rejected God.

In the Old Testament, Israel was also called the “son” of God (see: Exodus 4:22-23; Hosea 11:1). Jesus is also the Son of God. However, he is not the son of God in the same way that Israel was the son of God. Israel disobeyed God and God punished them in the same way a parent punished their son. The devil wanted Jesus to disobey God. Perhaps, Satan wanted God to punish Jesus. Despite this, Jesus obeyed God in the same way a son should obey his father.

See: Luke 3:22

See: Son of God; Satan (The Devil); Old Testament (Law and Prophets)

#### Why did the devil tempt Jesus when Jesus was hungry?

[4:3]

The devil wanted Jesus to turn a stone into bread because Jesus was hungry. Jesus was very hungry after not eating for forty days. The devil knew Jesus was a human being in every way except Jesus did not sin. Perhaps Luke remembered that the Israelites were also hungry in the desert. When they were hungry, they disobeyed God (see: Exodus 16:8). However, Jesus obeyed God when he was hungry.

See: Incarnation; Tempt (Temptation);Satan (The Devil)

#### The devil told Jesus to make himself food in the desert. Why did Jesus not do this?

[4:4]

Scholars give several reasons why Jesus did not make himself food in the desert.

1. God did not want him to eat food. Jesus was fasting when he was in the desert.
2. Jesus needed to suffer in the same way that people suffered (see: Hebrews 2:18; 4:15). This helped Jesus to become a priest who knew what people felt when they were hungry.
3. Jesus trusted God. Jesus knew that God would give him food to eat. He knew that God would give him everything that he needed to live. He also trusted in the things that God said in Scripture. Therefore, he said to the devil the things that Scripture wrote.

However, some scholars say it was not always wrong for Jesus to make food. When Jesus answered the devil, he repeated a scripture that spoke about the manna that God made (see: Deuteronomy 8:3). Later, Jesus made food for people (see: Luke 5:4-10; 9:12-17).

See: Fasting; Priest (Priesthood)

#### How did the devil show Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world”?

[4:5]

Scholars believe the devil showed Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world” in a vision. Whether it was the world that Rome ruled or the whole world, no one was able to see all of it at one time from a mountain. It was a real seeing but it did not belong to this world. Some scholars say it was real the same way the heavens opened at Jesus’ baptism (see: Luke 3:21). Some scholars say that is why Luke did not say Jesus was on a mountain. Other scholars say when the devil led Jesus up it was on a mountain.

See: Deuteronomy 32:49; 34:1-3

See: Vision); World; Satan (The Devil)

#### How was the devil able to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world”?

[4:6]

The devil was able to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world” because God gave permission to the devil to rule the whole world (see: 1 John 5:19). However, this is only for a limited time (see: John 12:31; 16:11).

See: Satan (The Devil)

#### Why did the devil want to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world”?

[4:6, 4:7]

The devil wanted to give Jesus “all the kingdoms of the world” because that was not God’s plan for Jesus. God gives Jesus authority to rule the world (see: Psalm 2:8; Daniel 7:14; Matthew 28:18). However, God’s plan was for Jesus to suffer and die before he entered into glory (see: Luke 24:26). Paul also wrote about this (see: Philippians 2:5-11).

See: Kingdom of God; Atone (Atonement); Cross; Glory (Glorify)

#### Why did Jesus refuse to worship the devil to receive “all the kingdoms of the world”?

[4:8]

Jesus refused to worship the devil to receive “all the kingdoms of the world” because the Old Testament wrote only God must be worshipped. That is, someone cannot worship God and worship someone else at the same time. Jesus noted this well by adding the word “only”(μόνος/g3441) when he repeated the Old Testament scripture (see: Deuteronomy 6:13).

See: Worship

#### How did the devil use Psalm 91 in a wrong way?

[4:10, 4:11]

The devil used Psalm 91 in a wrong way by telling Jesus that God protected people from harm even when they tested God. The devil tried to convince Jesus that he was able to throw himself down from the “highest point of the temple.” However, the writer of Psalm 91 wrote about someone who trusted God, even when things were difficult. He also wrote about how God promised to care for people who trusted in him. However, the devil wanted to use this Psalm in a different way. He wanted Jesus to think God would help him, even if Jesus tested God or rejected the things that God said. However, God did not promise to protect those who rejected him in Psalm 91.

See: Psalm; Temple; Satan (The Devil)

#### Why was Jesus not willing to test God?

[4:12]

Jesus was not willing to test God because Jesus knew all scriptures and he knew how to follow them in the right way. Jesus repeated Deuteronomy 6:16 to the devil. That Scripture said people must not test God. Jesus did not argue with the devil about scripture.

Advice to translators: Translate the phrase “until another time” as your local translation does. Why did Luke write “until another time”? Luke wrote “until another time” so his readers would know the devil left Jesus in order to wait for another time to try to make Jesus disobey God. The devil also tempted Jesus when he died on the cross. At that time, people spoke to Jesus using words using the same words the devil said, “If you are the Son of God” (see: Matthew 27:40).

## 4:14-15

#### Why did the second major section of Luke’s gospel begin here?

[4:14]

Jesus’ temptation concluded the first major section of Luke’s gospel. Jesus was a baby born from a virgin when he came into the world. John the Baptist prepared people for Jesus’ coming. Luke recorded Jesus’ genealogy and temptation. Jesus then began seeking people. He announced his ministry at his hometown. He taught and did miracles. This division of major sections is taken from the key verse of Luke’s gospel (see: Luke 19:10).

#### What did Luke say about the start of Jesus’ earthly service?

[4:15]

After the devil tempted Jesus, Jesus went back to Galilee in the “power”(δύναμις/g1411) of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit helped Jesus to do the great things that he did. He taught and did miracles because the Holy Spirit gave him the power to do these things. Also, Luke said that many people believed in Jesus when he started his earthly service. When Jesus began teaching, everyone in Galilee spoke well of him.

See Map: Galilee

## 4:16-30

#### Why did Jesus stand to read the scroll in the synagogue?

[4:16]

Jesus stood to read the scroll in the synagogue because when someone read scripture they needed to stand. This was a way to honor God. Luke wrote that Jesus often went to the synagogue. This time when Jesus went to the synagogue, he asked to read Scripture. Jesus read the words of the prophet Isaiah (see: Isaiah 61:1-2).

See: Synagogue; Prophet

#### How did the prophecy that Jesus read from Isaiah say Jesus is the Messiah?

[4:18, 4:19]

Isaiah prophesied that the Holy Spirit, the “Spirit”(πνεῦμα/g4151) of the “Lord”(κύριος/g2962), would be with the messiah (see: Luke 3:22). There were three ways that the people would know the messiah.

1. The messiah told “good news or gospel”(εὐαγγελίζω/g2097) to the “poor”(πτωχός/g4434). The good news was to the “poor” because the poor needed help. People needed help to be at peace with God.
2. The messiah told people in prison that they would be free. The devil caused some people to be sick. The messiah made many sick people healthy. He also freed people from the way that they used to live before they believed in Jesus.
3. The messiah announced the “time”(ἐνιαυτός/g1763) of the Lord’s “favor”(δεκτός/g1184) (see: Luke 4:19; Isaiah 61:2). Some scholars think that Isaiah was speaking about a special Sabbath time called the Year of Jubilee in the Law of Moses (see: Leviticus 25:8-55). Other scholars think that Isaiah was speaking about how God would give favor to Christians. He did this when Jesus died so that Christians could be at peace with God.

See: Prophet; Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Messiah (Christ); Gospel; Law of Moses; Sabbath

#### Why did Jesus not talk about God’s judgment when he read from Isaiah?

[4:19]

Scholars give several reasons why Jesus did not talk about God’s judgment when he read from Isaiah.

1. Jesus did not want people to think about Isaiah’s warnings of judgment.
2. The people thought Isaiah’s judgment was for the Gentiles. Jesus wanted them to know the Lord’s favor was for the Gentiles also.
3. This was not time for the judgment. It was the time for the Lord’s favor. The judgment will come when Jesus returns at the end of the world (see: Revelation 19:11-16).
4. The people become angry enough in verse twenty-eight without hearing Jesus read about Judgment from Isaiah.

See: Judge (Judgment)

#### Why did Jesus tell the people a proverb?

[4:23]

Jesus told the people a proverb about a doctor healing himself because the people wanted Jesus to do miracles in Nazareth. They knew Jesus did miracles in Capernaum and now they wanted him to do the same things in Nazareth (see: Luke 4:23). However, Jesus did not do what they wanted because the people did not believe in him (see: Matthew 13:57-58).

See: Proverb; Miracle

See Map: Nazareth; Capernaum; Galilee

#### Why did Jesus talk about the prophets, Elijah and Elisha?

[4:25, 4:26, 4:27]

Jesus talked about the prophets, Elijah and Elisha. These men died many years before. Jesus wanted the people of Nazareth to know that they rejected him in the same way that the Israelites rejected Elijah and Elisha. However, the people of Nazareth knew that God sent Elijah and Elisha. After the Israelites rejected them, Elijah and Elisha helped the Gentiles. The Israelites thought that the Gentiles were evil and did not honor God. Therefore, a prophet should not help them. After the people of Nazareth rejected him, Jesus began to help Gentiles.

See: 1 Kings 17; 2 Kings 5

See: Prophet; Gentile

See Map: Sidon; Syria

#### Why did all the people in the synagogue try to kill Jesus?

[4:29]

Jesus read the words of Isaiah to the people in Luke 4:18-19 (see: Isaiah 61:1-2). All the people in the synagogue tried to kill Jesus because the things he said made them angry. They thought that Isaiah was speaking about God saving Israel. Jesus said that it was about the Gentiles. This insulted the Jews because they thought the Gentiles were evil.

See: Synagogue; Gentile

## 4:31-44

#### Why were the people amazed at the teaching of Jesus?

[4:32]

Luke said that the people were “amazed”(ἐκπλήσσω/g1605) at the things Jesus taught. They were amazed because Jesus said the words God commanded him to speak (see: Matthew 7:29). Jesus spoke with “power”(ἐξουσία/g1849) that came from the Holy Spirit and God himself. Scholars think that Jesus explained the Old Testament to the people.

#### What was another way Jesus demonstrated his power in the synagogue?

[4:35]

While Jesus was teaching in the synagogue, a man began to shout loudly. The man was controlled by a demon. Jesus commanded the demon to be “quiet”(φιμόω/g5392) and he commanded the demon to “come out”(ἐξέρχομαι/g1831) of the shouting man. Luke wanted people to know that Jesus could make demons obey him because he is God. Once again, the people were amazed with Jesus and the power that God had given him.

See: Synagogue; Demon

#### How did Jesus heal Simon’s mother-in-law?

[4:39]

Simon’s mother-in-law was sick with a “high fever”(πυρετός/g4446)(μέγας/g3173) fever. Jesus stood over Simon’s mother-in-law and “commanded”(ἐπιτιμάω/g2008) the fever to leave. Simon’s mother-in-law was immediately healed. Some scholars think that Luke wanted people to know that Jesus could immediately heal a sick person. Other scholars think a demon caused the fever. Jesus “commanded” the fever to leave in the same way that he “commanded” the demon to leave the man in the synagogue.

#### Why did people come to Jesus after sunset?

[4:40]

People came to Jesus after sunset because it was the sabbath. People did not travel very far or carry a heavy load on the Sabbath. Therefore, after the sabbath they brought ill and demon possessed people to Jesus. Jesus healed them of various diseases and cast out demons.

See: Sabbath; Demon

#### Why did Jesus lay his hands on people when healing them?

[4:40]

Jesus laid his hands on people when he healed them because he loved them or he favored them. However, putting his hands on people was not what healed them. Instead, it was the power of God.

#### Why did Jesus command the demons not to say he is the Son of God even though they were right that he is the Messiah?

[4:41]

Scholars give several reasons why Jesus commanded the demons not to say he is the Son of God even though they were right that he is the messiah.

1. Demons taught people wrong things about the messiah.
2. Jesus did not want the evil demons to tell people about him.
3. Jesus wanted his disciples to tell people about him.

See: Son of God; Messiah (Christ); Demon

#### Why did God sent Jesus?

[4:43]

God sent Jesus to tell people about God’s reign. Some scholars think Jesus told people he was the messiah. They think Jesus offered to rule the Jews on the earth. Other scholars think that Jesus wanted people to believe in him and obey him as their king. They think God sent him to help people to be at peace with God.

See: Kingdom of God

#### Luke 4:1

##### and was led by the Spirit

"and the Spirit led him"

#### Luke 4:2

##### he was tempted by the devil

"the devil tempted Jesus" or "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

##### He ate nothing

"Jesus ate nothing"

#### Luke 4:3

##### If you are the Son of God

The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

#### Luke 4:4

##### Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone.'"

Jesus's answer shows that he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'I will not do that because it is written ... alone."'"

##### It is written

"The scriptures say"

##### Man does not live on bread alone

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food is not enough to keep people alive; people need God. Jesus quotes this scripture to tell why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live by only eating bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live"

#### Luke 4:5

##### Then the devil led Jesus up ... world

"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." We do not know where the devil led Jesus and how he showed him all the kingdoms of the world.

##### in an instant of time

"in a moment of time" or "instantly"

#### Luke 4:7

##### it will be yours

"it will belong to you"

#### Luke 4:8

##### Jesus answered and said to him

"Jesus replied" or "Jesus said"

##### It is written

Again Jesus quoted scripture to tell why he would not do what the devil told him to do.

#### Luke 4:9

##### the very highest point

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

##### throw yourself down

"jump down to the ground"

#### Luke 4:10

##### For it is written

The devil is about to quote from the Psalms. He implies that if Jesus is really the Son of God, he will not be hurt if he jumps. Alternate translation: "For the scriptures say" or "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

##### He will give orders

"He" refers to God.

#### Luke 4:12

##### It is said

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. Alternate translation: or "The scripture says" or "No, because it is said"

##### Do not put the Lord your God to the test

"Do not test the Lord your God"

#### Luke 4:13

##### had finished tempting Jesus

"had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

##### he went away ... until another time

"the devil went away ... until another occasion"

#### Luke 4:14

##### in the power of the Spirit

"and the Spirit was giving him power"

##### news about him spread

"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus"

##### throughout the entire surrounding region

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

#### Luke 4:15

##### he was praised by all

"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

#### Luke 4:16

##### where he had been raised

"where his parents had raised him" or "where he grew up" or "where he lived when he was a child"

##### as was his custom

"as he normally did." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 4:17

##### The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him

"Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

##### scroll of the prophet Isaiah

Isaiah had written his prophecy many years before, and someone else had copied it onto a scroll.

##### the place where it was written

"the place in the scroll with these words"

#### Luke 4:18

##### The Spirit of the Lord is upon me

"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way"

##### he anointed me

In the Old Testament, someone would pour ceremonial oil on a person when God chose that person do a special task. Alternate translation: "he poured oil on me" or "he chose me"

##### the poor

"poor people"

##### to proclaim freedom to the captives

"to tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "to set free the prisoners of war"

##### recovery of sight to the blind

"to give sight to the blind" or "to make the blind able to see again"

##### to set free those who are oppressed

"to set free those whom others treat harshly"

#### Luke 4:19

##### to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor

"to tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or "to announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

#### Luke 4:20

##### rolled up the scroll

People closed scrolls by rolling them like tubes to protect the writing inside.

##### the attendant

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

##### sat down

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching.

##### were fixed on him

"were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

#### Luke 4:21

##### this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing

"I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now while you are listening to me"

#### Luke 4:22

##### they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth

"They were surprised about the gracious things that he was saying."

##### Is this not the son of Joseph?

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

#### Luke 4:23

##### Doctor, heal yourself

If someone claims to be a doctor, some people might believe it only if he can heal himself. Jesus was saying that the people in Nazareth would not believe that he is a prophet. Instead they would challenge him to prove it by showing them some miracles.

#### Luke 4:24

##### Truly I say to you

"It is certainly true" or "I am telling you the truth." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

##### no prophet is received in his own hometown

"people in a prophet's hometown do not accept him" or "people do not believe a prophet who comes from their own town."

#### Luke 4:25

##### during the time of Elijah

"when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

##### when the sky was shut up

"when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

##### a great famine came upon all the land

"there was a serious lack of food in all the land"

#### Luke 4:26

##### to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there

The people of Sidon were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in the town of Zarephath in Sidon"

#### Luke 4:27

##### none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian

"the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman the Syrian" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman from the country of Syria"

##### were cleansed

People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean. When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean. Alternate translation: "were healed"

##### Naaman the Syrian

"the Gentile Naaman from Syria." Namaan was a man.

#### Luke 4:28

##### All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things

The people were very angry when Jesus spoke about God helping Gentiles instead of Jews.

#### Luke 4:31

##### Then he went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee

"Then Jesus went down to Capernaum, another city in Galilee." Capernaum and Nazareth are both in Galilee. Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

#### Luke 4:32

##### astonished

greatly surprised, greatly amazed

#### Luke 4:33

##### who had the spirit of an unclean demon

"who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"

##### he cried out with a loud voice

"he shouted loudly"

#### Luke 4:34

##### What do we have to do with you

The demon was challenging Jesus. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common with you" or "What right do you have to bother us"

##### What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

This challenge could be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"

#### Luke 4:35

##### Jesus rebuked the demon, saying

"Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"

#### Luke 4:36

##### What kind of words are these?

The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "These words are amazing!" or "His words are amazing!"

##### He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power

"He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"

#### Luke 4:38

##### was suffering with a high fever

"was very sick with a high fever"

##### pleaded with him on her behalf

"asked Jesus to help her" or "begged Jesus to help her"

#### Luke 4:39

##### So he stood over her

"So he went to her and leaned over her"

##### rebuked the fever, and it left her

"spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did" or "commanded her skin to become cool, and did"

##### started serving them

"started to prepare food for them"

#### Luke 4:40

##### laid his hands on everyone of them

"placed his hands on everyone of them" or "touched each of them"

#### Luke 4:41

##### crying out and saying

"screaming" or "shouting." These were probably cries of fear or anger.

#### Luke 4:42

##### When daybreak came

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"

##### a solitary place

"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"

#### Luke 4:43

##### to many other cities

"to the people in many other cities"

##### this is the reason I was sent here

"this is what God sent me here to do"

#### Luke 4:44

##### throughout Judea

Since Jesus was in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time.

Chapter 5

1Now it happened while the people were crowding around Jesus and listening to the word of God, that he was standing by the lake of Gennesaret.2He saw two boats pulled up by the edge of the lake. The fishermen had gotten out of them and were washing their nets.3Jesus got into one of the boats, which was Simon's, and asked him to put it out in the water a short distance from the land. Then he sat down and taught the people out of the boat.4When he had finished speaking, he said to Simon, "Take the boat out into the deeper water and let down your nets for a catch."

5Simon answered and said, "Master, we have labored all night and caught nothing, but at your word, I will let down the nets."6When they had done this, they gathered a very large number of fish, and their nets were breaking.7So they motioned to their partners in the other boat that they should come and help them. They came and filled both the boats, so that they began to sink.8But Simon Peter, when he saw it, fell down at Jesus' knees, saying, "Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, Lord."9For he and all who were with him were amazed at the catch of fish which they had taken.10And so also were James and John, sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon.

Jesus said to Simon, "Do not be afraid, because from now on you will catch men."11When they had brought their boats to land, they left everything and followed him.

12It came about that while he was in one of the cities, a man full of leprosy was there. When he saw Jesus, he fell on his face and begged him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean."

13Then Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." Immediately the leprosy left him.

14He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."15But the report about him spread even farther, and large crowds of people came together to hear him teach and to be healed of their sicknesses.16But he often withdrew into the deserted places and prayed.

17It came about on one of those days that he was teaching, and there were Pharisees and teachers of the law sitting there who had come from every village of Galilee and Judea and from Jerusalem. The power of the Lord was with him to heal.18Now some men came carrying on a mat a man who was paralyzed, and they looked for a way to bring him inside in order to lay him down in front of Jesus.19They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so they went up to the housetop and let the man down through the tiles, on his mat, into the midst of the people, right in front of Jesus.20Seeing their faith, Jesus said, "Man, your sins are forgiven you."

21The scribes and the Pharisees began to question this, saying, "Who is this who speaks blasphemies? Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

22But Jesus, knowing what they were thinking, answered and said to them, "Why are you questioning this in your hearts?23Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?24But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins,"—he said to the paralyzed man—"I tell you, get up, pick up your mat and go to your house."25Immediately he got up in front of them and picked up the mat on which he was lying. Then he went away to his house, glorifying God.

26Everyone was amazed and they glorified God. They were filled with fear, saying, "We have seen extraordinary things today."

27After these things happened, Jesus went out from there and saw a tax collector named Levi sitting at the tax collector's tent. He said to him, "Follow me."28So Levi got up and followed him, leaving everything behind.

29Then Levi gave a big banquet in his house for Jesus. There were many tax collectors there and other people who were reclining at the table and eating with them.30But the Pharisees and their scribes were complaining to his disciples, saying, "Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?"

31Jesus answered them, "People who are well do not need a physician; only those who are sick.32I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."

33They said to him, "The disciples of John often fast and pray, and the disciples of the Pharisees do the same. But your disciples eat and drink."

34Jesus said to them, "Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?35But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, then in those days they will fast."36Then Jesus also spoke a parable to them. "No one tears a piece of cloth from a new garment and uses it to mend an old garment. If he does that, he will tear the new garment, and the piece of cloth from the new garment will not fit with the cloth of the old garment.37No one puts new wine into old wineskins. If he does that, the new wine will burst the skins, and the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed.38But new wine must be put into fresh wineskins.39No one after drinking old wine wants the new, for he says, 'The old is better.'"

### Luke 5

## 5:1-11

#### Why were the people coming to Jesus?

[5:1]

Luke said that many people went Jesus to hear the “word”(λόγος/g3056) of God. That is, they wanted to hear the things that God told Jesus to say. These were often instructions, warnings, or prophecies. Jesus did this from a boat. Luke said Jesus asked Peter to take him out into the water on Peter’s boat. Jesus sat down in the boat and began to speak the word of God to the people. Teachers often sat when giving instruction during the time of Jesus.

See: Prophecy (Prophesy)

#### Why did Simon not want to fish in the deep water?

[5:5]

Simon did not want to fish in deeper water because he knew that people fished in deep water at night, not in the day. Simon fished all night the previous night in the deep water. Simon knew this was not a good way to fish. Some scholars think he thought he knew more about fishing than Jesus knew. Other scholars think he tired and was discouraged from fishing all night and not catching anything. In any case, some scholars say Simon respected Jesus because he was a great teacher. He called him “master”(ἐπιστάτης/g1988). Simon finally did what Jesus asked of him. Other scholars say he did what Jesus asked because he knew Jesus could do things that only God could do.

See Map: Capernaum

#### Why did Simon bow down to Jesus?

[5:8]

When Simon Peter saw how many fish he caught, he bowed down to Jesus. This miracle showed Simon that Jesus was more than his master or leader. Jesus has power that only God has. Simon called Jesus “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). Simon knew himself to be a “sinful man” (ἁμαρτωλός/g0268). In the Old Testament, people often bowed down and did not look at God because they feared God and knew how great he is (see: Isaiah 6:5). Simon and all the people with him were “amazed”(θάμβος/g2285) at what Jesus did.

**Advice to translators**: When someone “bows down” to another person, they either bend at the waist or lie down on the ground. When they did this, they were not as tall as the other person and they did not look at them. This was a way to show respect to people who were greater.

See: Miracle

#### What did Jesus do because Simon was amazed?

[5:9]

Jesus told Simon to not “fear”(φοβέω/g5399). He told Simon that he will be catching people now, not fish. This was a metaphor. In the same way Peter gathered fish for his work by fishing, Jesus wanted Peter to gather people into the kingdom of God (see: Acts 2:38-42). After Jesus spoke, Simon, James, and John left “everything”(πᾶς/g3956) and followed him.

See: Metaphor; Kingdom of God

## 5:12-16

#### Why did Luke say that the man was “full of leprosy”?

[5:12]

Some scholars think Luke used the medical term “full of leprosy” because this meant a severe case of leprosy. Luke described a man who was “completely covered”(πλήρης/g4134) with a skin disease called “leprosy”(λέπρα/g3014). A person full of leprosy was unable to be healed.

See: Leprosy (Leper); Clean and Unclean

#### What did the leper do when he saw Jesus coming?

[5:12]

The man with leprosy came to Jesus and “dropped to the ground”(πίπτω/g4098). Some scholars think he heard about Jesus healing many people (see: Luke 4:37). The man called Jesus “Lord”(κύριος/g2962). He told Jesus that if Jesus wanted him to be healed, he would be healed. He knew that Jesus had the ability to heal him from leprosy. But he knew he had no power to make Jesus do this if Jesus did not want to heal him. However, Jesus said he wanted to heal the man. Jesus told the man to “be cleansed”(καθαρίζω/g2511). The leprosy healed immediately.

See: Leprosy (Leper); Miracle

#### Why did Jesus tell the leper not to tell anyone but go to the priest immediately?

[5:14]

Jesus told the man he healed to immediately go the the priest. Some scholars think that Jesus did not want to bring attention to himself. Other scholars think Jesus wanted the man to go to the priest and have the priest say that this man was clean. That is, he wanted the Priest to prove he was clean before the man began speaking with other people in the town. If a man with leprosy went into the town, he broke the Law of Moses. The priest had to say he was clean.

See: Priest (Priesthood); Clean and Unclean; Sin;Clean and Unclean

#### What other things did Jesus tell the man with leprosy to do?

[5:14]

Jesus also told the man to make an offering in the same way the Law of Moses commanded (see: Leviticus 4-7). Jesus said giving this offering showed the man’s healing and cleansing of leprosy. Some scholars think this showed only the priest and those at the temple his healing. Other scholars think this showed all people his healing. For both of these reasons, Jesus wanted the man to obey the Law of Moses.

See: Priest (Priesthood); Law of Moses

#### Why did Jesus go to the wilderness to pray?

[5:16]

Scholars say Jesus prayed alone in the wilderness (See: Luke 5:16) because he did not want other people to see him. He did not want other people to give him attention for praying. Jesus prayed alone many times. People gave Jesus a lot of attention when he healed people and got rid of their demons. God gave Jesus the strength not to want attention when he prayed. Jesus showed his disciples that he obeyed God in everything he did. God guided him when he prayed.

See: Pray (Prayer)

## 5:17-26

#### What was the “power of the Lord” in Jesus?

[5:17]

Many scholars think that the “power of the Lord” in Jesus was the Holy Spirit (see: Luke 4:18) This made Jesus able to heal people. Some scholars think Luke wanted people to know that God the Father was also with Jesus. That is, all of God’s power gave Jesus the ability to heal people.

#### How did the paralyzed man get to Jesus?

[5:18]

Luke said the paralyzed man was taken to Jesus on a “bed”(κλίνη/g2825). Most scholars think this was a poor man’s bed. That is, it was a mat or mattress filled with straw. The men carrying the mat went up onto the roof. They took the tiles off the roof of the house and lowered the bed to Jesus in the house (see: Mark 2:3-4).

#### Who believed in Jesus?

[5:19, 5:20]

Some scholars think it was the men who helped the paralyzed man who believed in Jesus. They did anything they needed to do in order to get their friend to Jesus. They had no doubt that Jesus was able to heal their friend. Other scholars think Jesus also spoke about the paralyzed man who believed in Jesus. The paralyzed man gave permission to his friends to lower him down to Jesus through the roof. He knew Jesus had the ability to heal him.

#### Why did the Pharisees and Scribes say that Jesus insulted God?

[5:21]

The Pharisees and Scribes said Jesus “insulted God”(βλασφημία/g0988) because Jesus told the paralyzed man that he forgave his sins. The Pharisees and Scribes understood that only God can forgive sin (see: Isaiah 43:25; Psalm 32:5; Psalm 51:4). They did not understand that Jesus is God, and he can forgive sins also.

See: Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon); Sin

#### How did Jesus know what the Scribes and Pharisees were thinking?

[5:22]

Scholars say Jesus showed the people that he is God because he knew what the Scribes and Pharisees were thinking.

#### How did Jesus show that he had the power to forgive sins?

[5:24]

To show that he was able to forgive sins, Jesus healed the paralyzed man. The Jews knew that only God forgives sins and only God heals people. Jesus also knew this. Jesus showed that he was God by healing this man and forgiving his sins.

See: Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon); Sin

## 5:27-32

#### Who was Levi?

[5:27]

Luke said that Levi was a tax collector. Many scholars think Levi was this man’s name in the Aramaic language. The Book of Matthew said that this tax collector was also called Matthew. Jesus called Matthew one of the first of the twelve apostles. (see: Matthew 10:2-4).

See: Apostle; Tax (Tax Collector, Toll)

#### How did Jesus respond to the Pharisees when they asked why he ate with sinners?

[5:31]

Jesus said that “healthy”(ὑγιαίνω/g5198) people do not need a doctor. Jesus used the metaphor of someone needing a doctor to talk about people who thought they were at peace with God because they did the right things.They thought they did not need God’s forgiveness for their sins. The Pharisees thought they were at peace with God because they did the right things. They closely followed the Jewish Law. Jesus said to his disciples and to the Pharisees that he had come for the “sick”(κακῶς/g2560). “Sick” was a metaphor talking about sinners.

See: Metaphor; Sin

#### Why did Jesus say he “called people to repentance”?

[5:32]

See: Repent (Repentance)

#### What did it mean to fast?

[5:33]

See: Fasting

#### Who were the wedding guests and the bridegroom?

[5:34]

Jesus used the metaphor of wedding guests to speak about all the people who followed him. He used the metaphor of a bridegroom to speak about himself. Many scholars think that much feasting and rejoicing happened at a wedding, not fasting. Jesus spoke clearly that the time for fasting comes when the bridegroom leaves the wedding. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about the future when he was going to be crucified.

See: Metaphor; Wedding; Fasting; Crucify (Crucifixion)

#### Why did Jesus talk about old and new clothes?

[5:36]

Jesus used the metaphor of “old clothes” to speak about a person who was living by Jewish traditions made from their law. Jesus used the metaphor of “new clothes” to speak about those who believed in Jesus. That is, they are changed into something new because of Jesus. Someone cannot become new by just adding new ideas to their old idea. That is, they cannot simply “patch” themselves. Becoming a new person is to be changed into someone completely different. The Holy Spirit inside the Christian makes these changes.

See: Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus talk about old and new wineskins?

[5:37]

The old wineskin spoke about the person in their old way of living. That is, they lived in the same way all sinners live. The new wineskin spoke about a person who believed in Jesus. The old wineskin cannot hold the life of Jesus. God works to make a person new when Jesus comes to live in the new person through faith in Jesus.

Many scholars think this last part of the parable spoke directly to the Pharisees. These scholars think Jesus told them they did not want this new idea, that is, believing in Jesus. That is, they found comfort with the old works of the Law of Moses.**Advice to Translators**: A wineskin was a leather sac used to hold wine.

#### Luke 5:1

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### listening to the word of God

"listening to Jesus teaching them the word of God"

#### Luke 5:2

##### washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

#### Luke 5:3

##### asked him to put it out in the water a short distance from the land

"asked Simon to move the boat a short distance from the land"

##### he sat down and taught the people out of the boat

"Jesus sat down and taught the people from the boat" or "he taught the people while he sat in the boat." The people were on the shore.

#### Luke 5:4

##### let down your nets for a catch

"put your nets down into the water to catch fish"

#### Luke 5:5

##### at your word

"because you have told me to do this"

#### Luke 5:7

##### motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

##### so that they began to sink

"and the boats began to sink down into the water"

#### Luke 5:8

##### fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

##### a sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

#### Luke 5:9

##### at the catch of fish which they had taken

"at how many fish they had caught" or "at the large number of fish they had caught"

#### Luke 5:10

##### partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in the fishing business"

##### you will catch men

"you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples." The men were fishermen. Jesus spoke of gathering people to follow him as if they would be fishing.

#### Luke 5:12

##### It came about

This phrase marks a new event in the story.

##### a man full of leprosy

"a man who was covered with leprosy." Leprosy was a skin disease.

##### he fell on his face

"he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

##### you can make me clean

The man was ceremonially unclean because of his skin disease. He wanted to be healed. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able" or "you can heal me so I will be clean"

#### Luke 5:13

##### Be clean

By giving the command, Jesus healed and cleansed them man. "Be healed"

##### the leprosy left him

"he no longer had leprosy"

#### Luke 5:14

##### He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way

"Jesus said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way"

##### offer a sacrifice for your cleansing

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean and able to again participate in religious rituals.

##### for a testimony

"as proof of your healing"

#### Luke 5:15

##### the report about him spread even farther

"the news about Jesus went out even farther" or "people kept telling the news about Jesus in other places"

#### Luke 5:16

##### the deserted places

"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

#### Luke 5:18

##### mat

sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

##### was paralyzed

"could not move himself"

#### Luke 5:19

##### they went up to the housetop

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

#### Luke 5:20

##### Seeing their faith, Jesus said

"When Jesus saw that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to the man"

##### Man

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

##### your sins are forgiven you

"you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 5:21

##### question this

"discuss this" or "reason about this"

##### Who is this who speaks blasphemies?

This shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

##### Who can forgive sins but God alone?

This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

#### Luke 5:22

##### Why are you questioning this in your hearts?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins."

##### in your hearts

Here, "hearts" refers to people's minds or inner beings.

#### Luke 5:23

##### Which is easier to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

#### Luke 5:24

##### you may know

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees.

##### the Son of Man has authority

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have authority"

##### I tell you

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man.

#### Luke 5:25

##### he got up

"the man stood up"

#### Luke 5:26

##### They were filled with fear

"They were very afraid" or "They were filled with awe"

##### extraordinary things

"amazing things" or "strange things"

#### Luke 5:27

##### Follow me

To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple. Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

#### Luke 5:29

##### were reclining at the table

It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: "were eating at the table"

#### Luke 5:30

##### to his disciples

"to Jesus's disciples"

##### Why do you eat ... sinners?

The Pharisees and scribes express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"

##### sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

#### Luke 5:31

##### People who are well ... sick

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

##### only those who are sick

"only those who are sick need a physician"

##### a physician

"a doctor"

#### Luke 5:32

##### I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance

"I did not come to call righteous people to repent. I came to call sinners to repent"

#### Luke 5:33

##### They said to him

"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

#### Luke 5:34

##### Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about something they already know. Fasting is a sign of sadness. People do not do this when the bridegroom is with them. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

##### wedding attendants

"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

#### Luke 5:35

##### the days will come when

"soon" or "some day"

##### the bridegroom will be taken away from them

"people will take the bridegroom away from them" or "the bridegroom will have to go away from them"

#### Luke 5:36

##### No one tears ... and uses it to mend... If he does that ... he will tear

"People never rip ... and use it to repair ... If they do that ... they will tear"

##### will not fit with

"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

#### Luke 5:37

##### new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

##### wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. Alternate translation: "wine bags" or "bags made of skin"

##### the new wine will burst the skins

When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out.

##### the wine will be spilled

"the wine will spill out of the bags"

#### Luke 5:38

##### fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags"

#### Luke 5:39

##### wants the new

"wants the new wine"

##### The old is better

"The old wine is better"

Chapter 6

1Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grainfields, and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain.2But some of the Pharisees said, "Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?"

3Answering them, Jesus said, "Have you not even read what David did when he was hungry, he and the men who were with him?4He went into the house of God and took the bread of the presence and ate some of it, and also gave some to the men who were with him to eat, even though it was only lawful for the priests to eat it."5Then he said to them, "The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

6It happened on another Sabbath that he went into the synagogue and taught the people there. A man was there whose right hand was withered.7The scribes and the Pharisees were watching him closely to see whether he would heal someone on the Sabbath, so that they might find a reason to accuse him.8But he knew what they were thinking and he said to the man whose hand was withered, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone." So the man got up and stood there.9Jesus said to them, "I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?"10Then he looked around at them all and said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He did so, and his hand was restored.11But they were filled with senseless rage, and they talked to each other about what they might do to Jesus.

12It happened in those days that he went out to the mountain to pray. He continued all night in prayer to God.13When it was day, he called his disciples to him, and he chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles.14The names of the apostles were Simon (whom he also named Peter) and his brother Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew,15Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Simon who was called the Zealot,16Judas son of James, and Judas Iscariot, who became a traitor.17Then Jesus came down the mountain with them and stood on a level place with a large crowd of his disciples and a large number of the people from Judea and Jerusalem and the seacoast of Tyre and Sidon.18They had come to listen to him and to be healed of their diseases. People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed.19Everyone in the crowd kept trying to touch him because power to heal was coming out from him, and he healed them all.

20Then he looked at his disciples and said,"Blessed are you who are poor,for yours is the kingdom of God.21Blessed are you who hunger now,for you will be filled.Blessed are you who weep now,for you will laugh.22Blessed are you when people hate you,and when they exclude you and insult youand reject your name as evil,because of the Son of Man.

23Rejoice in that day and leap for joy, because you will surely have a great reward in heaven, for their ancestors treated the prophets in the same way.24But woe to you who are rich,for you have already received your comfort.25Woe to you who are full now,for you will be hungry later.Woe to you who laugh now,for you will mourn and weep later.26Woe to you when all men speak well of you,for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets.

27"But I say to you who are listening, love your enemies and do good to those who hate you.28Bless those who curse you and pray for those who mistreat you.29To him who strikes you on the one cheek, offer him also the other. If someone takes away your coat, do not withhold your tunic either.30Give to everyone who asks you. If someone takes away something that belongs to you, do not ask him to give it back to you.31As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them.32If you only love people who love you, what reward is there for you? For even sinners love those who love them.33If you do good only to people who do good to you, what reward is there for you? For even sinners do the same.34If you only lend to people from whom you hope to be repaid, what reward is there for you? Even sinners lend to sinners, to receive back the same amount.35But love your enemies and do good to them. Lend, expecting nothing in return, and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, for he himself is kind toward unthankful and evil people.36Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.37Do not judge, and you will not be judged. Do not condemn, and you will not be condemned. Forgive others, and you will be forgiven.38Give, and it will be given to you. A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap. For with the measure you use, it will be measured back to you."

39Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?40A disciple is not greater than his teacher, but everyone when he is fully trained will be like his teacher.41Why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?42How can you say to your brother, 'Brother, let me take out the piece of straw that is in your eye,' when you yourself do not even see the log that is in your own eye? You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw that is in your brother's eye.43For there is no good tree that produces rotten fruit, nor is there a rotten tree that produces good fruit.44For each tree is known by the kind of fruit it produces. For people do not gather figs from a thornbush, nor do they gather grapes from a briar bush.45The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil. For out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks.

46"Why do you call me, 'Lord, Lord,' and yet you do not obey the things that I say?47Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like.48He is like a man building a house, who dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock. When a flood came, the torrent of water flowed against that house but could not shake it, because it had been well built.49But the person who hears my words and does not obey them, he is like a man who built a house on top of the ground without a foundation. When the torrent of water flowed against that house, it immediately collapsed, and the ruin of that house was complete."

### Luke 6

## 6:1-5

#### Why did the Pharisees not want Jesus and his disciples to pick grain?

[6:1, 6:2]

The Pharisees did not want Jesus and his disciples to pick grain on the Sabbath. The Law of Moses said that people cannot harvest grain on the Sabbath. But, the religious teachers said that picking grain on the Sabbath and harvesting grain on the Sabbath were the same activity. They said that both broke the Law of Moses. But, the Law of Moses says that it is good for a person to pick grain if they are hungry. However, they cannot use a tool to cut the grain (see: Deuteronomy 23:25).

See: Pharisees; Sabbath; Law of Moses

#### How did Jesus respond to the Pharisees?

[6:3, 6:4]

Jesus told the Pharisees about when David went to the house of God and “received”(λαμβάνω/g2983) the bread from the priest. The priest made new bread every Sabbath day. The Law gave the old bread to the priest for food. The Law of Moses always said to do good things, even on the Sabbath. The priest did a good thing by giving David and his men the bread because they were hungry.

See: 1 Samuel 21:6

See: Priest (Priesthood)

#### Why did Jesus say that the “Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath”?

[6:5]

Jesus said that the “Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath” because he is God, and God made the laws in the Law of Moses about the Sabbath. That is, because he made the Sabbath, he can say what can and cannot be done on the Sabbath (see: Genesis 2:3; Exodus 20:8-11). Genesis said that “God”(אֱלֹהִימ/h0430) created heaven and earth (see: Genesis 1:1). The Hebrew word for God is in the plural form. Also, God said in the plural, “Let us make” (see: Genesis 1:26). This means that God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit helped create heaven and earth. That is, God the Son, Jesus, created heaven and earth and also created the laws about the Sabbath (see: John 1:1-5; Colossians 1:15-18).

See: Heaven; Son of Man; Sabbath; Trinity

## 6:6-11

#### Why did the Scribes and Pharisees become angry when Jesus healed a person?

[6:11]

The Scribes and Pharisees said giving medical help on the Sabbath was work. The Scribes and Pharisees said the things they taught must be obeyed in the same way people obeyed the Law of Moses. However, nothing in the Law of Moses said giving medical help on the Sabbath day was wrong. The Old Testament made it clear that it was always lawful to do good everyday of the week (see: Deuteronomy 22:1-4).

See: Luke 13:10-17

See: Scribe; Pharisees; Sabbath; Law of Moses; Miracle

## 6:12-16

#### Why did Jesus go to the mountain to pray?

[6:12]

Perhaps Jesus went to the mountain to talk with God about the apostles. That is, he was about to choose those to be his special disciples. Luke does not say how many disciples Jesus had when he called them to be apostles. Later in Luke’s gospel, he spoke about his having seventy other disciples (see: Luke 10:1).

See: Apostle; Disciple; Pray (Prayer)

#### Why did Jesus choose twelve of the disciples to be apostles?

[6:13]

Some scholars think that in the same way there were twelve tribes of Israel, Jesus chose twelve disciples to be apostles. They think Jesus chose the twelve apostles to be the new spiritual leaders of Israel. They think Jesus wanted these apostles to lead Israel based on the promises of the New Covenant (see: Jeremiah 31:31-33). Other scholars think Jesus chose the twelve apostles to be the spiritual leaders of the church, and not the new leaders of Israel. The Apostle Paul spoke about apostles and prophets being the foundation of God’s household.They held up the church with the truth of the gospel in the same way a house is held up by its foundation. That is, they lead the church, told others about the gospel, and protected the gospel from false teachers. The household of God consisted of both Christian Jews and Christian Gentiles (see: Ephesians 2:19-20; 3:1-7).

See: Prophet; Gospel; Tribes of Israel; Disciple; Apostle; New Covenant; Church

## 6:17-19

#### Why did the crowds wait for Jesus and his disciples?

[6:17, 6:18]

The crowds waited for Jesus because they wanted to hear him teach. Also, they wanted him to heal them from their sicknesses. These people never heard anyone teach in the way Jesus taught. No one ever healed others in the same way that Jesus healed. Many people went to Jesus so they could touch him and be healed. They wanted to touch him because healing power was coming from him. Jesus healed people who were attacked by evil, unclean spirits. Many more of Jesus’ disciples were in the crowds that came to Jesus.

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

See Map: Jerusalem; Judea; Tyre; Sidon

## 6:20-23

#### To whom did Jesus teach?

[6:20]

Luke wrote that Jesus looked at his disciples when he taught. This was the twelve apostles who came down the mountain with him. Also, it was the larger crowd of Jesus’ disciples waiting for him to come down from the mountain (see: Luke 6:17).

See: Disciple; Apostle

#### What four things did Jesus teach that God approved?

[6:20, 6:21, 6:22, 6:23]

Jesus taught that God approved of those who were “poor”(πτωχός/g4434). Some scholars think Jesus spoke of people who did not have food, clothing, or shelter. Other scholars think Jesus spoke of the spiritually poor (see: Matthew 5:3). That is, they knew their great need for God, or people treated them badly (see: Matthew 5:10).

Jesus taught that God approved of those who were hungry. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about people who did not have food. These scholars think when God promised to feed people who were hungry, he was thinking about a feast held in heaven (see: Luke 13:29). Other scholars think Jesus spoke using a metaphor. He wanted to say that those who were hungry and thirsty really wanted to do the things that God wanted them to do (see: Matthew 5:6). These scholars think the words, “you will be filled” spoke about God’s promise to approve those who hungered for him in this way.

Jesus taught that God approved those who “weep”(κλαίω/g2799). God promised them that their weeping will change to laughter. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about people being sorry for their sin or for the sins of other people. This sorrow caused them to weep. Other scholars think Jesus spoke about the evil of the world. This also caused Christians to weep. These scholars think Jesus spoke about the day when God gathers his people into his kingdom. There will be no weeping in the kingdom of God. There, all weeping will be changed to laughter (see: Jeremiah 31:13; Revelation 7:17; 21:4).

Jesus taught that God approves the disciples when people hate them for following Jesus. That is, when others treat Christians badly for following Jesus, Jesus told them to “rejoice”(χαίρω/g5463). Their reward will be in heaven when they die (see: Romans 5:3-5; 1 Peter 4:13).

See: Matthew 5:3; Ephesians 2:1-5

See: Metaphor; Kingdom of God; Persecute (Persecution)

## 6:24-26

#### What four things did Jesus teach that God did not reward?

[6:24, 6:25, 6:26]

Jesus said “woe”(οὐαί/g3759) to rich people. That is, disaster comes for people who trust in the things they own or in what they know. Jesus said these people received their reward here on this earth. No reward is given to them in heaven (see: Luke 12:16-21).

Jesus said “woe” to the “full”(ἐμπίπλημι/g1705) people. That is, they do not think they needed God because they meet their own needs. However, Jesus warned them and said they will hunger. That is, spiritual hunger destroys them after their death (see: Luke 16:19-30; Isaiah 65:13-14).

God warned those who “laugh”(γελάω/g1070) now. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about a certain type of laughing. That is, he warned those who do not take care of the needs of others. Jesus said these people will one day weep and mourn.

Jesus said “woe” to you if people only say good things about you. Many people said evil things about Jesus because they hated his message. Jesus told the crowd that their fathers spoke good things which were said by false prophets (see: Jeremiah 5:31).

See: Prophet; Reward

## 6:27-36

#### Why did Jesus talk to those “who hear”?

[6:27]

Some scholars think Jesus was speaking to his disciples when he said, “I say to you who hear”(ἀκούω/g0191) (see: 6:20-26). Jesus only spoke to the whole crowd around him after he spoke to the disciples. Other scholars think that when Jesus said, “I say to you who hear,” he was speaking to those who listened and obeyed his words. That is, they obeyed because they heard.

See: Disciple

#### What three things did Jesus tell his disciples to do?

[6:27, 6:28, 6:29]

Jesus told his disciples to “love”(ἀγαπάω/g0025) their enemies. That is, they needed to be respectful to those who hated them and do good to those who hated them. Jesus said the world hated him, it will also hate people who believe in Jesus (see: John 15:18). God rewards those who give this type of love to others (see: 6:32,35).

Jesus told his disciples to “do good”(καλῶς/g2573) to those who hate them. That is, they need to be kind to those who hate them. In the same way Jesus taught about love, Christians are not to want to be treated kindly simply because they treated others kindly (see: Luke 6:33, 35). Christians show kindness in two ways. First, they speak good about a person who speaks evil of them. Second, they pray for the people who treat them badly.

Jesus told his disciples to give to those who ask to borrow something from them. In the same way Christians are to love and do good without wanting anything for this, they are to give whatever is asked of them without wanting to get anything back from the one who asked (see: Luke 6:34-35).

See: Persecute (Persecution)

#### How did God the Father show mercy to people?

[6:36]

Some scholars think Jesus said God the Father shows mercy to people by not getting angry quickly. He also gives approval and unchanging love to them (see: Psalm 103:8). Luke later said that Jesus told a story of a man who showed the same type of mercy that the Father shows (see: Luke 10:30-37).

## 6:37-38

#### How did Jesus tell Christians to treat others?

[6:37]

Jesus told Christians not to“judge”(κρίνω/g2919). Only God can judge a person because he knows what a person really wants, even if they do not tell anyone or do not know themselves. Also, Jesus told believers not to “condemn”(καταδικάζω/g2613) others. Only God can condemn.

Jesus told Christians to forgive others. That is, Christians are to forgive others when they do something wrong to them. This is not the same forgiveness for disobeying God. Only God can forgive those sins. Also, Jesus told Christians to freely “give”(δίδωμι/g1325) to others. That is, to meet the needs of others.

#### What was a “good measure?”

[6:38]

Jesus said the metaphor “good measure” to tell Christians about how valuable it was to give a lot to others. In the days of Jesus, the shop owners measured and sold their grain by pouring it into a person’s lap. The people wore a robe with a fold between their legs. A seller measured the grain and filled the fold of the robe. The fold was then pressed together and shaken. This made space for more grain. The seller then poured more grain into the fold of the robe until it went over the top of the fold.

See: Metaphor

## 6:39-42

#### Why did Jesus tell this parable?

[6:39]

Jesus used this parable to say that his disciples needed to be “fully trained”(καταρτίζω/g2675). Once they become fully trained, they will teach others. A fully trained disciple is one who understands God’s word fully. That is, because he understands God’s word fully, he does what God wants him to do (see: Hebrews 5:12-14). A fully trained disciple is one who knows when they hear a false teacher. Jesus said these false teachers were blind. That is, they were blind to true things about God. He told his disciples to not follow the teachings of a blind, false teacher.

See: Parable; Disciple

## 6:43-45

#### What was the “treasure” of a person’s heart?

[6:45]

Jesus used the word “treasure” to say how valuable the works were from a person’s “heart”(καρδία/g2588). When the Bible wrote about a person’s “heart,” it meant a person’s inner self. A person who did not believe in Jesus was under the control of the devil (see: Ephesians 2:1-3). But a person who believed in Jesus was a new creation. The Holy Spirit controlled them (see: 2 Corinthians 5:17; Ephesians 1:13-14).

In the same way a tree grew only one type of fruit, a person spoke what was in their heart. This was not both good and evil.

See: Satan (The Devil); Sanctify (Sanctification)

## 6:46-49

#### Why did Jesus say that being his disciple was like building a house?

[6:48]

Jesus said that in the same way a house was built on a solid foundation, a Christian needed to trust Jesus so that they were able to withstand the devil. Jesus’s words were their solid foundation. Jesus said that he was the cornerstone of the house (see: Ephesians 2:19-21). That is, he is the cornerstone of the church. In the same way a house with a solid foundation will not be destroyed during a severe storm, so a Christian who follows Jesus’s words will not be destroyed when the devil attacks them.

Also, in the same way a house without a solid foundation is easily destroyed when a severe storm comes, someone who does not follow Jesus’ words will be destroyed by the works of the enemy, the devil.

**Advice to translators**: A foundation is the base or bottom part of a house. If a foundation a not made well, then the whole house cannot be made well. A cornerstone is the first stone put in place in a house or building. After this stone is put into place, it affects the rest of the house. If it is put into crooked, then the whole house will be crooked.

See: Disciple; Satan (The Devil)

#### Luke 6:1

##### Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

##### heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. The heads hold the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

##### rubbing them between their hands

"rubbing the husks off with their hands." They were rubbing off the outer husks so they could eat the seeds.

#### Luke 6:2

##### Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

The Pharisees considered even rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. Alternate translation: "Why are you working on the Sabbath when it is against the law?"

#### Luke 6:3

##### Have you not even read what David did ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read about what David did ... him!" or "Certainly you have read what David did ... him!"

#### Luke 6:4

##### the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence. Alternate translation: "the bread of God's presence" or "the sacred bread"

#### Luke 6:5

##### The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

#### Luke 6:6

##### hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It may have been almost closed into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

#### Luke 6:7

##### were watching him closely

"were watching Jesus carefully"

##### so that they might find

"because they wanted to find"

#### Luke 6:9

##### to them

"to the scribes and Pharisees"

##### I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?

Jesus asks this question so that the Pharisees would have to admit that he is right to heal on the Sabbath.

##### to do good or to do harm

"to help someone or to harm someone"

#### Luke 6:10

##### Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

##### was restored

was healed

#### Luke 6:12

##### in those days

"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

##### he went out

"Jesus went out"

#### Luke 6:13

##### When it was day

"When it was morning" or "The next day"

##### whom he also named apostles

"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

#### Luke 6:14

##### his brother Andrew

"Simon's brother Andrew"

#### Luke 6:15

##### the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) this title shows he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) this shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

#### Luke 6:16

##### became a traitor

"later betrayed his friend" or "later turned Jesus over to enemies"

#### Luke 6:18

##### to be healed

"for Jesus to heal them"

##### People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed

"Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits" or "Jesus also healed people whom unclean spirits were bothering"

#### Luke 6:19

##### power to heal was coming out from him

"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

#### Luke 6:20

##### Blessed are you who are poor

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

##### for yours is the kingdom of God

"the kingdom of God belongs to you" or "you are a citizen in God's kingdom" or "God is your king" or "God is your ruler"

#### Luke 6:21

##### you will laugh

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

#### Luke 6:22

##### because of the Son of Man

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or "because they reject me, the Son of Man"

#### Luke 6:23

##### in that day

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

##### leap for joy

"jump with joy" or "be very happy"

#### Luke 6:24

##### woe to you

"how terrible it is for you" or "trouble will come to you." This indicates that God's anger is directed at them, or that something bad will happen to them.

##### your comfort

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

#### Luke 6:25

##### who are full now

"whose stomachs are full now"

#### Luke 6:26

##### when all men speak well of you

"when everyone says good things about you"

##### that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets

"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

#### Luke 6:27

##### love ... do good

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

#### Luke 6:28

##### Bless ... pray

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

#### Luke 6:29

##### To him who strikes you on the cheek

"If anyone hits you on one side of your face"

##### offer him also the other

"turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek too"

##### do not withhold

"do not prevent him from taking"

#### Luke 6:30

##### Give to everyone who asks you

"If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

##### do not ask him to give

"do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

#### Luke 6:31

##### As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them

"You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people they way you want them to treat you"

#### Luke 6:32

##### what reward is there for you?

"what reward will you receive?" This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that."

#### Luke 6:34

##### people from whom you hope to be repaid

"people who you expect will repay you" or "people who you believe will repay you"

#### Luke 6:35

##### expecting nothing in return

"not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

##### your reward will be great

"you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

##### you will be sons of the Most High

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

#### Luke 6:36

##### your Father

This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 6:37

##### Do not judge ... Do not condemn

"Do not judge people ... Do not condemn people"

##### and you

"and as a result you"

##### you will not be judged

Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

##### you will be forgiven

Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

#### Luke 6:38

##### it will be given to you

Jesus does not say who will give. Alternate translation: "and you will receive"

##### A good amount

"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

##### pressed down, shaken together and spilling over

These phrases emphasize that a great amount will be given. It will be like when someone puts a lot of grain into a container and he presses it down and shakes it so that it will fit. But even then there is so much grain that it spills over the top of the container.

##### it will be measured back to you

Jesus does not say who will measure things back to person. Alternate translation "they will measure things back to you"

#### Luke 6:39

##### Can a blind person guide another blind person?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

##### If he did

"If a blind person guides another blind person"

#### Luke 6:40

##### everyone when he is fully trained

"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every student whose teacher has fully taught him"

#### Luke 6:41

##### Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus challenges the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

##### tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

##### brother

Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

##### log

"beam" or "plank"

#### Luke 6:42

##### How can you say ... your own eye?

This can be translated as a statement or a command. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... your own eye."

#### Luke 6:43

##### good tree

"healthy tree"

##### rotten fruit

"bad fruit" or "decaying fruit"

#### Luke 6:44

##### each tree is known

"people know the type of tree" or "people recognize a tree"

##### thornbush

a plant or shrub that has thorns

##### briar bush

a vine or shrub that has thorns

#### Luke 6:45

##### The good man

"A good person." The word "good" here means righteous or moral. The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female.

##### the good treasure of his heart

This represents a person's good thoughts and attitudes. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps inside himself"

##### produces what is good

This represents the good person saying and doing good things. Alternate translation: "brings out what is good"

##### out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks

"whatever fills his heart will come out when he speaks" or "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth"

#### Luke 6:46

##### "Why do you call me, 'Lord, Lord,' and yet you do not obey the things that I say?

This can be translated as a statement or a command." Alternate translation: "You call me Lord, Lord,' yet you do not obey the things that I say." or "Do not call me ' 'Lord, Lord,' and neglect to obey what I say."

#### Luke 6:47

##### Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like

"I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

#### Luke 6:48

##### dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock

Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a stable house. Alternate translation: "who worked hard and built a stable house"

##### the torrent of water flowed against that house

"the fast-moving water crashed against the house" or "the river beat on the house"

##### could not shake it

Possible meanings are 1) "could not cause the house to shake" or 2) "could not destroy the house."

##### because it had been well built

"because the man had built it well"

#### Luke 6:49

##### who built a house on top of the ground without a foundation

If people would not understand this, it can be expressed in a more general way. Alternate translation: "who did not build his house properly" or "who did not make his house strong"

##### the ruin of that house was complete

"that house was completely destroyed"

Chapter 7

1After Jesus had finished everything he was saying in the hearing of the people, he entered Capernaum.

2Now a centurion had a slave who was highly regarded by him, and he was sick and about to die.3When the centurion heard about Jesus, he sent to him elders of the Jews, asking him to come and heal his servant.4When they had come to Jesus, they asked him earnestly, saying, "He is worthy to have you do this for him,5because he loves our nation, and he is the one who built the synagogue for us."

6So Jesus continued on his way with them. But when he was not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to say to him, "Lord, do not trouble yourself, because I am not worthy for you to come under my roof.7For this reason I did not even consider myself worthy to come to you, but just say a word and my servant will be healed.8For I also am a man who is under authority, with soldiers under me. I say to this one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another one, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it."

9When Jesus heard this, he was amazed at him, and turning to the crowd following him said, "I say to you, not even in Israel have I found such faith."10When those who had been sent returned to the house, they found the servant was healthy.

11Soon after that, Jesus went to a town called Nain, and his disciples and a great crowd went with him.12As he came near to the gate of the town, behold, a man who had died was being carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd from the town was with her.13When the Lord saw her, he was deeply moved with compassion for her and said to her, "Do not cry."14Then he went up and touched the wooden frame on which they carried the body, and those carrying it stood still. He said, "Young man, I say to you, arise."15The dead man sat up and began to speak, and Jesus gave him to his mother.

16Then fear overcame all of them, and they kept praising God, saying, "A great prophet has been raised among us" and "God has looked upon his people."17This news about Jesus spread throughout the whole of Judea and all the neighboring regions.

18John's disciples told him about all these things. Then John called two of his disciples19and sent them to the Lord to say, "Are you the one who is to come, or should we look for another?"

20When they had come near to Jesus, the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'"

21In that hour he healed many people from sicknesses and afflictions and from evil spirits, and to many blind people he gave sight.22Jesus answered and said to them, "After you have gone on your way, report to John what you have seen and heard. Blind people are receiving sight, lame people are walking, lepers are being cleansed, deaf people are hearing, people who have died are being raised back to life, and the poor are being told good news.23The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed."

24After John's messengers had gone away, Jesus began to say to the crowds about John, "What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?25But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes? Look, those who wear splendid clothing and who live in luxury are in kings' palaces.26But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and more than a prophet.27This is he of whom it is written,'See, I am sending my messenger before your face,who will prepare your way before you.'28I say to you, among those born of women none is greater than John. Yet the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he is."29(When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John.30But the Pharisees and the experts in the law rejected God's purpose for themselves, because they had not been baptized by John.)31"To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?32They are like children playing in the marketplace, who sit and call to one another and say,'We played a flute for you,and you did not dance.We sang a funeral song,and you did not cry.'33For John the Baptist came eating no bread and drinking no wine, and you say, 'He has a demon.'34The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'35But wisdom is justified by all her children."

36Now one of the Pharisees invited Jesus to eat with him. So after Jesus entered into the Pharisee's house, he reclined at the table to eat.37Behold, there was a woman in the city who was a sinner. When she found out that he was reclining at the table in the Pharisee's house, she brought an alabaster jar of perfumed oil.38As she stood behind him near his feet, weeping, she began to wet his feet with her tears, and she wiped them with her hair and kissed them and anointed them with perfumed oil.39When the Pharisee who had invited Jesus saw this, he thought to himself, saying, "If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner."

40Jesus responded and said to him, "Simon, I have something to say to you."

He said, "Say it, Teacher!"

41Jesus said, "A certain moneylender had two debtors. The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other fifty.42When they could not pay him, he forgave them both. Therefore, which of them will love him more?"

43Simon answered him and said, "I suppose the one whom he forgave the most."

Jesus said to him, "You have judged correctly."44Jesus turned to the woman and said to Simon, "You see this woman. I have entered into your house. You gave me no water for my feet, but she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair.45You did not give me a kiss, but from the time I came in she did not stop kissing my feet.46You did not anoint my head with oil, but she has anointed my feet with perfumed oil.47For this reason I say to you, her sins, which were many, have been forgiven—for she loved much. But the one who is forgiven little, loves little."48Then he said to her, "Your sins are forgiven."

49Those reclining together began to say among themselves, "Who is this that even forgives sins?"

50Then Jesus said to the woman, "Your faith has saved you. Go in peace."

### Luke 7

## 7:1-10

#### Where is Capernaum?

[7:1]

See Map: Capernaum

#### What was a centurion?

[7:2]

A centurion was a type of Roman soldier. They led 100 soldiers.

See: Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)

#### Why did the centurion send two groups of people to Jesus?

[7:3, 7:6]

The centurion sent two groups of people to Jesus because he was a Gentile. Perhaps he thought the leaders of the Jews had more influence than he did to ask Jesus to heal his servant. So he sent the leaders of the Jews to Jesus. Scholars think the centurion was humble because he felt unworthy for Jesus to come to his house and instead he sent his friends to speak with Jesus.

See: Gentile

#### Why did Matthew write that the centurion himself spoke to Jesus?

Matthew also wrote about this story, but he did not say the centurion sent people to Jesus (see: Matthew 8:5-13). Many scholars think the centurion spoke through his friends. That is, their words were the same as his words.

#### Why did the message of the centurion amaze Jesus?

[7:9]

Scholars think the centurion's message amazed Jesus for three reasons.

Though the centurion led many people, he showed humility before Jesus. He believed in Jesus’ ability and power to heal his servant. The centurion felt unworthy for Jesus to come to his home because of his respect for Jesus.

The centurion understood the ability to give commands. Luke wrote about how the soldiers were given permission to give commands to other people they lead. He understood that Jesus had the ability to heal his servant from a distance.

Jesus never saw people in Israel believe in him so strongly. This Gentile military leader showed that he believed in Jesus more than the people of Israel. That is, God’s chosen people did not show this much faith.

See: Gentile; Faith (Believe in); People of God

## 7:11-17

#### Why did Jesus raise the young man from the dead?

[7:14]

Scholars think Jesus raised the young man from the dead for two reasons.

Jesus had compassion for the young man’s mother. His mother was also a widow, and she did not have any other sons. In ancient times, a widow’s sons helped their mother and without them, the mother would be very poor.

Jesus wanted people to know that he controlled death and uncleanness.

#### Why did Jesus not become unclean when he touched the dead body?

[7:14]

The Old Testament spoke about uncleanness coming over someone who touches a dead body (see: Number 19:11-6). However, when Jesus raised the widow’s son back to life, he made the man clean. Because he raised the boy, Jesus never became unclean under the Law of Moses.

See: Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses; Sin

#### Why did all the people say Jesus was a “great prophet”?

[7:16]

The people said Jesus was a “great prophet” because he raised a young man from the dead. Only two other prophets raised people from the dead. Elijah raised a widow’s son (see: 1 Kings 17:17-18), and Elisha raised the son of a Shunammite woman (see: 2 Kings 4:18-37).

See: Prophet

## 7:18-23

#### Why did John send two of his disciples to ask Jesus if he was the “Coming One”?

[7:19]

Scholars give two reasons why John sent his disciples to ask Jesus if he is the “Coming One.” That is, if Jesus was the messiah whom God promised to come.

John wanted to strengthen the faith of his disciples.

John wanted to know himself that Jesus is the “Coming One.” God gave John a message to preach that spoke of a coming judgment. John expected Jesus to bring judgment on sinners quickly (see: Luke 3:8,16-17). When John was put in prison, Jesus said others will also be put in prison before the judgment of God comes on the world (see: Luke 21:10-22).

See: Preach (Preacher); Messiah (Christ)

#### Why might people “fall away” because of Jesus?

[7:23]

Some scholars think Jesus’ words spoke about people in general. They think people “fall away” because they expected the Messiah to be someone different than who he really is. Other scholars think Jesus spoke to John specifically. They think Jesus’ words told John not to stop believing in Jesus because judgment did not happen at the time John thought it was going to happen.

See: Judge (Judgment)

## 7:24-28

#### Why did Jesus ask the crowds about going into the wilderness?

[7:24]

Jesus asked the crowds three questions about going into the wilderness to speak about the serious message of John. Jesus did not want the crowds to answer the questions, but he wanted to use the questions to teach the truth about John. The first question spoke about a reed shaken by the wind. The wind easily bent reeds back and forth, and this was a common sight. People did not travel to the wilderness to see reeds bending in the wind. Some scholars think Jesus was saying that John was not a man who was easily swayed. Rather he was a solid man who believed in the coming Messiah.

Jesus then asked the people if they went to the wilderness to see a man dressed in soft, fancy clothes. The people knew that a person in soft, fancy clothes did not live in the wilderness. The third question Jesus asked was whether the people went out to the wilderness to see a prophet. Jesus told the crowds that John was more than just a prophet.

See: Metaphor; Parable

#### Why did Jesus say John was more than a prophet?

[7:26]

Many scholars think Jesus said John was “more than a prophet” because John spoke about the coming of the Messiah. The Old Testament prophet, Malachi, spoke about a prophet coming to tell people about the Messiah before the messiah came. Malachi spoke about the prophet John. John not only told people about the coming of the messiah, he also saw the messiah. He witnessed God’s words about Jesus happen (see: John 1:32-34). Jesus even spoke about John the prophet being the same as Elijah, the prophet promised to come (see: Matthew 17:11-13).

See: Malachi 4:5-6

See: Prophet; Messiah (Christ)

#### Why did Jesus say the least in the kingdom was actually greater than John?

[7:28]

Scholars think Jesus said the least in the kingdom was actually greater than John because John lived in the time before Jesus began his ministry. That is, John did not live to see Jesus die and become alive again because he was in prison. Also, the ones Jesus called “the least” of his followers saw many believers filled with the Holy Spirit. John the Baptist did not see any. However, John will be in the kingdom in heaven with all of God’s prophets (see: Luke 13:28).

See: Kingdom of God; Minister (Ministry); Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Filling of the Holy Spirit

## 7:29-30

#### Why did Luke write that the people declared God to be right?

[7:29]

After the people heard Jesus speak, those John baptized said that God was right. Some scholars think because John spoke about repentance and the Messiah, it showed that John taught God’s message. However, the Pharisees refused to believe that Jesus is the Messiah and they refused to repent. They believed following the Law of Moses was right and made them be at peace with God.

See: Pharisees; Baptize (Baptism); Repent (Repentance); Messiah (Christ); Law of Moses

## 7:31-35

#### Who were the people of that generation?

[7:31]

Many scholars think Jesus spoke about the Pharisees, the teachers of the Law of Moses and all those who followed them. These scholars think Jesus spoke about the things the people of Israel did in the past (see: Acts 7:51-53). Jesus said that in the same way children made up games with rules, so did the Pharisees and teachers of the law of Moses criticized anyone who did not play by their rules.

See: Pharisees; Law of Moses

#### What did Jesus say about the accusations of the Pharisees?

[7:34, 7:35]

Jesus spoke about the things the Pharisees accused them of. They did this by saying wisdom was shown to be true by her children. This meant those who trusted in God and obeyed his commands were wise people. The Pharisees rejected the things John said that God gave him to tell the people. The Pharisees also rejected Jesus the messiah. They rejected him because he was a friend of sinners. Because the Pharisees rejected both John and Jesus, they were not considered to be children of wisdom.

See: Wise (Wisdom, Fool); Messiah (Christ)

## 7:36-50

#### How did Jesus recline at the table?

[7:36]

Jesus reclined at the table by lying on his side and facing the table. His feet went away from the table. The woman was then able to touch his feet. This reclining at a table was common in the days of Jesus.

#### How did Luke describe the unnamed woman?

[7:37]

Luke wrote the unnamed woman was a sinner. Luke did not say how she sinned. Some scholars think she was a prostitute. Fewer scholars think she committed adultery or her husband dishonored God in his work.

See: Sin; Adultery

#### What was an alabaster jar?

[7:37]

An alabaster jar was a glass or soft-stone jar with a long neck that held perfume. Both the jar and the perfume were very expensive. A woman broke the long neck of the jar to pour out the perfume. Why was the woman crying? Some scholars think the woman’s tears showed her humility and a deep sense of repentance. Other scholars think she felt sad because she sinned. Or she felt joy because Jesus forgave her sins. So, she showed she loved Jesus very much by pouring out her tears on his feet, wiping them with her hair, kissing them, and anointing them with perfume from her alabaster jar.

See: Anoint (Anointing); Repent (Repentance)

#### Why did Simon the Pharisee think Jesus was not a prophet?

[7:39]

Simon the Pharisee thought Jesus did not know the woman was a sinner. So, he must not be a prophet. The Pharisees always kept away from any contact with sinners. Simon thought that Jesus, if he were a prophet, would also keep away from sinners.

See: Prophet

#### How did Jesus “answer” Simon?

[7:40]

Simon did not ask his question for others to be able to hear him. He only thought the question. However, Jesus knew Simon’s inner thoughts and was able to answer Simon’s question. Then people knew Jesus was a prophet.

See: Prophet

#### How much was a denarius?

[7:41]

A denarius was a fair wage for a day of labor (see: Matthew 20:2). Scholars say the man with the large debt needed one and three-quarters years to earn what he owed. The man with the small debt needed two months to earn what he owed. This story was a metaphor. In the story to Simon, the moneylender who “forgave”(χαρίζομαι/g5483) the debts of denarii was Jesus who “forgives”(ἀφίημι/g0863) people who sinned.

See: Denarius; Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus speak about water for his feet to Simon?

[7:44]

Jesus spoke to Simon about what was good and polite to do for a guest. That is, to provide water for the washing of feet, a kiss of greeting to welcome a guest into their home, and oil to anoint the guest’s head. Simon failed to provide any of these common greetings to Jesus. But, the sinful woman washed the feet of Jesus with her own tears, kissed the feet of Jesus, and anointed his feet with expensive perfume. The sinful woman went far beyond Simon but others thought Simon was a man who honored God.

See: Genesis 18:4; 43:24

See: Anoint (Anointing)

#### Why did Jesus forgive the woman?

[7:47, 7:48]

Jesus forgave the woman because she believed in him. Jesus said her faith saved her (see: 7:50). The woman showed great love toward Jesus because of her awareness of her great sin. She knew only Jesus saved her. Her acts of love came from her desire to repent.

See: Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon); Repent (Repentance); Faith (Believe in)

#### What did the other guests think about Jesus forgiving the woman who sinned?

[7:49]

The other guests thought Jesus was not able to forgive people who sinned. They knew that only God is able to forgive people who sin. The other guests at the table continued to reject Jesus the Messiah. That is, they did not think he was equal with God.

See: Messiah (Christ)

#### Luke 7:1

##### in the hearing of the people

"to the people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were there" or "for the people to hear"

#### Luke 7:2

##### who was highly regarded by him

"whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

#### Luke 7:4

##### asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

##### He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

#### Luke 7:5

##### our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

#### Luke 7:6

##### continued on his way

"went along"

##### do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

##### to come under my roof

"to come into my house"

#### Luke 7:7

##### just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Alternate translation: "just give the order" or "just give the command"

#### Luke 7:8

##### I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

##### under me

"under my authority"

#### Luke 7:9

##### I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

##### not even in Israel have I found such faith.

Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"

#### Luke 7:10

##### those who had been sent

"the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

#### Luke 7:12

##### a man who had died was being carried out

"people were carrying out of the city a man who had died"

##### carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd

"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd"

#### Luke 7:13

##### was deeply moved with compassion for her

"felt very sorry for her"

#### Luke 7:14

##### he went up

"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

##### the wooden frame on which they carried the body

This was a stretcher or bed that they used to move the body to the burial place.

##### arise

get up"

#### Luke 7:15

##### The dead man

It may be necessary to make it clear that the man was not still dead. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

#### Luke 7:16

##### fear overcame all of them

"fear filled all of them" or "they all became very afraid"

##### A great prophet has been raised among us

"A great prophet has appeared among us" or "A great prophet has come up among us"

##### God has looked upon his people

"God has cared for his people"

#### Luke 7:17

##### This news about Jesus spread

"People spread this news about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

#### Luke 7:18

##### told him

"told John"

#### Luke 7:20

##### the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"

This sentence can be reworded so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

#### Luke 7:21

##### In that hour

"At that time"

##### and from evil spirits

"and he healed people from evil spirits" or "and he set people free from evil spirits"

#### Luke 7:22

##### said to them

"said to John's messengers" or "said to the men that John sent"

##### the poor are being told the good news

"poor people are hearing the good news"

#### Luke 7:23

##### The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed

"God blesses the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

##### The person who does not ... is blessed

"Whoever does not ... is blessed" or "People who do not ... are blessed."

#### Luke 7:24

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks questions to lead them to think about what John is really like.

##### What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

"Did you go out to the desert to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or "Surely you did not go out to the desert see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

##### A reed shaken by the wind

"Someone who is like a reed shaken by the wind"

#### Luke 7:25

##### But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?

"Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

##### dressed in soft clothes

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing luxurious clothing"

##### kings' palaces

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

#### Luke 7:26

##### But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you

"Did you go out to see a prophet? Yes, I say to you," or "But you actually went out to see a prophet"

##### and more than a prophet

"and not just an ordinary prophet" or "and he is more important than a prophet"

#### Luke 7:27

##### This is he of whom it is written

"John is the one the prophet wrote about long ago"

##### before your face

"in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

##### your ... your ... you

The words "your" and "you" are singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

#### Luke 7:28

##### I say to you

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" refers to the crowd.

##### among those born of women

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

##### none is greater than John

"John is the greatest"

##### the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he is

"whoever is least important in the kingdom of God is greater than John"

#### Luke 7:29

##### because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

"because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

#### Luke 7:30

##### rejected God's purpose for themselves

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

##### they had not been baptized by John

"they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

#### Luke 7:31

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

##### To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

##### the people of this generation

"the people who are alive now"

#### Luke 7:32

##### and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the music"

##### and you did not cry

"but you did not cry with us"

#### Luke 7:33

##### eating no bread

If your language does not have a word for bread, you could translate it with a more general expression. Alternate translation: "not eating ordinary food"

##### you say, 'He has a demon.'

"you say that he has a demon"

#### Luke 7:34

##### The Son of Man came

"I, the Son of Man, came"

##### you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'

"you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

##### he is a gluttonous man

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

#### Luke 7:35

##### wisdom is justified by all her children

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

#### Luke 7:36

##### reclined at the table to eat

"sat down at the table to eat." It was the custom at a relaxed meal for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

#### Luke 7:37

##### who was a sinner

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life."

##### an alabaster jar of perfumed oil

"a jar made of soft stone with perfume in it"

#### Luke 7:38

##### anointed them with perfumed oil

"poured perfume on them"

#### Luke 7:39

##### he thought to himself, saying

"he said to himself"

##### If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him.

#### Luke 7:40

##### Simon

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

#### Luke 7:41

##### A certain moneylender had two debtors

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

##### five hundred denarii

"five hundred silver coins" or "five hundred days' wages"

##### and the other fifty

"and the other debtor owed fifty denarii"

#### Luke 7:42

##### he forgave them both

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

#### Luke 7:43

##### I suppose

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

##### You have judged correctly

"You are right"

#### Luke 7:44

##### Jesus turned to the woman

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

##### You gave me no water for my feet

"You did not give me water for my feet." It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

##### she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair

The woman used her tears and hair in place of the missing water and towel.

#### Luke 7:45

##### You did not give me a kiss

"You did not greet me with a kiss." A good host in that culture would greet his guests with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

##### did not stop kissing my feet

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

#### Luke 7:46

##### You did not anoint my head with oil

"You did not put oil on my head" or "You did not welcome me by anointing my head with oil." The custom was for the host to welcome an honored guest by putting oil on his head.

##### she has anointed my feet

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

#### Luke 7:47

##### her sins, which were many, have been forgiven

"God has forgiven her many sins"

##### for she loved much

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated. Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her"

##### the one who is forgiven little, loves little

"anyone who is forgiven for only a few things loves little"

#### Luke 7:48

##### Your sins are forgiven

"You are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

#### Luke 7:49

##### Those reclining together

"The people who were reclining together around the table" or "The people who were at the table"

##### Who is this that even forgives sins?

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins, but they did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably an accusation. Alternate translation: "Who is this man who claims to forgive sins?” or “This man says that he forgives sins. Who does he think he is?”

#### Luke 7:50

##### Your faith has saved you

"Because of your faith, you are saved" or "Because you believe, God has saved you"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "May you have peace as you go"

Chapter 8

1It happened soon afterward that Jesus began traveling around to different cities and villages, preaching and proclaiming the good news about the kingdom of God. The twelve were with him,2as well as certain women who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases: Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had been driven out;3Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager; Susanna; and many others, who, out of their possessions, provided for their needs.

4While a large crowd of people was gathering, and people were coming to him from town after town, he told a parable:5"A farmer went out to sow his seed. As he sowed, some fell beside the road and it was trampled underfoot, and the birds of the sky devoured it.6Some fell on the rock, and as soon as it grew up, it withered away, because it had no moisture.7Some fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up together with the seed and choked it.8But some fell on good soil and produced a crop that was a hundred times greater." After Jesus had said these things, he called out, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear."

9His disciples asked him what this parable meant.10He said, "The knowledge of the secrets of the kingdom of God has been given to you, but for others I speak in parables, so that'seeing they may not see,and hearing they may not understand.'11Now this is the meaning of the parable: The seed is the word of God.12The ones along the road are those who have heard, but then the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts so they may not believe and be saved.13The ones on the rock are those who, when they hear the word, receive it with joy. But they have no root; they believe for a while, and in a time of testing they fall away.14The seeds that fell among the thorns are people who hear the word, but as they go on their way, they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature.15But the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones who, hearing the word with an honest and good heart, hold it securely and bear fruit with patient endurance.

16"No one lights a lamp and covers it with a bowl or puts it under a bed. Rather, he puts it on a lampstand so that everyone who enters may see the light.17For nothing is hidden that will not be made known, nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light.18So listen carefully, for to the one who has, more will be given to him, but the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him."

19Then his mother and brothers came to him, but they could not get near him because of the crowd.20He was told, "Your mother and your brothers are standing outside, wanting to see you."21But Jesus answered and said to them, "My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it."

22Now one day he got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." They set sail.23But as they sailed he fell asleep. A terrible windstorm came down on the lake, and their boat was filling with water, and they were in danger.24Then Jesus' disciples came over to him and woke him up, saying, "Master! Master! We are about to die!"

He awoke and rebuked the wind and the raging of the water, and they ceased, and there was a calm.25Then he said to them, "Where is your faith?"

But they were afraid and amazed, and they asked one another, "Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?"

26They sailed to the region of the Gerasenes, which is across the lake from Galilee.27When Jesus stepped on the land, he was met by a certain man from the city who had demons. For a long time he had worn no clothes, and he did not live in a house but among the tombs.28When he saw Jesus, he cried out and fell down before him and he said with a loud voice, "What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you, do not torment me."29For Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For many times it had seized him, and though he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness.

30Then Jesus asked him, "What is your name?"

He said, "Legion," for many demons had entered into him.31They kept begging him not to command them to go away into the abyss.32Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside. The demons begged him to let them go into them, and he gave them permission.33So the demons came out of the man and went into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep slope into the lake and was drowned.34When those tending the pigs saw what had happened, they ran off and told about it in the city and countryside.35So the people went out to see what had happened, and they came to Jesus and found the man from whom the demons had gone out. He was sitting at the feet of Jesus, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid.36Then those who had seen it told them how the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed.37Then all the people of the region of the Gerasenes asked Jesus to depart from them, for they were overwhelmed with great fear. So he got into the boat and returned.

38The man from whom the demons had gone out begged him to let him go with him, but Jesus sent him away, saying,39"Return to your home and give a full account of what God has done for you." The man went on his way, proclaiming throughout the whole city what Jesus had done for him.

40Now when Jesus returned, the crowd welcomed him, for they were all expecting him.41Behold, a man named Jairus, who was one of the leaders of the synagogue, came and fell down at Jesus' feet, and he begged him to come to his house42because his only daughter, a girl of about twelve years of age, was dying. As Jesus was on his way, the crowds of people pressed together around him.

43Now a woman was there who had been bleeding for twelve years[1](#footnote-target-1)and could not be healed by anyone.44She came behind Jesus and touched the edge of his coat, and immediately her bleeding stopped.45Jesus said, "Who was it who touched me?"

When all denied it, Peter said, "Master, the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you."

46But Jesus said, "Someone did touch me, for I know that power has gone out from me."47When the woman saw that she could not escape notice, she came trembling and fell down before him. In the presence of all the people she declared why she had touched him and how she had been immediately healed.48Then he said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace."

49While he was still speaking, someone came from the synagogue leader's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Do not trouble the teacher any longer."

50But when Jesus heard this, he answered Jairus, "Do not be afraid; only believe, and she will be healed."51When he came to the house, he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter and John and James, and the father of the child and her mother.52Now all were mourning and wailing for her, but he said, "Do not weep; she is not dead but asleep."53But they began to mock him, knowing that she was dead.54But he took her by the hand and called out, saying, "Child, get up!"55Her spirit returned, and she rose up immediately. He ordered them to get her something to eat.56Her parents were astonished, but he ordered them to tell no one what had happened.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Scholars are divided whether the phraseand had spent all her money on physicians should be included here.

### Luke 8

## 8:1-3

#### Why did Luke write 8:1-3?

[8:1, 8:2, 8:3]

Luke wanted his readers to know two things when he wrote 8:1-3. The other gospel writers did not write about these two things.

Luke wanted his readers to know that Jesus “preached”(κηρύσσω/g2784) and “proclaimed” the (εὐαγγελίζω/g2097) the gospel. The gospel is about the “kingdom of God.” Luke used the word “preached.” He used this word to write about how God gave Jesus permission to speak about the kingdom of God. Luke also used the words, “proclaimed the gospel.” He wrote this because the things Jesus spoke about were good for the people to know.

Luke also wanted readers to know women served Jesus. Some scholars think these women served in the same way the disciples served Jesus. Other scholars think these women served Jesus in a different way.

See: Gospel; Preach (Preacher); Kingdom of God; Disciple

#### Who was Mary Magdalene?

[8:2]

Mary Magdalene was a woman from a small village called Magdala. Some scholars think the village was near the west side of the Sea of Galilee. Other scholars think they do not know where Magdala was located. The apostle John wrote that Mary Magdalene witnessed the resurrection of Jesus (see: John 20:11-18).

See: Apostle; Resurrect (Resurrection)

See Map: Sea of Galilee

#### Why did Luke write about Joanna?

[8:3]

Luke wrote about Johanna. Johanna was a person who worked for Herod. John wanted his readers to know that even the people working for Herod heard about the gospel. Some scholars think her husband, Chuza, also served Herod.

See: Gospel

## 8:4-15

#### What was a “parable”?

[8:4]

See: Parable

#### How did people sow seeds when Jesus lived on earth?

[8:5]

When Jesus was on the earth, people sowed seeds by having a seed bag over their shoulders. They threw seeds from the bag onto the ground. They did this in late fall or early winter. The seeds began to grow out of the ground in spring. Then they gathered what was grown in summer. Many times a dirt road or pathway went through the field where they sowed seeds.

**Advice to Translators**: Spring, Summer, Winter, and fall are words used to talk about the changing seasons in an area of the world. Many places in the world do not have these four seasons. They may have only two of these seasons or they may have what is called wet and dry seasons. Overall, these words are used to talk about different times of the year due to changes in the weather in that particular area.

See: Sow (Plant); Hebrew Calendar (Seasons in Israel); Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus tell the parable of the farmer who sowed his seed?

[8:5, 8:6, 8:7, 8:8]

Jesus told the parable of the farmer who sowed his seed. He wanted people to know four different ways people heard the word of God.

See: Sow (Plant); Gospel; Word of God

#### Why did Jesus say, “Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear”?

[8:8]

Scholars think Jesus said, “Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear,” because he wanted people to listen to what he said. That is, people needed to not only know what he taught, but also they needed to do the things he taught. He did not say this because he was angry. How was the seed the word of God in the parable? Scholars do not agree about how the seed was the word of God in the parable. Some scholars think it was about God ruling (see: 8:1). Other scholars think it was about people needing to obey what Jesus taught (see: 8:21).

See: Sow (Plant); Parable; Kingdom of God; Word of God

#### Why did Jesus speak about the seed beside the road?

[8:12]

Jesus spoke about the seed beside the road because he wanted his listeners to know how Satan tries to take away the word of God from people. That is, Satan took the word of God from people in the same way birds ate seeds from a road. Satan did not want people to know the word of God. He also did not want God to save people from the punishment of sinning.

See: 2 Corinthians 4:3-4

See: Metaphor; Sow (Plant); Satan (The Devil); Word of God

#### What did Jesus say about the seed that fell on the rock?

[8:13]

Jesus said some seed fell on the rock. He used this to talk about how some people rejoice when they hear the word of God. However, they stop believing in it when they begin to suffer because of it. Seeds that were thrown over rocks did only grew for a short time. This is because it did not have any water or deep roots.

See: Metaphor; Parable; Rejoice (Joy, Joyful); Word of God; Sow (Plant); Eternal Security

#### What happened to the seed that fell among the thorns?

[8:14]

Jesus said that thorns grew with the good plants. Thorns took the things from the soil that the good plants needed to grow. Therefore, nothing could grow around the thorns. These thorns “choked” the life from the good plants. In the same way, people were “choked”(συμπνίγω/g4846) by the “cares, and riches, and pleasures of this life.” Jesus said these people were never able to do the things that honored God (see: 3:8-9).

**Advice to translators**: A “thorn” was a plant with thorns. It was a type of weed. It was a plant that grew quickly and hamre other plants. It did not do anything good.

See: Sow (Plant); Metaphor

#### How did Jesus speak about the seed that fell on good soil?

[8:15]

Scholars think there were two ways Jesus spoke about the seed that fell on good soil. Some scholars think Jesus wanted Christians to know that more people believed in Jesus (see: Acts 6:7; Colossians 1:5-6). Other scholars think Jesus wanted Christians to know that there were many people who trusted in God and Jesus more than they did before. Perhaps Jesus meant both.

See: Sow (Plant); Metaphor

## 8:16-18

#### Why did Jesus tell the parable of the lamp?

[8:16]

Jesus told the parable of the lamp to talk about how God wanted the disciples to listen very carefully to what Jesus said. Matthew and Mark also wrote about the parable of the lamp.

See: Matthew 5:14-16; Mark 4:21-25

See: Parable; Disciple

#### How did Jesus speak about the “light”?

[8:16, 8:17]

Scholars think different things about how Jesus spoke about the “light.”

Some scholars think it was a metaphor for the things Jesus taught. Jesus taught that God wanted people to believe in the word of God (see: 8:11-15).

Some scholars think it was a metaphor for the people who followed Jesus. It taught the word of God to other people (see: 24:44-48).

Some scholars think it was a metaphor for what people thought about the things Jesus taught.

See: Metaphor; Light and Darkness (Metaphor); Word of God

#### What did God give or take away?

[8:18]

Scholars think God either told people more things about himself or he made the things that they already knew about him leave them. This was because of how people listened to Jesus (see: 8:11-15). Some scholars say a person who did not believe in the word of God was wrong to think he knew anything about God.

See: 11:33; 12:2

See: Word of God

## 8:19-21

#### Why did Luke tell this story about Jesus and his family?

[8:19]

Luke told this story about Jesus and his family so people would know how great was the message Jesus taught. He wanted people to hear, believe, and obey the word of God (see: 8:11,15,21). Matthew and Mark also wrote about this.

See: Matthew 12:46-50; Mark 3:31-35

See: Word of God; Family of Jesus

#### Why did Jesus say his family were the people who heard and did the word of God?

[8:21]

Some scholars think Jesus spoke about his “mother and brothers” as a metaphor. He wanted to say that everyone who heard his word and did the things his word said to do were a member of his family. Many scholars think Jesus did not reject his mother and brothers, but he made other people able to become members of his family. On the other hand, some scholars think Jesus spoke against family when they wanted people to stop obeying God’s word (see: Luke 14:26; 18:29-30).

See: Metaphor; Children of God; Word of God

## 8:22-25

#### Why did Luke write about Jesus stopping the storm?

[8:24]

When Luke wrote about Jesus stopping the storm, he wanted Christians to know that Jesus controlled the winds and the seas. In ancient times, people did not think these things could be controlled. These miracles came near the time when Peter said Jesus is the Messiah (see: Luke 9:20). Matthew and Mark also wrote about this.

See: Matthew 8:23-27; Mark 4:35-41

See: Miracle; Messiah (Christ)

See Map: Sea of Galilee

#### Why did the disciples call Jesus “Master”?

[8:24]

The disciples called Jesus “master”(ἐπιστάτης/g1988) because they honored Jesus. They called him “master” twice because they honored Jesus in the same way they honored God.

#### How did Jesus “rebuke” the wind and water?

[8:24]

Jesus “rebuked”( ἐπιτιμάω/g2008) the wind and water with his own power. He did not pray to God. That is, Jesus wanted his disciples to know he has the same power God has (see: Psalm 89:9). Scholars think that the wind and water immediately settled down after Jesus spoke.

#### Why did the disciples not have faith?

[8:25]

Scholars think there were two reasons the disciples did not have faith. That is, they did not fully trust Jesus.

The disciples did not have faith because they did not think Jesus was able to stop the storm.

They also did not have faith because they feared they were going to die.

See: Disciple

## 8:26-39

#### Where was the “region of the Gerasenes”?

[8:26]

See Map: Sea of Galilee; Gerasenes

#### Why did the demon possessed man fall down in front of Jesus?

[8:28]

Scholars think the demon possessed man fell down in front of Jesus because the demons feared Jesus. The demons gave power to the possessed man, but they had no power compared to Jesus. They did not want Jesus to punish them. However, here the demons were not worshipping Jesus.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Worship

#### What was meant by the words, “Most High God”?

[8:28]

Some scholars think the words “Most High God” were used to talk about God being more powerful and greater than any other god. Other scholars think the demon possessed man called God the “Most High” because that was what Gentiles called the God of the Jews. They were in a place where the Gentiles lived.

**Advice to translators**: Although this talks about God being greater than other gods, this does not mean that the other gods are real. The other gods are not real and have never lived.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Gentile

#### Why did the demon possessed man call Jesus “Son of the Most High God”?

[8:28]

Scholars think the demon possessed man called Jesus “Son of the Most High God” because Jesus rules over everything, including demons. He gave permission for Satan to rule the demons. The demons did not want Jesus to punish or harm them. Gabriel, the angel of God, also called Jesus the “Son of the Most High God” (see: 1:32).

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)); Angel

#### Why did Jesus ask the demon possessed man his name?

[8:30]

Scholars think there were several reasons why Jesus asked the demon possessed man his name.

Jesus wanted people to know that thousands of demons controlled the man. “Legion” was a name for a group of about 6,000 Roman soldiers.

Jesus wanted people to know that he has power over the demons. Jesus had power over demon possessed people without asking their names (see: 4:33-36).

Jesus wanted people to know that the man was a person even though the demons controlled him. It was a way Jesus wanted people to know that he had compassion for him.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### What was the abyss?

[8:31]

See: Abyss (Bottomless Pit)

#### Why did the demons ask Jesus to send them into the pigs?

[8:32]

Scholars think there are several reasons why the demons wanted to go into the pigs.

The demons did not want Jesus to make them go into the abyss.

The demons knew that Jesus did not want the demons to go into other people.

The demons wanted to control animals if they were no longer able to control people.

See: Demon; Abyss (Bottomless Pit); Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did Jesus allow the demons to go into the pigs?

[8:32]

Jesus allowed the demons to go into the pigs. Scholars think he did this for many reasons.

Jesus wanted people to know that God will judge demons. This will happen when the known world ends and is recreated. He will send them into the abyss.

The demons went into the abyss when the pigs went into the sea.

Jesus created everything. Therefore, he has the ability to do anything he wants with his creation.

Jesus cared more about the man than about the pigs.

1. It made people know that the man was really free from the demons.

See: Demon; World; Day of Judgment; Abyss (Bottomless Pit); Punish (Punishment); Spiritual Warfare

#### Why did the people ask Jesus to leave?

[8:37]

Scholars think there are several reasons why the people asked Jesus to leave.

They cared more about losing the pigs than about Jesus rescuing the man from the demons.

They were afraid because Jesus has the same power over demons that God has.

They were afraid of Jesus. They did not want him to interfere with Roman rule over the Jews.

See: Demon; Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)

## 8:40-56

#### Who was Jairus?

[8:41]

Jairus was the leader of a synagogue. He read Old Testament Scriptures in the synagogue meetings. He also was a leader in the community. Some scholars think that his name was the same as, “God will awaken.” He was different from other synagogue leaders. He bowed down at Jesus’ feet and asked Jesus to heal. He did not argue with Jesus.

See: Synagogue

#### How did the woman suffer?

[8:43]

Scholars think the woman suffered in three ways.

She had a bleeding illness for twelve years.

Because of her bleeding, she was unclean according to the law of Moses (see: Leviticus 15:25-33). That is, she had to be separated from people. That is, because they would be unclean if they touched her or if she touched them. She could not worship in the temple. The people in the crowd did not have compassion for her or even look at her.

She was poor. The Gospel of Mark said she spent all her money on doctors but she only got more sick (see: Mark 5:26).

See: Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses; Worship; Temple; Gospel

#### Why did the woman want to touch the edge of Jesus’ coat?

[8:44]

Some scholars think the woman wanted to touch the edge of Jesus’ coat because she believed in magic. More scholars say she believed Jesus was able to heal her (see: 8:48). That is, she did not believe in magic. Jesus healed other people when they touched him (see: 6:19).

See: Sorcery; Miracle

#### Why did Jesus ask who touched him?

[8:45]

Jesus asked who touched him because he wanted all the people to know he healed the woman. Scholars think Jesus already knew who touched him before he asked. He wanted the woman to talk about what had happened to her. Some scholars think this was so others would know that Jesus had the power to heal the woman completely. Also, Jesus wanted others would know that the woman was now clean. That is, she was able to go back into the community and no longer needed to be separated from people.

See: Clean and Unclean; Miracle

#### Why did Jesus call the woman “daughter”?

[8:48]

Scholars think there are three reasons Jesus called the woman “daughter.”

Jesus wanted people to know he had compassion for her.

Jesus wanted people to know she came back into the community. That is, she was no longer unclean.

Luke wanted his readers to know that this story happened at the same time Jesus made another person's daughter alive again.

See: Clean and Unclean

#### Why did Jesus tell Jairus to not fear?

[8:50]

Scholars think Jesus told Jairus not to fear because his daughter’s death made him fear. Jairus was afraid it was too late for Jesus to heal her. However, Jesus wanted Jairus to trust him that his daughter would be healed.

#### Why did Jesus use the word “sleep”?

[8:52]

The word “sleep” was a metaphor used to talk about someone who was dead. Some scholars think Jesus told the crowd that the girl was not dead. She was only sleeping because he knew he was going to heal her and make her alive again.

See: John 11:11-14

See: Sleep (Metaphor)

#### Why did all the crying people start laughing?

[8:53]

Scholars think there are two reasons why they quickly changed from crying to laughing.

Someone paid these people to mourn for the girl. Therefore, they were not really sad about the girl’s death.

They did not think Jesus had the power to make the girl alive again. Perhaps they did not know Jesus made a man alive again in Nain (see: 7:11-16).

See Map: Nain

#### Why did Jesus tell the parents not to tell anyone that he made their daughter alive again?

[8:56]

Scholars think there are several reasons why Jesus told the parents not to tell anyone that Jesus made their daughter alive again.

Jesus wanted people to know that following him caused suffering, not comfort and miracles.

Jesus judged the people who laughed.

Jesus did not want those who did not believe to know about what he was doing.

Jesus wanted them to care for their daughter.

Jesus also did not want all of his disciples to see the miracle (see: Luke 8:51).

Jesus wanted to help his disciples understand who was Jesus (see: Luke 9:20).

Jesus wanted to wait until after he became alive again for people to know he has power to make people alive again.

See: Matthew 9:26

See: Miracle; Disciple; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Messianic Secret

#### Luke 8:1

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### The twelve

"His twelve disciples" or "His twelve apostles"

#### Luke 8:2

##### who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

"whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

##### Mary who was called Magdalene, from whom seven demons had been driven out

"Mary, whom people called Magdalene, and from whom Jesus had driven out seven demons"

#### Luke 8:3

##### Joanna ... Susanna

They were two of the "certain women" mentioned in verse 2.

##### Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

"Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza." Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager.

##### provided for their needs

"provided what they needed" or "supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

#### Luke 8:4

##### were coming to him

"were coming to Jesus"

#### Luke 8:5

##### A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

##### some fell

"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

##### it was trampled underfoot

"people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

##### the birds of the sky devoured it

"the birds ate all of the seed" or "birds flew down and ate all of the seeds"

#### Luke 8:6

##### it withered away

"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the plants became dry and shriveled up"

##### it had no moisture

"it did not have enough water" or "they were too dry"

#### Luke 8:7

##### choked it

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

#### Luke 8:8

##### produced a crop

"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

##### a hundred times greater

"a hundred times greater than the seed that he sowed"

##### Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is saying that what he has just said is important, and people may need to take some effort to understand it. Alternate translation: "Let the one who has ears to hear listen" or "If anyone can hear, let him listen and understand" or "If you have ears to hear, then listen"

#### Luke 8:10

##### The knowledge ... of the kingdom of God has been given to you

"God has given to you the knowledge ... of the kingdom of God" or "You have received the knowledge ... of the kingdom of God"

##### the secrets of the kingdom of God

These are truths that have been hidden, but Jesus is now revealing them.

##### for others

"for other people." This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

##### seeing they may not see

"though they see, they will not perceive" or "though they see things, they will not understand them" or "though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean"

##### hearing they may not understand

"though they hear, they will not understand" or "though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth." This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah.

#### Luke 8:11

##### The seed is the word of God

"The seed is the message from God"

#### Luke 8:12

##### The ones along the road

"The seeds that fell along the path"

##### are those who have heard

"represent people who have heard" or "show what happens to people who have heard"

##### the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts

"the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their thoughts"

#### Luke 8:14

##### The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

##### they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life

"the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

##### the cares

"the things that people worry about"

##### pleasures of this life

"things in this life that people enjoy"

##### and their fruit does not mature

"and they do not bear ripe fruit" or "and, like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works"

#### Luke 8:15

##### the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones

"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

##### bear fruit with patient endurance

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort"or "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

#### Luke 8:16

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable.

#### Luke 8:17

##### nothing is hidden that will not be made known

"everything that is hidden will be made known"

##### nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light

"and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

#### Luke 8:18

##### to the one who has, more will be given to him

"whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

##### the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him

"whoever does not have understanding will lose even the understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

#### Luke 8:20

##### He was told

"People told him" or "Someone told him"

#### Luke 8:21

##### My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it

The people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

#### Luke 8:22

##### They set sail

"They started sailing" or "They started their trip"

#### Luke 8:23

##### he fell asleep

"Jesus began to sleep"

##### their boat was filling with water

The strong winds caused high waves, and the water went into the boat.

#### Luke 8:24

##### the raging of the water

"the violent waves"

##### they ceased

"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

#### Luke 8:25

##### Where is your faith?

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

##### Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?

This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation: "What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

#### Luke 8:26

##### the region of the Gerasenes

The Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

#### Luke 8:27

##### a certain man from the city who had demons

"a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

##### who had demons

"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons controlled"

##### tombs

These are places where people put dead bodies. They may have been caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

#### Luke 8:28

##### he cried out

"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

##### fell down before him

"he knelt before Jesus" or "lay down before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

##### he said with a loud voice

"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

##### What have you to do with me

"Why are you bothering me"

##### Son of the Most High God

It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

#### Luke 8:29

##### many times it had seized him

"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

##### though he was bound ... and kept under guard

"though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

##### he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness

"the demon would make him go into the wilderness"

#### Luke 8:30

##### Legion

A legion is a large number of soldiers or people. Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade" or "Army"

#### Luke 8:31

##### They kept begging him

"The demons kept begging Jesus"

#### Luke 8:32

##### was there feeding on the hillside

"was nearby eating grass on the hill"

#### Luke 8:33

##### rushed

ran very fast

#### Luke 8:35

##### found the man from whom the demons had gone out

"saw the man whom the demons had left"

##### in his right mind

"sane" or "behaving normally"

#### Luke 8:36

##### those who had seen it

"those who had seen what had happened"

##### the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed

"Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

#### Luke 8:37

##### the region of the Gerasenes

"that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26

##### they were overwhelmed with great fear

"they were very afraid"

##### and returned

"and returned across the lake" or "to go back to the other side of the lake"

#### Luke 8:39

##### give a full account of what God has done for you

"tell them everything about what God has done for you"

#### Luke 8:41

##### fell down at Jesus' feet

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:42

##### was dying

"was about to die"

##### As Jesus was on his way

"As Jesus went with him"

##### the crowds of people pressed together around him

"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

#### Luke 8:43

##### had been bleeding

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

##### and could not be healed by anyone

"but no one could heal her"

#### Luke 8:44

##### touched the edge of his coat

"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes. This is probably what she touched.

#### Luke 8:46

##### Someone did touch me

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional touch from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

##### I know that power has gone out from me

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I know that my power healed someone"

#### Luke 8:47

##### that she could not escape notice

"that she could not prevent people from noticing her" or "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

##### she came trembling

"she came trembling with fear"

##### fell down before him

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

#### Luke 8:48

##### Daughter

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

##### your faith has made you well

"because of your faith, you have become well" or "because you believe, you are healed"

##### Go in peace

This is a way of saying "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

#### Luke 8:49

##### the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

#### Luke 8:50

##### she will be healed

"she will be well" or "she will live again"

#### Luke 8:51

##### When he came to the house

"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

##### he allowed no one to enter with him

"Jesus did not allow anyone to go inside with him"

#### Luke 8:53

##### began to mock him, knowing that she was dead

"laughed at him because they knew that the girl was dead"

#### Luke 8:54

##### he took her by the hand

"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

#### Luke 8:55

##### Her spirit returned

"Her spirit returned to her body" or Her life returned" or "She became alive again"

#### Luke 8:56

##### to tell no one

"not to tell anyone"

Chapter 9

1He called the twelve together and gave them power and authority to drive out all demons and to cure diseases.2He sent them out to preach the kingdom of God and to heal the sick.3He said to them, "Take nothing for your journey—no staff, no wallet, no bread, no money, and no extra tunic.4Whatever house you enter, stay there until you leave.5Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave that town, shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them."6Then they departed and went through the villages, proclaiming the gospel and healing everywhere.

7Now Herod the tetrarch heard about all that was happening, and he was perplexed, because it was said by some that John had risen from the dead,8and others said that Elijah had appeared, and still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen.9Herod said, "I beheaded John. Who is this about whom I hear such things?" And so he tried to see him.

10When the apostles returned, they told him everything they had done. Then he took them with him, and they went away privately to a town called Bethsaida.11But when the crowds heard about this, they followed him. He welcomed them and spoke to them about the kingdom of God, and he cured those who needed healing.12Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food, because we are here in an isolated place."

13But he said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said, "We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people."

14(There were about five thousand men.) He said to his disciples, "Have them sit down in groups of about fifty each."15So they did this, and made the people sit down.16Taking the five loaves and the two fish, he looked up to heaven, he blessed them and broke them into pieces, and he gave them to the disciples to set before the crowd.17They all ate and were satisfied, and what was left over was picked up—twelve baskets of broken pieces.

18It came about while Jesus was praying by himself, the disciples were with him. He questioned them, saying, "Who do the crowds say that I am?"

19They answered, "John the Baptist. But others say Elijah, and others say that one of the prophets from long ago has risen."

20Then he said to them, "But who do you say that I am?"

Peter answered, "The Christ of God."

21But he warned and instructed them to tell this to no one,22saying, "The Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes, and he will be killed and on the third day be raised."23Then he said to them all, "If anyone wants to come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross daily and follow me.24Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it.25What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?26Whoever is ashamed of me and my words, of him will the Son of Man be ashamed when he comes in his own glory and the glory of the Father and of the holy angels.27But truly I say to you, there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God."

28Now about eight days after Jesus said these words, he took with him Peter and John and James and went up on the mountain to pray.29As he was praying, the form of his face was changed, and his clothes became brilliant white.30Behold, two men were talking with him, Moses and Elijah,31who appeared in glory, talking with him about his departure, which he was about to bring to completion in Jerusalem.32Now Peter and those who were with him were heavy with sleep, but when they became fully awake, they saw his glory and the two men who were standing with him.33As they were going away from Jesus, Peter said to him, "Master, it is good for us to be here. Let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." (He did not know what he was saying.)34As he was saying this, a cloud came and overshadowed them, and they were afraid as they entered into the cloud.35A voice came out of the cloud, saying, "This is my Son, the one who is chosen; listen to him."36When the voice had spoken, Jesus was found alone. They kept silent and told no one in those days anything of what they had seen.

37Now on the next day, when they came down from the mountain, a large crowd met him.38Behold, a man from the crowd cried out, saying, "Teacher, I beg you to look at my son, for he is my only child.39You see, a spirit takes control over him and he suddenly screams; it causes him to have convulsions so that he foams at the mouth. It hardly ever leaves him and it bruises him badly.40I begged your disciples to force it out, but they could not."

41Jesus answered and said, "You unbelieving and perverse generation, how long must I be with you and put up with you? Bring your son here."42While the boy was coming, the demon threw him to the ground and shook him with convulsions. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit and healed the boy, and gave him back to his father.43Then they were all amazed at the greatness of God. While they all were marveling at everything he was doing, he said to his disciples,44"Let these words go deeply into your ears: The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men."45But they did not understand this statement. It was hidden from them, so they could not know its meaning, and yet they were afraid to ask about this statement.

46Then an argument started among them about which of them would be the greatest.47But Jesus, knowing the reasoning in their hearts, took a little child and put him by his side48and said to them, "Whoever welcomes this child in my name welcomes me; and whoever welcomes me welcomes the one who sent me. For whoever is least among you all is the one who is great."

49John answered, "Master, we saw someone forcing out demons in your name and we prevented him, because he does not follow along with us."50"Do not stop him," Jesus said, "because whoever is not against you is for you."

51When the days drew near for him to be taken up, he set his face to go to Jerusalem.52He sent messengers on ahead of him, and they went and entered into a Samaritan village to prepare everything for him.53But the people there did not welcome him because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem.54When the disciples James and John saw this, they said, "Lord, do you want us to command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them?"55But he turned and rebuked them,56and they went on to another village.

57As they were going along the road, someone said to him, "I will follow you wherever you go."

58Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and birds in the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."59Then he said to another, "Follow me."

But he said, "Lord, first let me go and bury my father."

60But he said to him, "Leave the dead to bury their own dead. But as for you, go and proclaim far and wide the kingdom of God."

61Then someone else said, "I will follow you, Lord, but first let me say goodbye to those in my home."

62Jesus replied to him, "No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back is fit for the kingdom of God."

### Luke 9

## 9:1-6

#### Who were the twelve?

[9:1]

The twelve Luke wrote about were the twelve disciples.

See: Disciple

#### Why did Luke wrote, “power and authority”?

[9:1]

Luke wrote that Jesus gave the disciples “power,” he wanted people to know that Jesus gave them the ability to do something. Luke wrote that Jesus gave the disciples “authority.”That is, Jesus gave them permission to do something.

See: Disciple

#### What did it mean to have power and authority “over all the demons”?

[9:1]

Jesus gave the disciples power and authority “over all the demons.” He gave them permission and power to make the demons to leave people and to stop controlling people.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Disciple

#### What did it mean to “preach the kingdom of God”?

[9:2]

See: Preach (Preacher); Kingdom of God

#### Why was shaking dust off feet a testimony against people who did not receive the twelve?

[9:5]

The disciples shook the dust off of their feet because people did not believe the things they said about Jesus. This was a symbol. In ancient Israel, people did this when they left places where Gentiles lived because the Gentiles were unclean. Because people did not believe in Jesus, they were unclean. This is why the disciples shook the dust off of their feet. Perhaps this was a warning that God will reject these people.

See: Acts 13:48-51

See: Disciple; Gentile; Clean and Unclean; Symbol

#### 9:7-9

#### Who was Herod the tetrarch?

[9:7]

Herod the tetrarch was Herod Antipas. Sometimes people called him the tetrarch because he reigned over one fourth of the territory his father reigned over before him. Sometimes people called him a king (see: Mark 6:14).

See: King Herod

#### Why did some people say Elijah appeared rather than became alive again?

[9:8]

Some people said Elijah appeared rather than become alive again because Elijah did not die (see: 2 Kings 2:11). Instead, he went to heaven without dying. People expected Elijah to appear before the coming of the messiah (see: Malachi 4:5-6).

See: Heaven; Messiah (Christ)

## 9:10-17

#### Where was Behsaida?

[9:10]

See Map: Bethsaida

#### How many people were in the crowd?

[9:14]

Luke wrote there were five thousand men in the crowd. However, scholars say there were also women and children in the crowd. In ancient times, people often counted only men in a crowd (see: Matthew 14:21). Perhaps there were about twenty thousand people in the crowd.

#### How did Jesus “bless” the food?

[9:16]

Jesus blessed the food. Some scholars say Jesus “consecrated” the food. That is, Jesus asked God to bless the people who were going to eat the food. More scholars think Jesus “thanked God” for the food.

See: John 17:1

See: Bless (Blessing)

## 9:18-22

#### What did it mean that Jesus was “praying by himself”?

[9:18]

Luke wrote that Jesus was “praying by himself”. Jesus and the disciples were away from the crowd. Perhaps the disciples came and joined Jesus while he was praying.

See: Disciple

#### Why did Peter know that Jesus is the “Christ of God”?

[9:20]

Peter thought that Jesus was “the Christ of God”. In Matthew’s gospel, Jesus told Peter that God the Father revealed to him that Jesus is the Christ (see: Matthew 16:16-17).

See: Messiah (Christ); Gospel; God the Father;Reveal (Revelation)

#### Why did Jesus warn the disciples not to tell people he is the Christ of God?

[9:21]

See: Messianic Secret

#### Why did Jesus have to suffer?

[9:22]

Jesus had to suffer. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about certain prophecies about things that will happen to the messiah (see: Luke 24:45-46; Isaiah 53). Others scholars think Jesus was preparing the disciples for what was going to happen.

See: Luke 24:47; Ephesians 1:7; 2 Corinthians 5:21)

See: Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Messiah (Christ); Disciple

#### Why did Jesus call himself the “Son of Man?”

[9:22]

See: Son of Man

### 9:23-27

#### What did it mean that a Christian “must deny himself”?

[9:23]

Luke wrote that a Christian must deny himself. Scholars think Jesus meant that a Christian must do what God wants him to do. That is, a Christian must give up the right to do what they want to do and instead do what God wants them to do.

#### What did it mean for a Christian to “take up his cross daily”?

[9:23]

Some scholars think Jesus used a metaphor when he said that a Christian must “take up his cross daily.” This meant that anyone who wanted to be a disciple of Jesus had to be prepared to suffer for being a Christian. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about Christians doing things God wanted and not the things they wanted to do (see: Galatians 2:20).

See: Metaphor; Cross; Suffer

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “whoever would save his life will lose it”?

[9:24]

The person who wanted to “save his life” was a person that was willing to do what God wanted him to do. When they do this, they will suffer. Scholars think Jesus was talking about a person’s soul when he spoke about their life.

See: Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins); Soul; Metaphor

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “whoever loses his life for my sake will save it”?

[9:24]

A person who “loses his life” is a person who gave up his right to live in the way he wants to live. He did this so he could follow Jesus. This person did this to honor God because they were at peace with God.

#### What was meant by the words, “gain the whole world”?

[9:25]

Someone who gained the whole word was someone who owned the world and everything in it. It was hyperbole to speak in this way. They were very rich and powerful.

See: Hyperbole

#### What did it mean to be “ashamed” of Jesus and his words?

[9:26]

Jesus talked about someone who was ashamed of him and the things he said. This person refused to be a disciple because he felt “ashamed” and afraid of being embarrassed in front of other people. That is, he was afraid that other people would insult or mock him for following Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### When does Jesus come in “his own glory and the glory of the Father, and the angels”?

[9:26]

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Glory (Glorify); God the Father; Angel

#### What did Jesus mean by saying that some “will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God”?

[9:27]

When someone tasted death, this was a way of saying that they died. Jesus said that some people will not die before they see the kingdom of God. Scholars think different things about what it meant to “see the kingdom of God”.

Some scholars think Jesus was talking about the disciples who would see the form of Jesus change on the mountain (see: Luke 9:28-36).

Other scholars think Jesus was talking about people seeing him when God made him alive again (see: Mark 15:33-16:13).

Other scholars think Jesus was talking about people seeing the Holy Spirit do great things (see: Acts 2:1-4).

See: Kingdom of God; Disciple; Resurrect (Resurrection)

## 9:28-36

#### Where did Jesus take Peter, John, and James?

[9:28]

Luke did not write the name of the mountain where Jesus took Peter, John, and James. Scholars think it was Hermon, Tabor, or Meron. Peter wrote the mountain was holy (see: 2 Peter 1:18).

See: Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)

See Map: Mt. Hermon; Mt. Tabor; Mt. Meron

#### How was “the form of his face” changed?

[9:29]

Luke wrote that the form of Jesus’ face changed. Jesus’ face looked different in some way. Perhaps this was because Jesus’ face began to shine with a glory from heaven.

See: Glory (Glorify); Heaven

#### How did Moses and Elijah appear in “glorious splendor”?

[9:30, 9:31]

Moses and Elijah appeared in “glorious splendor.” Like Jesus, they shone brightly with glory from heaven. That is, they were surrounded with very bright light.

See: Glory (Glorify); Heaven

#### What was the “departure” about which Jesus, Moses, and Elijah spoke?

[9:31]

When Moses and Elijah spoke to Jesus about his “departure,” they were speaking about Jesus dying. This happened in Jerusalem.

#### Why did Peter want to “make three shelters”?

[9:33]

Peter wanted to make three shelters. Scholars think Peter was thinking about the shelters that were used to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles when people lived in shelters for seven days (see: Leviticus 23:33-42). They think Peter was wanted to stay on the mountain with Jesus, Moses, and Elijah.

**Advice to translators**: A shelter is a type of tent.

See: Festival of Shelters

#### What was the cloud that came and overshadowed them?

[9:34]

Luke wrote about a cloud. Some scholars think the cloud was like the pillar of cloud that led the people of Israel in the wilderness (see: Exodus 14:19-20). They think the cloud appeared and cast a shadow over Jesus, Moses, Elijah, and the disciples. Other scholars think the cloud came close to the ground and surrounded Jesus, Moses, Elijah, and the disciples.

See: Disciple

#### Who spoke out of the cloud?

[9:35]

When Luke wrote about someone speaking out of the cloud, it was God who was speaking.

#### What did it mean that Jesus was found alone?

[9:36]

Luke wrote that Jesus was found alone. He wanted people to know that the disciples no longer saw Moses and Elijah. They only saw Jesus.

See: Disciple

## 9:37-45

#### When speaking about a child, what did it mean that “a spirit takes control over him”?

[9:39]

Luke was writing about an evil spirit or demon taking possession of the child. That is, the demon controlled the boy’s body and caused him to shake violently and to cry out.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### Why did Jesus call the people an “unbelieving and depraved generation”?

[9:41]

Jesus called people an “unbelieving and depraved generation.” Some scholars think Jesus was telling the people that they were just like their ancestors, who also rejected God (see: Deuteronomy 32:5-6, 20). These people rejected Jesus.

See: Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)

#### What did it mean that Jesus “rebuked the unclean spirit”?

[9:42]

Luke wrote that Jesus “rebuked” the unclean spirit. Jesus commanded the evil spirit to leave the boy. That is, he made the demon stop controlling the boy.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### What did it mean that the Son of Man will be betrayed?

[9:44]

Luke wrote that the Son of Man was going to be betrayed. That is, someone Jesus trusted would help Jesus’ enemies arrest Jesus.

See: Son of Man

#### How was Jesus’ statement “hidden” from the disciples?

[9:45]

Scholars think that God caused Jesus’ statement to be “hidden.” That is, people did not understand what Jesus wanted to say. This is because it was not the right time for the meaning of what Jesus said to be revealed. God planned for a time in the future for the disciples to understand what Jesus said.

See: Reveal (Revelation); Disciple

## 9:46-48

#### What did it mean that the disciples were arguing about who would be “greatest”?

[9:46]

The disciples were arguing about who would be the greatest. Some scholars think the disciples were arguing about which of them was the greatest disciple at that present time. More scholars think the disciples were arguing about which of them was to be the greatest disciple in God’s kingdom. They wanted to be more honored that other people.

See: Disciple; Kingdom of God; Pride; Humble (Humility)

#### What did Jesus mean when he said “whoever welcomes this child in my name”?

[9:48]

Jesus put a “little child” next to him to teach the disciples a lesson about being great. Someone needed to help or care for a child. Because of this, someone must welcome a child. Jesus wanted the disciples to know that in the kingdom of God, they too needed someone greater than themselves to help them.

See: Disciple; Kingdom of God; Pride; Humble (Humility)

#### What did it mean that “whoever is least among you all is the one who is great”?

[9:48]

Luke wrote, “whoever is least among you all is the one who is great.” Some scholars think Jesus meant that whoever was a humble person was the one who was truly great. Others scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to know that God thought certain people were great who other people did not think they were great.

See: Disciple; Pride; Humble (Humility)

## 9:49-50

#### Why did John say, “he does not follow along with us”?

[9:49]

When John said these words to Jesus, he meant that the person who was forcing out demons was not one of the disciples.

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Demon; Disciple

## 9:51-56

#### What did it mean for Jesus to be “taken up”?

[9:51]

Jesus would be “taken up.” That is, God was going to take Jesus back up to heaven.

See: Ascend (Ascension); Heaven

#### What was meant by the words, “he set his face to go to Jerusalem”?

[9:51]

Luke wrote, “he set his face to go to Jerusalem.” Jesus decided to go to Jerusalem. That is, he was determined to start his journey to Jerusalem.

#### Who were the Samaritans?

[9:52]

See: Samaria

See Map: Samaria

#### Why did the people of Samaria not welcome Jesus?

[9:53]

The people of Samaria did not welcome Jesus because he was going to Jerusalem. The people of Samaria worshipped on Mount Gerizim. They did not like people traveling through Samaria to get to Jerusalem.

See Map: Mount Gerizim

#### Why did rebuke the disciples?

[9:55]

Scholars think that Jesus rebuked the disciples for wanting to see Samaria destroyed. This meant that Jesus told the disciples they were thinking in a wrong way. That is, they did not treat people the way God wanted them to treat other people.

See: Samaria; Disciple

See Map: Samaria

## 9:57-62

#### Why did Luke write, “the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head”?

[9:58]

Luke wrote, “the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” Foxes and birds had places where they lived. However, Jesus was always traveling and did not live in one place.

See: Son of Man

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “leave the dead to bury their own dead”?

[9:60]

Jesus said, “leave the dead to bury their own dead.” Some scholars think the first use of the word “dead” was speaking about those who were spiritually dead. That is, all those who did not know Jesus or had rejected him as the messiah. Because of this, they were separated from God. In ancient Israel, people often spoke about this as a type of death.

He said those who were spiritually dead can take care of burying those who were physically dead. His command saying, “follow me” meant he wanted that person to immediately go out and tell people about the kingdom of God.

See: Tomb; Messiah (Christ); Kingdom of God

#### Someone wanted to say goodbye to people at home before they followed Jesus. How did Jesus use a metaphor to answer them?

[9:62]

Someone wanted to say goodbye to people at home before they followed Jesus. Jesus answered them with a metaphor about plowing a field and then looking back. People used an animal to pull a plow. The farmer held a handle on the plow to make a straight trench in the ground. If the farmed looked back the trench was not straight. Just as the farmer should not look behind him, so a disciple should keep his eye on following Jesus.

See: Metaphor; Kingdom of God

#### Luke 9:1

##### He called

"Jesus called"

##### power and authority

Jesus gave them both the ability and the right to heal people.

##### to drive out all demons

"over all demons" or "to make all demons go away"

#### Luke 9:2

##### sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

##### to preach the kingdom of God

“to preach about the kingdom of God” or “to teach people about how God was going to show himself as king”

#### Luke 9:3

##### He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve" or "Before they left, Jesus said to them"

##### Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

##### staff

a large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against people who might attack them

##### wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

##### bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

#### Luke 9:4

##### until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

#### Luke 9:5

##### Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where the people do not receive you: When you leave"

##### shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

Doing this would show that the preachers rejected the people of that town. They did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

#### Luke 9:6

##### they departed

"they left the place were Jesus was"

##### healing everywhere

"healing people wherever they went"

#### Luke 9:7

##### Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. In verses 7-9, Luke tells about Herod.

##### Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

##### he was perplexed

"he was confused" or "he could not understand"

##### it was said by some

"some people said"

#### Luke 9:8

##### still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

"still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

#### Luke 9:9

##### I beheaded John. Who is this

"It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

##### And so he tried to see him

"And so he tried to see Jesus"

#### Luke 9:10

##### When the apostles returned

"When the apostles came back to where Jesus was"

##### they told him

"they told Jesus"

#### Luke 9:12

##### the day was about to come to an end

"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day"

##### an isolated place

"a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

#### Luke 9:13

##### five loaves of bread

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

##### two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people

"two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

#### Luke 9:14

##### Have them sit down

"Tell them to sit down"

#### Luke 9:16

##### Taking the five loaves

"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

##### he blessed them

"he blessed the bread and fish"

##### to set before the crowd

"to pass out to to crowd" or "to give to the crowd"

#### Luke 9:17

##### and were satisfied

"and had enough" or "and were content"

#### Luke 9:18

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### praying by himself

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying privately.

#### Luke 9:19

##### John the Baptist

"They say you are John the Baptist"

##### that one of the prophets from long ago has risen

"that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen from the dead"

#### Luke 9:20

##### Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

#### Luke 9:21

##### he warned and instructed them to tell this to no one

"he strongly warned them not to tell anyone"

#### Luke 9:22

##### The Son of Man must suffer ... and he will be killed

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man must suffer ... and I will be killed"

##### and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes

"and the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

##### he will be killed

"they will kill him"

##### on the third day

"on the third day of his death" or "on the third day after his death"

##### be raised

"God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

#### Luke 9:23

##### to come after me

"to be my disciple" or "to be one of my disciples"

##### must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

##### and take up his cross daily and follow me

"and carry his cross and follow me every day" or "and obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

#### Luke 9:25

##### What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

##### to gain the whole world

"to get everything in the world"

##### lose or forfeit himself

"ruin himself or give up his life"

#### Luke 9:26

##### my words

"what I say" or "what I teach"

##### of him will the Son of Man be ashamed

"the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

##### the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

##### the Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 9:27

##### But truly I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

##### there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: "some of you who are standing here will not experience death before you see"

##### will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God

"will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

#### Luke 9:30

##### Behold

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: "Suddenly"

#### Luke 9:31

##### who appeared in glory

"and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly"

##### his departure

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world"

#### Luke 9:32

##### were heavy with sleep

"were very sleepy"

##### they saw his glory

"they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

#### Luke 9:33

##### As they were going away

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

##### shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Luke 9:34

##### As he was saying this

"While Peter was saying these things"

##### they were afraid

They were not afraid of clouds. This was some kind of unusual fear came over them with this cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

##### they entered into the cloud

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did. Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

#### Luke 9:35

##### A voice came out of the cloud, saying

The voice belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud, saying"

##### my Son

Jesus is the Son of God. It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### the one who is chosen

"the one whom I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

#### Luke 9:36

##### Jesus was found alone

"they saw that Jesus was alone." Moses and Elijah were not with Jesus.

#### Luke 9:38

##### Behold, a man from the crowd cried out

The word "behold" alerts us to the new person. Alternate translation: "Now there was a man in the crowd who cried out"

#### Luke 9:39

##### he foams at the mouth

"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

#### Luke 9:41

##### You unbelieving and perverse generation

"You unbelieving and corrupt people." Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered.

##### how long must I be with you and put up with you?

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people do not believe. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

##### Bring your son here

Jesus is speaking to the father who addressed him.

#### Luke 9:43

##### everything he was doing

"everything Jesus was doing"

#### Luke 9:44

##### Let these words go deeply into your ears

"Listen carefully and remember"

##### The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men

Jesus is the Son of Man. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men" or "Someone will betray me, the Son of Man, and put me into the hands of my enemies"

#### Luke 9:45

##### It was hidden from them

"It was a mystery to them"

#### Luke 9:46

##### among them

"among the disciples"

#### Luke 9:47

##### knowing the reasoning in their hearts

"knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

#### Luke 9:48

##### in my name

"because of me"

##### the one who sent me

"God, who sent me"

#### Luke 9:49

##### John answered

"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus"

##### forcing out demons in your name

"forcing out demons by using your name" or "using your name to make demons go away"

#### Luke 9:50

##### whoever is not against you is for you

"if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

#### Luke 9:51

##### When the days drew near for him to be taken up

"When the time was coming for Jesus to go up to heaven"

##### he set his face

"he firmly decided" or "he made up his mind"

#### Luke 9:52

##### to prepare everything for him

"to make arrangements for his arrival"

#### Luke 9:53

##### did not welcome him

"did not want him to stay"

#### Luke 9:54

##### saw this

"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

#### Luke 9:55

##### he turned and rebuked them

"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John"

#### Luke 9:57

##### someone

This was not one of the disciples.

#### Luke 9:58

##### Foxes

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

##### birds in the sky

"birds that fly in the air"

##### the Son of Man has ... his head

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

##### nowhere to lay his head

"nowhere to rest his head" or "nowhere to sleep"

#### Luke 9:59

##### first let me go and bury my father

“before I do that, let me go and bury my father.” It is not clear whether the man’s father has already died or if the man wants to stay until his father dies. The main point is that he wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

#### Luke 9:60

##### Leave the dead to bury their own dead

Here "the dead" refers to people who are spiritually dead and do not respond to God. Alternate translation: "let spiritually dead people bury their own people who have died." The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

#### Luke 9:62

##### No one ... looks back, is fit for the kingdom of God

"Anyone who ... looks back is not fit for the kingdom of God."

##### No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back

"No one who starts to plow his field and looks back"

##### is fit for the kingdom of God

"is useful for the kingdom of God" or "is suitable for the kingdom of God"

Chapter 10

1Now after these things, the Lord appointed seventy[1](#footnote-target-1)others, and sent them out two by two ahead of him to every town and place where he himself was about to go.2He said to them, "The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few. Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out laborers into his harvest.3Go on your way. See, I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves.4Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals, and greet no one on the road.5Whatever house you enter, first say, 'May peace be on this house!'6If a son of peace is there, your peace will rest upon him, but if not, it will return to you.7Remain in that same house, eating and drinking what they provide, for the laborer is worthy of his wages. Do not move around from house to house.8Whatever town you enter, and they receive you, eat what is set before you9and heal the sick that are there. Say to them, 'The kingdom of God has come close to you.'10Whenever you enter a town and they do not receive you, go out into its streets and say,11'Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you! But know this: The kingdom of God is near.'12I say to you that on that day it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town.13Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes.14But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you.15You, Capernaum, do you think you will be exalted to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades.16The one who listens to you listens to me, and the one who rejects you rejects me, and the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me."

17The seventy returned with joy, saying, "Lord, even the demons submitted to us in your name."

18Jesus said to them, "I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning.19See, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing will in any way hurt you.20Nevertheless do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven."

21At that same hour he rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit and said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you concealed these things from the wise and understanding and revealed them to those who are untaught, like little children. Yes, Father, for so it was well pleasing in your sight.22"All things have been entrusted to me from my Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him."23Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately, "Blessed are those who see the things that you see.24I say to you, many prophets and kings desired to see the things you see, and they did not see them, and to hear the things that you hear, and they did not hear them."

25Behold, an expert in the law stood up so that he might test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

26Jesus said to him, "What is written in the law? How do you read it?"

27He gave an answer and he said, "You will love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind, and your neighbor as yourself."

28Jesus said to him, "You have answered correctly. Do this, and you will live."29But he, desiring to justify himself, said to Jesus, "Who is my neighbor?"

30Jesus answered him and said, "A certain man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho. He fell among robbers, who stripped him of his belongings, and beat him, and left him half dead.31By chance a certain priest was going down that way, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side.32In the same way, a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side.33But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came to where he was. When he saw him, he was moved with compassion.34He approached him and bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them. He set him on his own animal, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him.35The next day he took out two denarii, and gave them to the host, and said, 'Take care of him, and whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you.'36Which of these three do you think was a neighbor to him who fell among the robbers?"

37He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

Jesus said to him, "Go and do the same."

38Now as they were traveling along, he entered into a certain village, and a certain woman named Martha welcomed him into her house.39She had a sister named Mary, who sat at the Lord's feet and heard his word.40But Martha was overly busy with preparing to serve a meal. She came up to Jesus and said, "Lord, do you not care that my sister left me to serve alone? Therefore tell her to help me."

41But the Lord answered and said to her, "Martha, Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things,42but only one thing is necessary. Mary has chosen what is best, which will not be taken away from her."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Many of the best ancient copies readseventy but some readseventy-two.

### Luke 10

## 10:1-12

#### Why did Jesus send out people in groups of two?

[10:1]

Jesus sent out people in groups of two. In ancient times, people often traveled with other people. Perhaps he did this because in the Law of Moses, two people were needed to be a witness of something. These two people were witnesses of Jesus (see: Deuteronomy 19:15).

See: Law of Moses

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “the harvest is plentiful”?

[10:2]

Jesus said “the harvest is plentiful.” This is a metaphor. A farmer’s field was full of grain and was ready to be harvested. Jesus was saying there are many people ready to believe in him. The farmer needed people to harvest the grain. Jesus also needed his disciples to tell people about him. Jesus wanted people to pray to God, and ask him to have more people serve God.

See: Metaphor; Disciple

#### How were the disciples like lambs being sent out “in the midst of wolves”?

[10:3]

Jesus used a metaphor when speaking about his disciples. When he spoke about sheep, he was speaking about his disciples. Sheep need a shepherd to defend them and to watch over them. Wolves were wild animals that killed sheep. There were many people who rejected Jesus and tried to harm the disciples.

See: Metaphor; Disciple

**Advice to Translators**: A wolf is large type of dog that does not live with people.

#### Why did Jesus tell his disciples not to “carry a money bag, or a traveler’s bag, or sandals”?

[10:4]

Jesus told his disciples not to carry certain things. Scholars disagree about why told his disciples not to bring anything with them.

Some scholars think Jesus was telling the disciples not to carry extra money or clothing for their journey. He wanted them to trust that God would give them what they needed to serve these people.

Other scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to leave immediately.

See: Disciple

#### Why did Jesus command the disciples not to greet anyone on the road?

[10:4]

In ancient times, greetings often took a long time. Perhaps Jesus want people to hurry.

See: Disciple

#### Why did Jesus instruct the disciples to say, “May peace be on this house”?

[10:5]

Jesus wanted his disciples to say, “may peace be on this house.” Some scholars think Jesus wanted his disciples to greet people the way the Jews greeted one another when they entered someone’s home. They wanted people to be at peace with God.

#### What was a person of peace?

[10:6]

A person of peace accepted the peace from Jesus. Scholars think they were ready to receive peace or God prepared them to receive peace. This person wanted to be at peace and welcomed people who followed Jesus into their house.

#### Why did Jesus say that peace will return to you?

[10:6]

Jesus said that peace will return to you. He wanted people to know that God’s peace would not rest on that home. It would be like the disciples never even spoke the blessing.

See: Bless (Blessing); Disciple

#### Why did Jesus say, “the laborer is worthy of his wages”?

[10:7]

In ancient times, people often said “the laborer is worthy of his wages.” Anyone who did work had the right to receive money for the things he did. In the same way, Jesus wanted his disciples to know it was right for them to receive food and a place to sleep because they were teaching people about Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### How had the kingdom of God come close?

[10:9]

Luke wrote that the kingdom of God came close. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about his disciples, whom he sent out, healing and telling people about the kingdom of God. In this way, the kingdom had come near to them. Other scholars think Jesus was saying that because he was among them, the kingdom of God was now in the world. However, scholars think it will only be completed in the future. Other scholars think Jesus was offering to rule and be king, but he did not because people rejected him.

See: Justify (Justification)

#### What did Jesus mean with the words, “we wipe off against you” when speaking about the dust on the disciple’s feet?

[10:11]

See: Luke 9:5

#### Why did Jesus say it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for the town that rejected the followers of Jesus?

[10:12]

Jesus said that it would be better for the people of Sodom than for those who rejected him. The people of Sodom sinned more than other people and God punished them (see: Genesis: 18:20; 19:24). God will punish people more if they reject Jesus.

See: Punish (Punishment)

See Map: Sodom

## 10:13-20

#### What was a woe?

[10:13]

See: Woe

#### Where where Chorazin and Bethsaida?

[10:13]

Chorazin and Bethsaida were cities in Israel. The people in these cities were Jews.

See Map: Chorazin and Bethsaida

#### Where were Tyre and Sidon?

[10:13]

Tyre and Sidon were cities outside of Israel. The people in these cities were Gentiles.

See: Gentile

See Map: Tyre and Sidon

#### What were the “mighty works” about which Jesus spoke?

[10:13]

The “mighty works” or “miracles” about which Jesus spoke were the healings, making people alive again, and forcing out demons.

See: Miracle ; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### What did it mean to repent?

[10:13]

See: Repent (Repentance)

#### When will Jesus judge these cities?

[10:14]

Jesus will judge these cities after he returns at the end of the earth.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Judge (Judgment)

#### Where was Capernaum?

[10:15]

Capernaum was a city in Israel near the Sea of Galilee. Jesus stayed there often and did many miracles and taught people.

See: Miracle

See Map: Capernaum; Sea of Galilee

#### How was a city exalted to “heaven?”

[10:15]

A city “exalted to heaven” was a metaphor. This city was more honored than other cities. A city was exalted to “heaven” or the “sky” when God honored it. In ancient Israel, people thought that nothing was higher than the sky.

See: Metaphor;Heaven

#### What is Hades?

[10:15]

See: Hades (Sheol)

#### Jesus said, “whoever listens to you.” Who was he talking about?

[10:16]

When Jesus said “whoever listens to you,” he was talking about the disciples he sent. He gave them permission to say the things he wanted them to say. If the people listen to the disciples, it was as if they listened to Jesus. If people did not listen to the disciples, they rejected Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### Why did the demons submit to the disciples in the name of Jesus?

[10:17]

The demons submitted to the disciples in the name of Jesus. Scholars think the demons knew that Jesus gave the disciples permission to do things for him. Because of this, the demons obeyed the disciples.

See: Demon; Submit (Submission); Disciple

#### What did Jesus mean when he said he was “watching Satan fall from heaven”?

[10:18]

Jesus said that Satan fell from heaven. This is a metaphor.

Some scholars think Jesus was talking about when God cast Satan out of heaven (see: Isaiah 14:12-15; Ezekiel 28:12-19). That is, God made Satan live in hell, not heaven.

Other scholars think Jesus was talking about Jesus defeating Satan when he was tempted (see: Matthew 4: 1-11).

Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about Jesus and God defeating Satan.

See: Satan (The Devil); Heaven; Metaphor; Tempt (Temptation)

#### What was meant when Jesus said, “I have given you authority”?

[10:19]

Scholars think Jesus gave his disciples the permission to do things for him. He gave them the power to do things they could not do without him (see: Mark 16:17-18). They think Jesus gave his disciples power over the enemy, Satan.

See: Disciple; Satan (The Devil)

#### What was meant by the words, “your names are engraved in heaven”?

[10:20]

Some scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to rejoice that they were joined together in some way with other Christians. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about God’s book of life (see: Revelation 3:5).

See: Disciple; Rejoice (Joy, Joyful); Heaven

## 10:21-24

#### How did Jesus rejoice in the Holy Spirit?

[10:21]

Jesus rejoiced in the Holy Spirit because the Holy Spirit filled him and led him (see: 3:22;4:1). The Holy Spirit wanted Jesus to pray these things (see: 10:21-22). This brought joy to Jesus.

See: Rejoice (Joy, Joyful); Holy Spirit; Indwelling of the Holy Spirit

#### Who is the Lord of heaven and earth?

[10:21]

God the Father is the Lord of heaven and earth. That is, God the Father made heaven and earth. This is why he is Lord over heaven and earth.

See: Genesis 1:1-25; John 1:1-5

See: God the Father; Heaven; Create (Creation, Creature); Lord

#### What did God conceal and reveal?

[10:21]

Scholars say God concealed and revealed things about the kingdom of God. At this time, he wanted people to know certain things about the kingdom of God. At this time, he also wanted people not to know certain things about the kingdom of God.

See: Kingdom of God; Reveal (Revelation)

#### Who were the little children?

[10:21]

Jesus spoke about little children. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think he was speaking about people who did not know much about the Bible (see: Hebrews 5:13). Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about people who believed the right things about God even when the Jewish teachers did not believe the right things.

See: Metaphor

#### What did it mean that the Father entrusted Jesus with all things?

[10:22]

God the Father entrusted Jesus with all things. Scholars think that when the Father entrusted all things to Jesus, he gave Jesus all knowledge. That is, Jesus knew everything that God the Father was going to do. He also gave Jesus permission to give eternal life to other people (see: Matthew 28:18; John 17:2).

See: God the Father; Eternal Life

#### Why did no one know who the Son was except the Father and no one knew who the Father was except the Son?

[10:22]

No one knew who the Son was except the Father and no one knew who the Father was except the Son. This is because only the Father and the Son know each other fully. The Father and the Son know each other from eternity.

See: God the Father; Son of God

#### How did Jesus reveal God the Father to people?

[10:22]

Jesus revealed God the Father to people by telling them about God and what God wanted. He also revealed God the Father by doing God’s will.

See: God the Father; Reveal (Revelation);Will of God

#### What did it mean that the disciples were “blessed”?

[10:23]

Jesus said that the disciples were blessed. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about a person who had received great favor from God. God favored them because they witnessed the things Jesus said and did.

See: Disciple; Bless (Blessing)

## 10:25-29

#### What was a teacher of the Jewish laws?

[10:25]

See: Law of Moses

#### Why did this man want to test Jesus?

[10:25]

This man tried to test Jesus. Scholars disagree about why this man did this.

He wanted to know the things Jesus taught about the Law of Moses.

He wanted to trick Jesus into saying something that would make people angry.

He thought he knew more about the Law of Moses than Jesus.

See: Test; Law of Moses

#### How did the teacher of the law answer Jesus?

[10:27]

The teacher of the Law of Moses said what was written in the Law of Moses when he answered Jesus’ question (see: Deuteronomy 6:5; Leviticus 19:18).

See: Law of Moses

#### How did the teacher of the law wanted to justify himself?

[10:29]

The teacher of the Law of Moses wanted to justify himself. Some scholars think that when the teacher wanted to make people think he was right. That is, he wanted to make people think that he was wise. Other scholars say this man wanted to justify himself because he did evil things to other people.

See: Law of Moses; Justify (Justification); Wise (Wisdom, Fool)

## 10:30-37

## Where was Jericho?

[10:30]

See Map: Jericho

#### How did someone “fall among robbers”?

[10:30]

When someone “fell among robbers,” the robbers violently attacked him. They took his clothes and beat him. Some scholars think the robbers surrounded him. Other scholars think he fought the robbers and they used clubs or sticks to beat him. Other scholars think the robbers also took his money. The robbers left him half dead. That is, he was about to die if no one helped him.

#### What was a Samaritan?

[10:33]

See: Samaria

See Map: Samaria

#### What did it mean that the Samaritan was “moved with compassion”?

[10:33]

The Samaritan was moved with “compassion.” He felt sorry for the injured man.

See: Samaria; Mercy

See Map: Samaria

#### Why did the Samaritan pour oil and wine on the injured man’s wounds?

[10:34]

In ancient times, people often used oil and wine for wounds. The oil and wine cleaned the wound and made it feel better.

**Advice to translators**: A wound is a place on someone’s skin that has been hurt.

#### What was a denarius?

[10:35]

A denarius was the amount of money someone typically made in one day.

See: Denarius

## 10:38-42

#### Why did Mary “sat at the Lord’s feet and heard his word”?

[10:39]

In ancient Israel, a student often sat on the floor to listen to their teacher while he sat on a box or chair to teach. She did this because she was humble and wanted to learn from Jesus.

See: Humble (Humility); Disciple

#### How did Mary choose what was best?

[10:42]

Mary choose what was best by doing the one thing that she needed to do. That is, she needed to learn from Jesus more than she needed to help prepare a meal. Perhaps Martha needed to spend less time preparing for a meal and spend more time listening to Jesus.

#### How will the best not be taken away from Mary?

[10:42]

Luke wrote that the best will not be taken away from Mary. Some scholars think that Mary would always remember sitting at Jesus’ feet and hearing him teach. She would especially remember these things after Jesus was crucified, buried, and became alive again.

See: Crucify (Crucifixion); Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Luke 10:1

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.

##### seventy

Some versions say "seventy-two." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

#### Luke 10:2

##### The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

"There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in." Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go and teach the people.

#### Luke 10:3

##### Go on your way

"Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

##### I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves

Wolves attack and kill young sheep. In the same way, some people will want to harm the disciples. Alternate translation: "I send you out, and some people will try to harm you like wolves that attack young sheep"

#### Luke 10:4

##### greet no one on the road

"do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was telling them to go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

#### Luke 10:5

##### May peace be on this house

Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

#### Luke 10:6

##### a son of peace

"a peaceful person"

##### your peace will rest upon him

"he will have the peace you bless him with"

##### if not

"if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

##### it will return to you

"you will have that peace"

#### Luke 10:7

##### Remain in that same house

Jesus was saying that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

##### for the laborer is worthy of his wages

The men Jesus was sending to the towns would be teaching and healing people, so the people in those towns should provide them with a place to stay and food.

##### Do not move around from house to house

"Do not sleep at a different house each night"

#### Luke 10:8

##### and they receive you

"if they welcome you"

##### eat what is set before you

"eat whatever food they give you"

#### Luke 10:9

##### the sick

"the sick people"

##### The kingdom of God has come close to you

Possible meanings are "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or "The proof that God is reigning is all around you."

#### Luke 10:10

##### and they do not receive you

"and the people reject you"

#### Luke 10:11

##### Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

#### Luke 10:12

##### on that day

"on judgment day" or "on the day when God judges all people"

##### it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town

"it will be easier for the people of Sodom than it will be for the people of that town" or "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

#### Luke 10:13

##### Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!

"How terrible it will be for you, Chorazin! How terrible it will be for you, Bethsaida!" or "Trouble will come to you, people of Chorazin and Bethsaida!" Chorazin and Bethsaida were towns.

##### If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon

"If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

##### sitting in sackcloth and ashes

"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes." This was a way for people to show that they were very sorry for their sins.

#### Luke 10:14

##### at the judgment

"when God judges everyone"

#### Luke 10:15

##### You, Capernaum

"You people of Capernaum." Capernaum was a town.

##### do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. Alternate translation: "Do not think that you will be lifted up to heaven!" or "Do not think that God will honor you in heaven!"

##### you will be brought down to Hades

"you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

#### Luke 10:16

##### General Information

In verse 16 the word "you" refers to the seventy people that Jesus was sending to the towns to heal people and preach.

##### The one who listens to you listens to me

"When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

##### the one who rejects you rejects me

"when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

##### the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me

"when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting God, who sent me"

#### Luke 10:17

##### seventy

Some versions say “seventy-two.” You may want to include a footnote that says that.

##### in your name

Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority. Alternate translation: "because of your name" or "when we spoke with your power and authority"

#### Luke 10:18

##### I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning

Jesus recognized that God was defeating Satan when the 70 disciples were preaching.

#### Luke 10:19

##### authority to tread on serpents and scorpions

"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions." Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail. Serpents and scorpions in this verse might represent evil spirits.

##### over all the power of the enemy

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

#### Luke 10:20

##### your names are engraved in heaven

"God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of the citizens of heaven"

#### Luke 10:21

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Lord of heaven and earth

"Lord over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

##### the wise and understanding

"wise and understanding people" or "people who think they are wise and understanding"

##### those who are untaught, like little children

"little children" or "those who are like little children"

##### for so it was well pleasing in your sight

"for it pleased you to do this"

#### Luke 10:22

##### All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

"My Father has handed everything over to me"

##### Father ... the Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. When Jesus says, "the Son," he is referring to himself. It is best to translate these words with the same words that your language uses to refer to a human father and a human son.

##### no one knows who the Son is except the Father

"the only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

##### no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him

The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son and those ... him"

##### those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him

"whoever the Son chooses to show the Father to"

#### Luke 10:23

##### Blessed are those who see the things that you see

"How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

#### Luke 10:24

##### the things that you hear

"the things that you have heard me say"

#### Luke 10:25

##### Behold, an expert in the law

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story.

##### so that he might test him

"to challenge Jesus"

#### Luke 10:26

##### What is written in the law? How do you read it?

Jesus uses these questions to test the teacher's knowledge. Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

##### How do you read it?

"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

#### Luke 10:27

##### You will love ... your neighbor as yourself

"You must love ... your neighbor as yourself"

##### and your neighbor as yourself

"and you must love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

#### Luke 10:29

##### But he, desiring to justify himself, said

"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

##### Who is my neighbor?

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Which people are my neighbors that I should love them?"

#### Luke 10:30

##### He fell among robbers, who

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

##### stripped him of his belongings

"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

##### half dead

"almost dead"

#### Luke 10:31

##### and when he saw him

"and when the priest saw the injured man" or "but when he saw him." A priest is a very religious person, so Jesus's listeners would expect the priest to help the man.

##### he passed by on the other side

The priest did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the man but walked past him on the other side of the road"

#### Luke 10:32

##### a Levite ... the other side

The Levites served God in the temple. Jesus’s listeners would have expected the Levite to help the man.

#### Luke 10:33

##### a certain Samaritan

The Jews hated the Samaritans and would have assumed that the Samaritan would not help the injured Jewish man.

##### When he saw him

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

##### he was moved with compassion

"he felt sorry for him"

#### Luke 10:34

##### bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first to help them heal. Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

##### his own animal

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It may have been a donkey.

#### Luke 10:35

##### two denarii

"two silver coins"or "two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

##### the host

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

##### whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you

"when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

#### Luke 10:36

##### Which of these three do you think was a neighbor ... robbers?

"What do you think? Which of these three men was a neighbor ... robbers?"

##### was a neighbor

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

##### to him who fell among the robbers

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

#### Luke 10:37

##### He said

"The expert in the law said"

##### Go and do the same

"In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help"

#### Luke 10:38

##### as they were traveling along

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

#### Luke 10:39

##### sat at the Lord's feet

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

##### heard his word

"listened to him teach"

#### Luke 10:40

##### overly busy

"very busy" or "too busy"

##### do you not care ... alone?

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

#### Luke 10:42

##### which will not be taken away from her

"and no one will take it away from her"

Chapter 11

1It happened one day that Jesus was praying in a certain place. When he had finished, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

2Jesus said to them, "When you pray say,'Father, may your name be honored as holy.May your kingdom come.3Give us our daily bread each day.4Forgive us our sins,as we forgive everyone who is in debt to us.Do not lead us into temptation.'"

5Jesus said to them, "Which of you will have a friend, and will go to him at midnight, and say to him, 'Friend, lend to me three loaves of bread,6since a friend of mine just came in from the road, and I do not have anything to set before him'?7Then the one inside who answered him may say, 'Do not bother me. The door is already shut, and my children, along with me, are in bed. I am not able to get up and give bread to you.'8I say to you, even if he does not get up and give bread to you because you are his friend, yet because of your shameless persistence, he will get up and give you as many loaves of bread as you need.9I also say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you.10For every asking person receives; and the seeking person finds; and to the person who knocks, it will be opened.11Which father among you, if your son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead of a fish?[1](#footnote-target-1)12Or if he asks for an egg, will you give a scorpion to him?13Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him?"

14Now Jesus was driving out a demon that was mute. When the demon had gone out, the man who had been mute spoke, and the crowd was amazed.15But some of the people said, "By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons."16Others tested him and sought from him a sign from heaven.

17But Jesus knew their thoughts and said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and a house divided against itself falls.18If Satan is divided against himself, how will his kingdom stand? For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul.19If I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your followers drive them out? Because of this, they will be your judges.20But if I drive out demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has come to you.21When a strong man who is fully armed guards his own palace, his possessions are safe,22but when a stronger man overcomes him, the stronger man takes away the armor in which the man trusted and plunders the man's possessions.23The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters.24When an unclean spirit has gone away from a man, it passes through waterless places and looks for rest. Finding none, it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.'25Having returned, it finds the house had been swept clean and put in order.26Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more evil than itself and they all come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first."

27It happened that, as he said these things, a certain woman raised her voice above the crowd and said to him, "Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you."

28But he said, "Rather, blessed are they who hear the word of God and keep it."

29As the crowds were increasing, Jesus began to say, "This generation is an evil generation. It seeks a sign, though no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah.30For just as Jonah became a sign to the Ninevites, so too the Son of Man will be a sign to this generation.31The Queen of the South will rise up at the judgment with the men of this generation and condemn them, for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and see, someone greater than Solomon is here.32The men of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation of people and will condemn it, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and see, someone greater than Jonah is here.

33No one, after lighting a lamp, puts it in a hidden place or under a basket, but on a lampstand, so that those who enter may see the light.34Your eye is the lamp of the body. When your eye is good, the whole body is filled with light. But when your eye is bad, your body is full of darkness.35Therefore, watch out that the light in you is not darkness.36If then your whole body is full of light, not having any member in darkness, then your whole body will be like when a lamp shines its brightness on you."

37When he had finished speaking, a Pharisee asked him to eat with him at his house, so Jesus went in and reclined.38The Pharisee was surprised that Jesus did not first wash before dinner.39But the Lord said to him, "Now then, you Pharisees clean the outside of cups and bowls, but the inside of you is filled with robbery and evil.40You senseless men! Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside?41Give what is inside as alms, and then all things will be clean for you.

42"But woe to you Pharisees, because you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb, but you neglect justice and the love of God. It is necessary to act justly and love God, without failing to do the other things also.43Woe to you Pharisees, for you love the front seats in the synagogues and respectful greetings in the marketplaces.44Woe to you, for you are like unmarked graves that people walk over without knowing it."

45One of the experts in the law said to him, "Teacher, what you say insults us too."46Jesus said, "Woe to you, teachers of the law! For you put people under burdens that are hard to carry, but you do not touch the burdens with one of your own fingers.47Woe to you, because you build tombs for the prophets, and it was your ancestors who killed them.48So you are witnesses and you consent to the works of your ancestors, for they indeed killed them and you build their tombs.49For this reason also, God's wisdom said, 'I will send to them prophets and apostles, and they will persecute and kill some of them.'50As a result, this generation will be charged for all the blood of the prophets shed since the foundation of the world,51from Abel's blood to the blood of Zechariah, who was killed between the altar and the temple. Yes, I say to you, this generation will be held responsible.52Woe to you experts in the law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering."

53After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things,54lying in wait to catch him in something he might say.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies have the shorter reading. Some ancient copies have a longer reading, which also is found in Matthew 7:9:Which father among you, if your son asks for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? Or a fish, will give him a snake?

### Luke 11

## 11:1-13

#### How did Jesus want his disciples to pray this prayer?

[11:2]

Some scholars think Jesus wanted his disciples to pray this prayer by saying the same words he said. Other scholars think Jesus wanted them to pray in the same way he prayed, but not say the same words he said. Other scholars think both ways of praying honored God.

See: Matthew 6:9-13

See: Disciple; Pray (Prayer)

#### What did Jesus mean when he told the disciples to pray “may your name be sanctified”?

[11:2]

Jesus told the disciples that the name of God the Father was to “sanctified”(ἁγιάζω/g0037). He wanted the disciples to know that the name of God the Father was holy and different than every other name. They were to honor the name of God.

See: Sanctify (Sanctification); Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)

#### What was meant by the words, “may your kingdom come”?

[11:2]

When Jesus prayed “may your kingdom come,” he wanted the kingdom of God to begin.

See: Kingdom of God

#### What was “daily bread”?

[11:3]

To the people of Jesus’ day, people needed to eat bread to live. Some scholars think Jesus was not speaking about bread, but he was speaking about all food. Other scholars think bread was a metaphor. He was speaking about everything the disciple needed to live. Still other scholars think Jesus was teaching the disciples that bread represented spiritual food (see: John 6:32-35).

See: Metaphor; Disciple

#### Why did Jesus want the disciples to pray “forgive us our sins”?

[11:4]

Jesus prayed, “forgive us our sins.” He told the disciples to pray this way. God had already forgiven the sins of the disciples. He wanted them to pray that they would forgive other people when these people sinned against them. God did not forgive the disciples’ sins because of the things they do. God forgave them because of his mercy.

See: Mercy; Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon)

#### How did Jesus use the word “temptation”?

[11:4]

Jesus spoke about temptation. Some scholars say Jesuse was thinking about sin. Other scholars say Jesus was thinking about testing. That is, the persecution or suffering the disciples experienced.

See: Tempt (Temptation); Test; Sin; Persecute (Persecution) ; Persecute (Persecution)

#### What was meant by the words, “shameless persistence”?

[11:8]

Scholars think Jesus used “shameless persistence”(ἀναίδεια/g0335) in two different ways.

Some scholars think Jesus used “shameless persistence” to speak about the friend on the outside who boldly kept knocking on the door of the house until his friend gave him what he wanted.

Other scholars think Jesus used “shameless persistence” to speak about the friend on the inside of the house who gave his friend what he wanted because he was worried about what people thought about him.

#### Why did Jesus tell the disciples to ask, seek, and knock?

[11:8, 11:9, 11:10]

Jesus told the disciples to ask, seek, and knock. Scholars think these words were metaphors. Jesus was speaking about asking God in prayer, seeking God’s wisdom in prayer, and constantly praying.

See: Metaphor; Pray (Prayer)

#### What did Luke write in verse 11?

[11:11]

Some ancient copies of the Greek New Testament have the words, “if your son asks for a loaf of bread, will you give him a stone?” Other ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not have these words. When Matthew wrote about these same things, he said these words (see: Matthew 7:9). Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words.

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “you who are evil”?

[11:13]

Jesus said, “you who are evil.” Scholars think Jesus was comparing people’s fathers with God the Father. Everyone’s father has sinned. However, God the Father has never sinned. He is holy and righteous.

See: God the Father; Sin; Holy (Holiness, Set Apart); Righteous (Righteousness)

#### Who is the Holy Spirit?

[11:13]

See: Holy Spirit

## 11:14-26

#### How was Jesus “driving out a demon”?

[11:14]

Jesus drove out the demon by the power of God. That is, Jesus commanded the spirit to leave which stopped the demon from controlling the man. Jesus had total control over demons (see: 4:33-36).

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Demon

#### What was a demon that was mute?

[11:14]

A mute demon cannot talk. This caused the man to not be able to speak.

See: Demon

#### Who was Beelzebul?

[11:15]

Beelzebul was the name of a pagan god. Pagans called their gods Ba’al (see: 2 Kings 1:2). The New Testament used the name Beelzebul as a name for Satan.

See: Pagan; False gods; Satan (The Devil)

#### What did it mean that others tested Jesus?

[11:16]

Others tested Jesus. Some scholars do not know why other people tested Jesus, but they wanted a sign from heaven. Some scholars think they wanted Jesus to prove he is the messiah by doing a sign. Some scholars think these were people trying to make other people think the wrong things about Jesus. That is, they wanted people to think that Jesus was not the Messiah.

See: Test; Sign; Heaven; Messiah (Christ)

#### What did it mean that a kingdom “is made desolate”?

[11:17]

A kingdom that “is made desolate” is a kingdom that was destroyed.

#### What was Satan’s kingdom?

[11:18]

Satan’s kingdom was made of demons. Satan ruled over the demons. Jesus defeated Satan in the wilderness when Satan was not able to make Jesus sin. Jesus also defeated Satan at the cross. The final defeat of Satan will be at the end of the world.

See: Satan (The Devil); Demon; Sin; Cross; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### What was the “finger of God”?

[11:20]

The finger of God was a metaphor for God’s power. Some scholars think it was easy for Jesus to drive out demons. Other scholars think the metaphor spoke about God not moving his finger very much to drive out demons. God did it easily. Jesus said he drove out demons by the Spirit of God (see: Matthew 12:28).

See: Metaphor; Demon; Holy Spirit

#### How did the kingdom of God come to these people?

[11:20]

The kingdom of God came to these people when Jesus came and cast out demons. That was one way God began to reign. God will fully reign at the end of the earth.

See: Kingdom of God; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons); Demon; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### What was a “strongman”?

[11:21]

Here, a strongman is a soldier or a warrior. That is, he is a man who is able to fight well. Perhaps this strongman was also Satan.

#### What did it mean to “plunder the man’s possessions”?

[11:22]

When someone plundered a man’s possessions, the man’s possessions were divided and then given to other people. What did Jesus mean when he said, “the one who is not with me is against me”? Jesus said, “the one who is not with me is against me.” Jesus wanted to say that anyone who was not his friend was his enemy. Here, Jesus spoke about a fight between good and evil (see: Luke 11:14-22). Anyone who was not Jesus’ friend was a friend of Satan.

See: Satan (The Devil)

#### Why did Jesus say, “the one who does not gather with me scatters”?

[11:23]

Jesus said, “the one who does not gather with me scatters.” He wanted to say that anyone who did not serve with him was fighting against him in some way. People made a decision to either serve with Jesus or fight against him. He spoke about this using a metaphor. Some scholars think this metaphor was about a shepherd who gathered his sheep. Satan tried to scatter the sheep. Other scholars think this metaphor was about a farmer who gathered his crop at harvest time. Christians helped Jesus gather the harvest.

See: Metaphor; Shepherd; Harvest; Satan (The Devil)

#### What was an unclean spirit?

[11:24]

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### What were waterless places?

[11:24]

Waterless places were the dry deserts and wilderness. People did not live in these places. Demons and unclean spirits wandered through the wilderness, but they did not find a place to stay. The demons then try to go back to the person from whom they were driven.

See: Demon; Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### What was meant by the words, “house swept out and put in order”?

[11:25]

Jesus spoke about a “house swept out and put in order.” This was a metaphor. He compared the heart of a man to a clean and tidy house. A clean house was ready for someone to live in it. Jesus spoke about a person who was not living in the right way and was ready to have many spirits live in him (see: Matthew 12:44).

## 11:27-32

#### Why did the woman say, “blessed is the womb that bore you”?

[11:27]

When the woman spoke the words, “blessed is the womb that bore you,” she was speaking about Jesus’ mother. The woman said that his mother is blessed.

See: Bless (Blessing)

#### How did someone “hear the word of God and keep it”?

[11:28]

Jesus spoke about someone hearing the word of God and keeping it. Scholars think that Jesus wanted people to know that there was a greater blessing for people who believed in him and obeyed him, than his mother received.

See: Word of God; Bless (Blessing)

#### How did Jesus speak about an “evil generation”?

[11:29]

When Jesus spoke about an “evil generation” he was speaking about the people living when he was on the earth. They were “evil” because they refused to believe that God sent Jesus. They only wanted Jesus to do miracles.

See: Luke 11:16

See: Generation; Miracle

#### What was the “sign of Jonah”?

[11:29]

Jesus said that “no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah.” Scholars think Jesus was speaking about a future sign. Matthew also wrote about the sign of Jonah and that Jonah was in the stomach of a big fish for three days and nights (see: Matthew 12:40). Scholars think Jesus was speaking about Jesus being crucified and being dead for three days. Just as Jonah was released from the stomach of fish, so Jesus became alive again.

See: Jonah 1:17-2:10

See: Sign; Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Who was the queen of the south?

[11:31]

The queen of the south was the queen of Sheba who visited King Solomon of Israel (see: 1 Kings 10:1-13). Some scholars think she was from southern Arabia. Other scholars think she was from modern Yemen.

See Map: Arabia; Yemen

#### How will the queen of the south condemn that generation at God’s judgment?

[11:31]

Luke wrote about the queen of the south condemning a certain generation. Scholars think that when the queen of the south rises at the judgment, people will know she did things that pleased God. The Jewish people who lived at the time of Jesus, and rejected him, did not do what pleased God. They will be condemned when God judges them.

See: Condemn (Condemnation); Generation; Judge (Judgment); Day of Judgment

#### How will the Queen of the South come from the ends of the earth?

[11:31]

Luke wrote that the queen of the south “came from the ends of the earth.” He wanted to say that she came from very far away.

#### How will the men of Nineveh condemn that generation at God’s judgment?

[11:32]

Luke wrote that the men of Nineveh will condemn people. The men of Nineveh will not be acting as judges. However, they will rise and people will know that when Jonah spoke God’s word to them, they “repented” (see: Jonah 3:4-10). Their repentance pleased God. The Jewish people who lived at the time when Jesus was on the earth did not repent when Jesus spoke God’s word. This did not please God.

See: Condemn (Condemnation); Generation; Judge (Judgment); Day of Judgment; Repent (Repentance); Word of God

See Map: Nineveh

#### How did Jesus say something greater than Solomon and Jonah was there?

[11:32]

Jesus said something greater than Solomon and Jonah was there when he said that Solomon’s great wisdom did not compare to Jesus’ greater wisdom. Also, Jonah’s great preaching did not compare to Jesus’ greater preaching. Solomon and Jonah did not always do what God wanted (see: 1 Kings 11:1-9; Jonah 4:5-10). Jesus always did what God wanted him to do.

See: Wise (Wisdom, Fool); Preach (Preacher)

## 11:33-36

#### How was the eye the lamp of the body?

[11:34]

The eye is the lamp of the body. This is a metaphor. They eye sees light. Scholars think Jesus used a metaphor in speaking about the eye. He wanted people to believe the things he taught and to live in a way that honors God.

See: Metaphor;Light and Darkness (Metaphor)

## 11:37-54

#### What was a Pharisee?

[11:37]

See: Pharisees

#### Why did Jesus recline when he ate?

[11:37]

In ancient Israel, people often laid on cushions around a low table for a meal. The people leaned on one elbow while they ate.

#### Why was the Pharisee surprised that Jesus did not wash his hands?

[11:38]

The Pharisee was surprised Jesus did not wash his hands. They taught people that they needed to wash their hands in a certain way to be clean. They expected Jesus to follow the rules the Jewish teachers made. Jesus obeyed the Law of Moses, not the rules made by the Jewish teachers.

See: Pharisees; Clean and Unclean; Law of Moses

#### Why did Jesus say the Pharisees cleaned “the outside of cups and bowls”?

[11:39]

When Jesus spoke about the “outside of cups and bowls” he used a metaphor. People clean the “outside of cups and bowls”. That is, people did certain things so that other people thought they lived in a way that honored God. However, the inside of the cup was still dirty. That is, these people did not live in a way that honored God.

See: Pharisees; Metaphor; Clean and Unclean

#### What was a woe?

[11:42]

See: Woe

#### What was a tithe?

[11:42]

See: Tithe

#### What was a synagogue?

[11:43]

See: Synagogue

#### What did it mean when Jesus said the Pharisees were “like unmarked graves”?

[11:44]

An unmarked grave looked just like ordinary ground, because there was nothing to mark it as a grave. People could walk over these graves without knowing there were dead bodies underneath them. This was a metaphor. People did not see what happened inside an unmarked grave when they walked on it and people did not see the evil inside of the Pharisees.

**Advice to translators**: A grave is a hole in the ground where people put a dead person’s body. They cover it with dirt. It is often marked with a stone. This stone has the name of the person who died on it.

See: Metaphor; Pharisees; Tomb

#### What was a “teacher of the law”?

[11:45, 11:46]

A “teacher of the law” was an expert in the Law of Moses. They were often Pharisees.

See: Law of Moses; Pharisees

#### Why did Jesus criticize the teachers of the law for building tombs for the dead prophets?

[11:47]

Jesus criticized the teachers of the Law of Moses. The Pharisees wanted to honor the prophets who died long before they were born. Scholars think Jesus wanted the Pharisees to honor the prophets by obeying what they taught, not by building them tombs. Because the ancestors of these teachers killed the prophets, scholars think Jesus was saying the teachers were only honoring the prophets for dying, but not living in a way that honors God.

See: Prophet; Law of Moses; Pharisees; Tomb

#### Why was that generation responsible for so much?

[11:50]

Scholars give several reasons why that generation was responsible for so much.

That generation approved of their ancestors killing God’s prophets.

That generation was about to kill God’s apostles.

The Old Testament prophesied about the time of that generation. When that generation rejected prophets and apostles, they also rejected all the prophets from earlier times.

That generation rejected and killed Jesus.

See: Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs); Prophet; Generation

#### Why did Jesus talk about the deaths of Abel and Zechariah?

[11:51]

Jesus talked about the deaths of Abel and Zechariah because Abel was the first person killed in the Old Testament (see: Genesis 4:8) and Zechariah was the last person killed for obeying God in the Old Testament (see: 2 Chronicles 24:20-21).

#### What was the “key of knowledge”?

[11:52]

Jesus spoke about the “key of knowledge.” Scholars think Jesus was using a metaphor. A key was used to lock a door. The Jewish leaders stopped people from knowing God. They stopped people from knowing that Jesus is the messiah.

See: Metaphor; Messiah (Christ)

#### What was a scribe?

[11:53]

See: Scribe

#### Luke 11:1

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

#### Luke 11:2

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### may your name be honored as holy

"cause everyone to honor your name as holy." The phrase "your name" might refer to God himself. Alternate translation: "may all people honor you as holy"

##### May your kingdom come

"May you come and rule over everyone"

#### Luke 11:3

##### Give us

"Please give us"

##### our daily bread

Bread was an inexpensive food that people ate every day. It is used here to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: "the food we need each day"

#### Luke 11:4

##### Forgive us ... Do not lead us

"Please forgive us ... Please do not lead us"

##### Forgive us our sins

"Forgive us for sinning against you" or "Forgive our sins"

##### as we forgive

"since we also forgive"

##### who is in debt to us

"who has sinned against us" or "who has done wrong things to us"

##### Do not lead us into temptation

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Lead us away from temptation"

#### Luke 11:5

##### lend to me three loaves of bread

"let me borrow three loaves of bread" or "give me three loaves of bread and I will pay you later." The host does not have any food ready to give to his guest.

##### three loaves of bread

Bread is a food that people in Israel commonly ate. If people in your community do not know what bread is, you may translate it with a more general expression for food. Alternate translation: "some food"

#### Luke 11:6

##### since a friend ... to set before him'?

Jesus finishes asking the question that begins with the words "Which of you will have a friend" in verse 5. The whole question can be translated as a command. Alternate translation: "Imagine you have a friend and you go to him at midnight and say to him, 'Friend, lend me three loaves of bread, since a friend ... to set before him.'"

##### just came in from the road

It is implied that the visitor had come a long way. Alternate translation: "was traveling and just came to my house"

##### anything to set before him

"any food ready to give him"

#### Luke 11:8

##### because of your shameless persistence

"because you persist shamelessly" or "because you boldly continue to ask him"

#### Luke 11:9

##### ask ... seek, and you will find; knock

Jesus gives these commands to encourage his disciples to pray continually. Alternate translation: "keep asking God for what you need ... keep seeking what you need, and you will find it; keep knocking on the door"

##### it will be given to you

"God will give it to you" or "you will receive it"

##### knock

To knock on a door is to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. It can also be translated using the way people in your culture show that they have arrived, such as "call out" or "cough" or "clap."

##### it will be opened to you

"God will open the door for you"

#### Luke 11:11

##### Which father among you ... will give him a snake instead of a fish?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you fathers ... will give him a snake instead of a fish."

#### Luke 11:12

##### Or ... egg, will you give a scorpion to him?

This question could also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "And you would never give him a scorpion ... egg."

##### scorpion

A scorpion is similar to a spider, but it has a tail with a poisonous sting. If scorpions are not known where you are, you could translate this as "poisonous spider" or "spider that stings"

#### Luke 11:13

##### if you who are evil know

"since you who are evil know" or "even though you are sinful, you know"

##### how much more will your Father from heaven give ... him?

This can also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you can be sure that your Father in heaven will give ... him."

#### Luke 11:14

##### Now

Here this word marks the beginning of a new event.

##### Jesus was driving out a demon

"Jesus was driving a demon out of a man" or "Jesus was making a demon leave a person"

##### a demon that was mute

"a demon that caused a man to be unable to speak"

##### When the demon had gone out

"When the demon had gone out of the man" or "When the demon left the man"

#### Luke 11:15

##### By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons

"He is driving out demons by the power of Beelzebul, the ruler of demons"

##### Beelzebul

This is another name for Satan.

#### Luke 11:16

##### Others tested him

"Other people tested Jesus." They wanted Jesus to prove that his authority was from God.

##### and sought from him a sign from heaven

"and demanded that he give them a sign from heaven." This was how they wanted Jesus to prove that his authority was from God.

#### Luke 11:17

##### Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate

The word "kingdom" here refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: "If people of a kingdom fight among themselves, they will destroy their kingdom"

##### a house divided against itself falls

The word "house" here refers to a family. Alternate translation: "if family members fight each other, they will ruin their family"

#### Luke 11:18

##### If Satan is divided against himself

"Satan" here refers to the demons who follow Satan as well as to Satan himself. Alternate translation: "If Satan and members of his kingdom are fighting among themselves"

##### how will his kingdom stand?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "his kingdom will not last." or "his kingdom will fall apart."

##### For you say I cast out demons by Beelzebul

"For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people"

#### Luke 11:19

##### by whom do your followers drive them out?

"by whose power do your followers force demons to leave people?"

##### they will be your judges

"your followers will judge you"

#### Luke 11:20

##### by the finger of God

"by God’s power"

##### then the kingdom of God has come to you

"this shows that God's kingdom has come to you"

#### Luke 11:21

##### his possessions are safe

"no one can steal his things"

#### Luke 11:22

##### but when a stronger man overcomes him

"but when a stronger man attacks and defeats him"

##### takes away the armor

"removes the weapons and protection"

##### plunders the man's possessions

"steals the man's possessions"

#### Luke 11:23

##### The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters

"Anyone who is not with me is against me, and anyone who does not gather with me scatters" or "Those who are not with me are against me, and those who do not gather with me scatter"

##### The one who is not with me is against me

"The one who does not support me opposes me"

##### the one who does not gather with me scatters

"the one who does not help me gather what belongs to me scatters it"

#### Luke 11:24

##### waterless places

"places that do not have water" or "deserts"

##### Finding none

"If the spirit does not find any rest there"

##### my house from which I came

This refers to the person in which the unclean spirit used to live. Alternate translation: "the person in whom I used to live"

#### Luke 11:25

##### it finds the house had been swept clean and put in order

"it sees that the person is like a house that is clean and organized"

#### Luke 11:26

##### worse than the first

"worse than his condition was before the spirit left him"

#### Luke 11:27

##### raised her voice above the crowd

"spoke loudly above the noise of the crowd"

##### Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you

"How good it is for the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts" or "How happy must be the woman who gave birth to you and nursed you"

#### Luke 11:28

##### Rather, blessed are they who hear the word of God and keep it

"It is even better for those hear the message God has spoken and obey it"

#### Luke 11:29

##### This generation is an evil generation. It seeks ... to it

"The people living at this time are evil people. They seek ... to them" or "You people living at this time are evil people. You seek ... to you"

##### It seeks a sign

"It wants me to do a miracle to prove that I have come from God"

##### no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

"The only sign that will be given to this generation is the sign of Jonah"

##### no sign will be given to it

"God will not give it a sign"

##### the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah"

#### Luke 11:30

##### For just as Jonah became a sign ... so too the Son of Man will be a sign

"For just as what happened to Jonah was a sign ... so too what happens to the Son of Man will be a sign"

##### the Son of Man will be a sign

"I, the Son of Man, will be a sign"

#### Luke 11:31

##### The Queen of the South

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a kingdom south of Israel.

##### she came from the ends of the earth

"she came a very great distance" or "she came from a place very far away"

##### someone greater than Solomon is here

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, who am greater than Solomon, am here"

#### Luke 11:32

##### for they repented at the preaching of Jonah

"for they repented when Jonah preached to them"

#### Luke 11:33

##### no one ... puts it in a hidden place or under a basket

"no one ... hides it or puts in under a basket" or "people ... do not put it in a hidden place or under a basket"

##### but on a lampstand

"but a person puts it on a lampstand" or "but they put it on a table"

#### Luke 11:34

##### Your eye is the lamp of the body

"Your eye is like the lamp of your body" or "your eye is like a lamp for you'

##### When your eye is good

"When your vision is good" or "when you see well"

##### the whole body is filled with light

"the light will fill your whole body" or "you will be able to see everything clearly"

##### your body is full of darkness

"you will not be able to see anything"

#### Luke 11:35

##### watch out that the light in you is not darkness

"look carefully to make sure that what you think is light is not actually darkness"

#### Luke 11:36

##### not having any member in darkness

"with none of its parts in darkness"

#### Luke 11:37

##### When he had finished speaking

"When Jesus had finished speaking"

##### reclined

It was the custom at a relaxed meal for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table. Alternate translation: "sat down at the table" or "sat down to eat"

#### Luke 11:38

##### did not first wash

"did not first wash his hands" or "did not first wash his hands in order to be ritually clean"

#### Luke 11:40

##### You senseless men

"You fools"

##### Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside?

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees for not understanding that what is in their hearts matters to God. Alternate translation: "The one who made the outside also made the inside!"

#### Luke 11:41

##### as alms

"as gifts to the poor"

##### all things will be clean for you

"you will be completely clean" or "you will be clean both inside and outside"

#### Luke 11:42

##### you tithe mint and rue and every other garden herb

"you give God one tenth of your mint and rue and other herbs from your garden." Jesus was giving an example of how extreme the Pharisees were in giving a tenth of their income.

##### every other garden herb

Possible meanings are 1) "every other vegetable" 2) "every other garden herb" or 3) "every other garden plant."

##### you neglect justice and the love of God

"you do not pay attention to doing what is just and to loving God"

##### without failing to do the other things also

"and to always do the other good things as well"

#### Luke 11:43

##### the front seats

"the best seats"

##### respectful greetings

"you like people to greet you with special honor"

#### Luke 11:44

##### unmarked graves

"graves without makers." Graves were ceremonially unclean because of the dead bodies in them. An unmarked grave did not have a mark to warn people that it was a grave and that there was a dead body there.

##### that people walk over without knowing it

If someone walked over a grave, he would become ceremonially unclean because the grave was unclean. Alternate translation: "that people walk over without knowing that it is a grave" or "that people walk over without knowing that is is unclean"

#### Luke 11:46

##### you put people under burdens that are hard to carry

"you put burdens on people that are too heavy for them to carry." Jesus speaks about the teachers giving people many rules as if they giving people heavy things to carry. Alternate translation: "you burden people by giving them too many rules to follow"

##### you do not touch the burdens with one of your own fingers

"you do not do anything to help people carry those burdens"

#### Luke 11:48

##### you consent to the works of your ancestors

"you agree with what your ancestors did"

#### Luke 11:49

##### God's wisdom said

"God in his wisdom said" or "God wisely said"

##### I will send to them prophets and apostles

"I will send prophets and apostles to my people"

##### they will persecute and kill some of them

"my people will persecute and kill some of the prophets and apostles"

#### Luke 11:50

##### this generation will be charged

"God will hold this generation responsible"

##### for all the blood of the prophets shed

This refers to the blood that was spilled when people killed God's prophets. Alternate translation: "for all the murders of the prophets"

##### since the foundation of the world

"since the creation of the world" or "since God created the world"

#### Luke 11:51

##### Zechariah

This was probably the priest in the Old Testament who rebuked the people of Israel for idolatry. This was not the Father of John the Baptist.

##### who was killed

"whom people killed"

#### Luke 11:52

##### you have taken away the key of knowledge

"you have taken away the key that opens the door to knowledge" or "you have made it impossible to get knowledge" or "you have made it impossible to know God"

##### you do not enter in yourselves

"you yourselves do not go in to get knowledge" or "you yourselves do not get knowledge" or "you yourselves do not know God"

##### and you hinder those who are entering

"you keep others from going in" or "you make it hard for others to enter" or "you make it hard for others to know God"

#### Luke 11:53

##### After Jesus left there

"After Jesus left the Pharisee's house"

#### Luke 11:54

##### lying in wait to catch him in something he might say

"waiting to trap him in something he might say." The scribes and Pharisees hoped Jesus would say something wrong so that they could accuse him of breaking God's law. Alternate translation: "hoping that he would say something wrong so they could accuse him."

Chapter 12

1In the meantime, when many thousands of the people were gathered together so much that they trampled on each other, he began to say to his disciples first of all, "Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy.2But there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known.3So whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light, and what you have spoken in the ear in the inner rooms will be proclaimed upon the housetops.4I say to you, my friends, do not be afraid of those who kill the body, and after that they have no more that they can do.5But I will warn you about whom to fear. Fear the one who, after he has killed, has authority to throw you into hell. Yes, I say to you, fear him.6Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins? Yet not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God.7But even the hairs of your head are all numbered. Do not fear. You are more valuable than many sparrows.8I say to you, everyone who confesses me before men, the Son of Man will also confess before the angels of God,9but he who denies me before men will be denied before the angels of God.10Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man, it will be forgiven him, but to him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven.11When they bring you before the synagogues, the rulers, and the authorities, do not worry about how you will speak in your defense, or what you will say,12for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that hour what you should say."

13Then someone from the crowd said to him, "Teacher, tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me."

14Jesus said to him, "Man, who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?"15He said to them, "Watch that you keep yourselves from all greedy desires, because a person's life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions."16Then Jesus told them a parable, saying, "The field of a rich man yielded abundantly,17and he reasoned with himself, saying, 'What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?'18He said, 'This is what I will do. I will tear down my barns and build bigger ones, and there I will store all of my grain and other goods.19I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have many goods stored up for many years. Rest easy, eat, drink, be merry."'20But God said to him, 'Foolish man, tonight your soul is required of you, and the things you have prepared, whose will they be?'21That is what someone is like who stores up treasure for himself and is not rich toward God."

22Jesus said to his disciples, "Therefore I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat; or about your body, what you will wear.23For life is more than food, and the body is more than clothes.24Think about the ravens, that they do not sow or reap. They have no storeroom or barn, but God feeds them. How much more valuable you are than the birds!25Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan?26If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest?27Think about the lilies—how they grow. They do not labor, neither do they spin. Yet I say to you, even Solomon in all his glory was not clothed like one of these.28If God so clothes the grass in the field, which exists today, and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much more will he clothe you, O you of little faith!29Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink, and do not be anxious.30For all the nations of the world seek these things, and your Father knows that you need them.31But seek his kingdom, and these things will be added to you.32Do not fear, little flock, because your Father is very pleased to give you the kingdom.33Sell your possessions and give alms. Make for yourselves purses which will not wear out—treasure in the heavens that does not run out, where no thief comes near, and no moth destroys.34For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

35"Keep your loins girded and your lamps lit,36and be like people waiting expectantly for their master when he returns from the marriage feast, so that when he comes and knocks, they may immediately open the door for him.37Blessed are those servants whom the master will find watching when he comes. Truly I say to you, he will gird himself to serve and have them sit down at the table, and he will come and serve them.38If the master comes in the second watch of the night, or if even in the third watch, and finds them ready, blessed are those servants.39But understand this, that if the master of the house had known the hour the thief was coming, he would not have let his house be broken into.40You also must be ready, because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect."

41Peter said, "Lord, are you telling this parable only to us, or also to everyone?"

42The Lord said, "Who then is the faithful and wise manager whom his lord will set over his other servants to give them their portion of food at the right time?43Blessed is that servant whom his lord finds doing that when he comes.44Truly I say to you that he will set him over all his property.45But if that servant says in his heart, 'My lord delays his return,' and begins to beat the male servants and female servants and to eat and drink and to become drunk,46the lord of that servant will come in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know and will cut him in pieces and appoint a place for him with the unfaithful.47That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows.48But the one who did not know and did what deserved a beating, he will be beaten with a few blows. But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required, and from the one who has been entrusted with much, even more will be asked.

49"I came to cast fire upon the earth, and how I wish that it were already kindled.50But I have a baptism to be baptized with, and how I am distressed until it is completed!51Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division.52For from now on there will be five in one house divided—three people against two, and two people against three.53They will be divided, father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, mother-in-law against her daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against mother-in-law."

54Jesus was saying to the crowds also, "When you see a cloud rising in the west, immediately you say, 'A shower is coming,' and so it happens.55When a south wind is blowing, you say, 'There will be a scorching heat,' and it happens.56Hypocrites, you know how to interpret the appearance of the earth and the heavens, but how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time?57Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves?58For when you go with your adversary before the magistrate, on the way make an effort to be reconciled with him so that he does not drag you to the judge, and so that the judge does not deliver you to the officer, and the officer does not throw you into prison.59I say to you, you will never come out from there until you have paid the very last bit of money."

### Luke 12

## 12:1-12

#### What was the yeast of the Pharisees?

[12:1]

When Jesus spoke about the yeast of the Pharisees, this was a metaphor. A little yeast spread through the whole lump of dough. It affected all of the dough. In the same way, the things the Pharisees did affected many people.

See: Yeast (Leaven); Pharisees; Metaphor

#### How will God reveal concealed things?

[12:2]

Jesus was speaking about God concealing things. Jesus was speaking about God knowing why people did things. Even though people wanted to conceal why they did things, but God will reveal the truth. Scholars think God will reveal the truth about why people do things when he returns to judge the earth.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Reveal (Revelation); Judge (Judgment); Judge (Judgment)

#### Why did Jesus say “do not be afraid of those who kill the body”?

[12:4]

Jesus told people not to be afraid of those who can kill their body. Jesus did not want Christians to be afraid of people who were only able to kill the body because those people cannot kill a Christian’s soul (see: Matthew 10:28). People can kill Christians, but they cannot stop them from living with God in heaven forever.

See: Soul; Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Heaven

#### Who has permission to throw people into hell?

[12:5]

Only God can throw people into hell. He does not give permission to anyone else to do this.

See: Hell; Day of Judgment

#### Why did Jesus speak about sparrows and two small coins?

[12:6]

Sparrows were a common bird poor people ate in ancient Israel. Someone could buy five sparrows for two small coins. This was the amount of money someone earned for working for about one hour. People did not value the sparrow. Yet God does not forget even one sparrow. Jesus wanted his disciples to know that God will never forget them. Indeed, they were worth far more than birds.

See: Disciple

#### What did it mean to confess Jesus before men?

[12:8]

Jesus spoke about people confessing him before men. Jesus wanted to say that a person declared to the other people that he was a disciple of Jesus.

See: Confess (Confession); Disciple

#### Who is the Son of Man?

[12:8]

See: Son of Man

#### What will Jesus confess about people before the angels?

[12:8]

Jesus will confess certain things about people before the angels. Scholars think that Jesus will stand before the angels of God and tell them that a person is at peace with God.

See: Confess (Confession); Angel

#### How did people deny Jesus?

[12:9]

People denied Jesus by rejecting him in front of other people. They did not believe he is the messiah and Son of God.

See: Messiah (Christ); Son of God

#### What did it mean to blaspheme against the Holy Spirit?

[12:10]

To “blaspheme”(βλασφημέω/g0987) the Holy Spirit meant to dishonor, insult, or even reject the work of the Holy Spirit. Matthew wrote about people who blasphemed the Holy Spirit (see: Matthew 12:22-32).

Jesus said that every sin could be forgiven except one. That was blasphemy of the Holy Spirit. Scholars disagree about how someone blasphemes the Holy Spirit.

Jesus spoke about rejecting him. If someone does not believe in Jesus, then they will not be forgiven of their sins.

Jesus spoke about someone seeing Jesus do miracles and saying that Satan gave him the power to do this. Therefore, people today cannot blaspheme the Holy Spirit.

Jesus spoke about people who said that the Holy Spirit did not do the things that he did.

See: Sin; Blaspheme (Blasphemy); Holy Spirit; Miracle

#### What did Jesus mean when he said the Holy Spirit will teach you what you should say?

[12:12]

Jesus said that the Holy Spirit will teach the disciples what they should say. Jesus wanted his disciples to know that when they spoke to certain leaders, the Holy Spirit will cause them to know what they should say. That is, the Holy Spirit will tell them what is the right thing to say.

See: Holy Spirit; Disciple

## 12:13-21

#### What was an inheritance?

[12:13]

See: Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)

#### What was a judge or mediator?

[12:14]

See: Judge (Judgment); Mediator

#### What did Jesus mean when he said, “life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions”?

[12:15]

Jesus said, “life does not consist of the abundance of his possessions.” Jesus wanted people to know that owning many things did not make a person’s life more valuable or more important. He wanted them to do things that honored God.

#### What was meant by the words, “your soul is required of you”?

[12:20]

The words, “your soul is required of you” meant that the man’s life would be taken from him. That is, he was to die on that night.

See: Soul

#### Who was a person that was “not rich toward God”?

[12:21]

A person who was “not rich toward God” was a person did not trust God. He did not do the things that God wanted him to do. He did not use the things he had to serve God.

## 12:22-34

#### Why did Jesus tell the disciples not to worry about their lives?

[12:22]

Jesus told his disciples not to “worry”(μεριμνάω/g3309). He wanted them not to think too much about whether they will have enough food to eat or clothes to wear. Jesus spoke about food, clothing, and birds of the sky because he wanted the disciples to know that God will take care of them and give them what they need.

See: Disciple

#### What was a cubit?

[12:25]

See: Cubit

#### How did someone seek the kingdom of God?

[12:31]

When someone seeked the kingdom of God, they wanted to live in a way that honors God. They did things to serve God. They do not seek the things of the world. That is, they do not do the evil things that people in the world do.

See: Kingdom of God; World; Disciple

#### Why did Jesus call his disciples a “little flock”?

[12:32]

Jesus called his disciples a “little flock.” This was a metaphor. In the Old Testament, Israel was a flock. Jesus cared for his flock in the same way a shepherd cared for his sheep. They were little because they were few in number. They were helpless in the same way sheep were helpless. Jesus told them to not fear persecution or not having food and clothes.

**Advice to translators**: A flock is a group of sheep.

See: Metaphor; Shepherd; People of God; Persecute (Persecution)

#### Why did Jesus tell his disciples to sell their possessions?

[12:33]

Scholars give several ways of how Jesus wanted his disciples to sell everything they owned. Jesus wanted them to know that trusting in what they owned prevented them from trusting in God. Jesus did not want them to spend a lot of time thinking about what they owned. Jesus wanted them to be ready to sell everything they owned. Jesus did not want Christians to use the things they owned to help other people.

See: Disciple

#### What was “treasure in the heavens”?

[12:33]

Jesus spoke about “treasures in heaven.” Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about blessings from God. Jesus was not talking about money. Fewer scholars think that Jesus was speaking about wanting people to think about the kingdom of God. This is because being in the kingdom of God is the greatest reward.

See: Heaven; Bless (Blessing); Kingdom of God; Reward

#### Why did Jesus say, “where your treasure is, there your heart will be also”?

[12:34]

Jesus said, “where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.” Treasure was a metaphor for what people valued. When people valued God their hearts, they did not want the things of the world.

See: Heart (Metaphor); Metaphor; World

## 12:35-40

#### How did someone keep their “loins girded”?

[12:35]

Jesus spoke about someone keeping their “loins girded”. That is, they tucked in their long clothing. When someone did this, they were ready to work very hard. Some scholars think Christians must be ready for action. That is, they must be ready to serve God.

#### Why did Jesus tell those who served him to keep their lamps lit?

[12:35]

In ancient Israel, servants kept lamps burning at night when they knew their master would be returning. In the same way, Jesus wanted those who served him to be ready for him to return. He was speaking about his second coming.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Serve

#### What was a wedding feast?

[12:36]

See: Wedding

#### What did it mean to be blessed?

[12:37]

See: Bless (Blessing)

#### What were the second and third watches?

[12:38]

The second and third watches were time periods of the night in which guards had duty. Typically, the watch periods were from 6:00 in the evening until 6:00 in the morning. The Jews and Romans divided the watches. The Romans divided the watches into four periods of three hours each. The Jews divided the watches into three periods of four hours each.

#### Why did Jesus talk about a thief?

[12:39]

When Jesus spoke about the owner of a home knowing a thief was coming, he was saying it was wise to keep alert and watch. By doing this, the owner would prevent the thief from breaking into his home. In the same way, Jesus wanted Christians to be alert and watching for him to return. He wanted them to do this even though they did not know the time of his return.

See: Wise (Wisdom, Fool); Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Who is the son of man?

[12:40]

Jesus is the Son of Man.

See: Son of Man

## 12:41-48

#### How did Jesus answer Peter?

[12:42]

Jesus did not answer Peter’s question directly. However, Jesus answered him using a parable.

See: Parable

#### How will the Lord come to the unfaithful servant and “cut him in pieces”?

[12:46]

Jesus spoke about a master coming to the unfaithful servant and cutting him into pieces. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think he wanted people to know that the unfaithful servant would be severely punished. Other scholars think he wanted Christians to separate themselves from their community. That is, he would have to live outside of the town.

See: Punish (Punishment)

## 12:49-59

#### Why did Jesus speak about “cast fire upon the earth”?

[12:49]

Jesus spoke about casting fire on the earth. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think Jesus spoke about God judging people on the earth. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about God removing evil from the world.

See: Metaphor; Judge (Judgment); Purify (Pure)

#### What baptism was Jesus talking about?

[12:50]

The baptism Jesus was talking about was a baptism of suffering and death. That is, he was speaking about his death as a type of baptism.

See: Baptize (Baptism)

#### What did Jesus mean by saying he came to bring “division”?

Jesus said that he came to divide people. Jesus divided people. Some people believed in him. Other people rejected him. People have to choose whether they believe in Jesus or reject Jesus. They must choose to follow Jesus, or to follow Satan.

See: Satan (The Devil)

#### Why did Jesus say that people did “not know how to interpret the present time”?

[12:56]

Jesus said that people did “not know how to interpret the present time.” Jesus was saying that people did not know how to interpret what Jesus was doing. That is, they did not understand that God sent Jesus, and did not understand what God was going to do through Jesus. The “present time” meant the time in which Jesus was living on earth.

#### What was a magistrate?

[12:58]

A magistrate was a ruler, or a person who had permission to make legal decisions when two people disagreed with one another.

#### Luke 12:1

##### In the meantime

"Meanwhile" or "At that time"

##### they trampled on each other

"they were stepping on each other" or "they were stepping on one another's feet"

##### he began to say to his disciples first of all

"Jesus first started speaking to his disciples and said to them"

##### Beware of the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy

Just as yeast spreads through a whole lump of bread dough, the hypocrisy of the Pharisees was spreading through the whole community. Alternate translation: "Guard yourself against the hypocrisy of the Pharisees, which spreads like yeast"

#### Luke 12:2

##### there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed

"everything that is concealed will be shown" or "people will find out about everything that others do secretly"

##### nothing hidden that will not be known

"every thing that is hidden will be known" or "people will know about everything that others try to hide"

#### Luke 12:3

##### whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light

"whatever you have said privately at night, people will hear it in the daylight"

##### what you have spoken in the ear

"whatever you have whispered to someone"

##### in the inner rooms

"in a closed room" or "in a closet." This refers to private speech.

##### will be proclaimed

"will be shouted loudly" or "people will proclaim"

##### upon the housetops

Houses in Israel had flat roofs, so people could go up and stand on top of them. If readers would be distracted trying to imagine how people would get up on the house tops, this could also be translated with a more general expression, such as "from a high place so that everyone will be able to hear."

#### Luke 12:4

##### they have no more that they can do

"they cannot cause any more harm"

#### Luke 12:5

##### Fear the one who, after ... has authority

The phrase "the one" refers to God. Alternate translation: "Fear God who, after ... has authority" or "Fear God, because after ... he has authority"

##### after he has killed

"after he kills you"

##### has authority to throw you into hell

This is a general statement about God's authority to judge people. It does not mean that he will do this to the disciples. Alternate translation: "has authority to throw people into hell"

#### Luke 12:6

##### Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins?

"You know that five sparrows are sold for only two small coins."

##### sparrows

very small, seed-eating birds

##### not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God

"God never forgets any of them" or "God indeed remembers every sparrow"

#### Luke 12:7

##### even the hairs of your head are all numbered

"God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

##### You are more valuable than many sparrows

"You are worth more to God than many sparrows"

#### Luke 12:8

##### everyone who confesses me before men

"if anyone confesses me before men" or "whoever tells others that he is my disciple" or "anyone who acknowledges before others that he is loyal to me"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man"

##### the Son of Man will also confess before the angels of God

"the Son of man will acknowledge before the angels of God that he is loyal to him"

#### Luke 12:9

##### he who denies me before men will be denied before the angels of God

"if anyone denies me before men, I will deny him before the angels of God" or "I will deny before the angels of God that I know him who denies me before men"

##### denies me

"claims that he does not know me" or "claims that he is not my disciple"

#### Luke 12:10

##### Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man

"If anyone speaks a word against the Son of man" or "Everyone who says something bad about the Son of Man"

##### it will be forgiven him

"he will be forgiven" or "God will forgive him for that"

##### blasphemes against the Holy Spirit

"speaks evil against the Holy Spirit"

##### but to him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven

"but God will not forgive him who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit"

#### Luke 12:11

##### When they bring you before the synagogues, the rulers, and the authorities

"When people bring you before synagogues, rulers, and authorities to accuse you "

#### Luke 12:12

##### in that hour

"at that time" or "then"

#### Luke 12:13

##### to divide the inheritance with me

"to share the property with me that our father left for us"

#### Luke 12:14

##### who appointed me a judge or a mediator over you?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the man. Alternate translation: "do not expect me to be your judge and mediator."

##### you

This word refers to the man and his brother.

#### Luke 12:15

##### Watch that you keep yourselves from all greedy desires

"Be careful to guard yourself from every form of greed" or "Be careful not to selfishly want more things"

##### the abundance of his possessions

"how many things he owns" or "how much wealth he has"

#### Luke 12:16

##### yielded abundantly

"grew a very good harvest"

#### Luke 12:17

##### What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops?

This question reflects what the man was thinking to himself. Alternate translation: "I do not know what to do, because I do not have any place big enough to store all my crops!"

#### Luke 12:18

##### barns

buildings where farmers store the crops they have harvested

##### all of my grain and other goods

"all of my grain and the other good things that I own"

#### Luke 12:19

##### I will say to my soul, "Soul, you have ... years. Rest easy ... be merry."

"I will say to myself, 'I have ... years. So I will rest easy ... and be merry.'"

##### many goods

"many good things" or "many possessions"

#### Luke 12:20

##### tonight your soul is required of you

The "soul" refers to the life of a person. Alternate translation: "you will die tonight" or "I will take your life from you tonight"

##### the things you have prepared, whose will they be?

"who will own what you have stored up?" or "who will have what you prepared?" God uses a question to rebuke the man. Alternate translation: "the things that you have prepared will belong to someone else!"

#### Luke 12:21

##### stores up treasure for himself

"saves up valuable things for himself"

##### is not rich toward God

"does not use his riches for God"

#### Luke 12:22

##### about your body, what you will wear

"about your body and what you will wear" or "about having enough clothes to put on your body"

#### Luke 12:23

##### life is more than food

"life is more important than the food you eat"

##### the body is more than clothes

"your body is more important than the clothes you wear"

#### Luke 12:24

##### storeroom ... barn

These are places where food is stored.

##### How much more valuable you are than the birds!

"You are much more valuable than the birds!"

#### Luke 12:25

##### Which of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his lifespan?

"None of you can make your life any longer by being anxious!"

##### a cubit

the length from a man's elbow to the end of his fingers

#### Luke 12:26

##### If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest?

"Since you cannot do even this small thing, you should not worry about the other things."

#### Luke 12:27

##### Think about the lilies—how they grow

"Think about how the lilies grow"

##### lilies

Lilies are beautiful flowers that grow wild in the fields.

##### neither do they spin

The process of making thread or yarn is called "spinning." Alternate translation: "neither do they make thread" or "and they do not make yarn"

##### Solomon in all his glory

"Solomon, who had great wealth" or "Solomon, who wore beautiful clothes"

#### Luke 12:28

##### If God so clothes the grass in the field"

"If God clothes the grass in the field like that" or "If God gives the grass in the field such beautiful clothing" or "If God makes the grass in the field beautiful like this"

##### and tomorrow is thrown into the oven

"and someone throws it into a fire tomorrow"

##### how much more will he clothe you

"he will certainly clothe you even better"

#### Luke 12:29

##### Do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink

"Do not focus on what you will eat and drink" or "Do not greatly desire more to eat and drink"

#### Luke 12:30

##### all the nations of the world

Here "nations" refers to unbelievers. Alternate translation: "the people of all the other nations" or "all the unbelievers in the world"

##### your Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 12:31

##### seek his kingdom

"focus on God's kingdom" or "greatly desire God's kingdom"

##### these things will be added to you

"these things also will be given to you" or "God will also give you these things"

#### Luke 12:32

##### little flock

As a shepherd cares for his sheep, Jesus cares for his disciples. Alternate translation: "dear sheep" or "dear group"

#### Luke 12:33

##### Sell your possessions and give alms

"Sell your possessions and give what you earn to the poor"

##### Make for yourselves purses which will not wear out

This is the result of giving to the poor. Alternate translation: "In this way you will make for yourselves money bags that will not get holes in them

##### that does not run out

"that does not diminish" or "that does not become less"

##### where no thief comes near

"where thieves do not come near"

##### no moth destroys

"moths do not destroy. "A "moth" is a small insect that eats holes in fabric. You may need to use a different insect, such as an ant or termite.

#### Luke 12:34

##### where your treasure is, there your heart will be also

"your heart will be with your treasure" or "your heart will be focused on you treasure"

##### your heart

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts.

#### Luke 12:35

##### Keep your loins girded

People in Jesus's culture wore long robes. They would tuck the bottom of the robes into their belts to keep them out of the way while they worked. Alternate translation: "Always be ready to serve" or "Be dressed and ready to serve"

##### and your lamps lit

"and keep your lamps burning." They were to be ready to work even at night.

#### Luke 12:36

##### be like people waiting expectantly for their master

Jesus commands the disciples to be ready for him to return the same way servants should be ready for their master to return.

#### Luke 12:37

##### Blessed are those servants

"How good it is for those servants"

##### whom the master will find watching when he comes

"whose master finds them waiting for him when he returns"

##### he will gird himself to serve

"he will tuck in his robe to serve." If people are not familiar with this practice, it can also be translated in a more general way. Alternate translation: "he will dress himself to serve them"

#### Luke 12:38

##### in the second watch of the night

The second watch was between 9:00 p.m. and midnight. Alternate translation: "late at night" or "just before midnight"

##### or if even in the third watch

The third watch was from midnight to 3:00 a.m. Alternate translation: "or if he comes very late at night"

#### Luke 12:39

##### had known the hour

"had known when"

##### he would not have let his house be broken into

"he would not have let the thief break into his house" or "he would have stopped the thief from breaking into his house"

#### Luke 12:40

##### because the Son of Man is coming at an hour that you do not expect

The similarity between a thief (Luke 12:39) and the Son of Man is that people do not know when either one will come, so they need to be ready. Jesus is not saying that he himself is a thief.

##### the Son of Man is coming

Jesus is talking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am coming"

#### Luke 12:42

##### Who then is the faithful and wise manager ... right time?

Jesus uses a question to answer Peter's question indirectly. Alternate translation: "I said it for everyone who is like the faithful and wise manager ... right time."

##### whom his lord will set over his other servants

"whom his lord puts in charge of his other servants"

#### Luke 12:44

##### Truly I say to you

This expression means they should pay special attention to what he is about to say.

##### will set him over all his property

"will put him in charge of all his property"

#### Luke 12:45

##### says in his heart

"thinks to himself"

##### My lord delays his return

"My master will not return soon"

#### Luke 12:46

##### in a day when he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know

"on a day when the servant does not expect him and at a time the servant does not know about"

#### Luke 12:47

##### That servant, having known his lord's will and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows

"Because that servant knew his master's will and did not prepare or do according to it, the master will beat him severely"

##### his lord's will

"what his master wanted him to do"

#### Luke 12:48

##### he will be beaten with a few blows

"he will be beaten less severely"

##### But everyone who has been given much, from them much will be required

"The master will require much from everyone he has given much to" or "The master will require much from everyone who has received much"

##### the one who has been trusted with much, even more will be asked

"the master will ask even more of the one who has been entrusted with much"

##### the one who has been entrusted with much

"the one to whom the master has given much property to take care of" or "the one to whom the master has given much responsibility"

#### Luke 12:49

##### I came to cast fire upon the earth

"I came to throw fire on the earth" or "I came to set the earth on fire." Possible meanings are 1) Jesus has come to judge people or 2) Jesus has come to purify believers or 3) Jesus has come to cause division among people.

##### how I wish that it were already kindled

"I wish very much that it was already lit" or "how I wish that the fire had already begun"

#### Luke 12:50

##### I have a baptism to be baptized with

Here "baptism" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "I must go through a baptism of terrible suffering" or "I must be overwhelmed by suffering as a person being baptized is covered by water"

##### how I am distressed until it is completed

"I am terribly distressed and will be distressed until I complete this baptism"

#### Luke 12:51

##### Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division

"You may think that I came to bring peace on the earth, but I tell you I did not come for that. Instead, I came to bring division"

##### division

"hostility" or "discord"

#### Luke 12:52

##### there will be five in one house divided

"five people in one house will be divided"

##### against ... against

"will oppose ... will oppose"

#### Luke 12:54

##### A shower is coming

"Rain is coming" or "It is going to rain"

#### Luke 12:56

##### the earth and the heavens

"the earth and the sky"

##### how is it that you do not know how to interpret the present time?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Alternate translation: "you should know how to interpret the present time."

#### Luke 12:57

##### Why do you not judge what is right for yourselves?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Alternate translation: "You yourselves should discern what is right."

#### Luke 12:58

##### For when you go

"For if you go"

##### make an effort to be reconciled with him

"try to be reconciled with your adversary"

##### the magistrate ... the judge

These words refer to the same person.

##### does not deliver you to the officer

"does not hand you over to the officer" or "does not put the officer in charge of you"

#### Luke 12:59

##### the very last bit of money

"the entire amount of money that your adversary demands"

Chapter 13

1At that time, some people there told him about the Galileans whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices.2Jesus answered and said to them, "Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful than all the other Galileans because they suffered in this way?3No, I tell you. But if you do not repent, all of you will perish in the same way.4Or those eighteen people in Siloam on whom a tower fell and killed them, do you think they were worse sinners than other men in Jerusalem?5No, I say. But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."

6Jesus told this parable, "Someone had a fig tree planted in his vineyard and he came and looked for fruit on it but found none.7The man said to the gardener, 'Look, for three years I have come and tried to find fruit on this fig tree and found none. Cut it down. Why let it waste the ground?'

8"The gardener answered and said, 'Sir, leave it alone this year while I dig around it and put manure on it.9If it bears fruit next year, good; but if it does not, cut it down!'"

10Now Jesus was teaching in one of the synagogues during the Sabbath.11Behold, a woman was there who for eighteen years had a spirit of weakness. She was bent over and was not able to straighten up completely.12When Jesus saw her, he called to her and said, "Woman, you are freed from your weakness."13He placed his hands on her, and immediately she was made straight again and glorified God.

14But the synagogue ruler was indignant because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath. So the ruler answered and said to the crowd, "There are six days in which it is necessary to labor. Come and be healed then, not on the Sabbath day."

15The Lord answered him and said, "Hypocrites! Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?16So too this daughter of Abraham, whom Satan bound for eighteen long years, should her bonds not be untied on the Sabbath day?"17As he said these things, all those who opposed him were ashamed, but the whole crowd was rejoicing over all the glorious things he did.

18Then Jesus said, "What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?19It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden, and it grew into a big tree, and the birds of heaven built their nests in its branches."

20Again he said, "To what can I compare the kingdom of God?21It is like yeast that a woman took and mixed with three measures of flour until all the flour was leavened."

22Then Jesus traveled through the towns and villages, teaching and making his way toward Jerusalem.23Someone said to him, "Lord, are only a few people to be saved?"

So he said to them,24"Struggle to enter through the narrow door, because, I say to you, many will try to enter, but will not be able to enter.25Once the owner of the house gets up and locks the door, then you will stand outside and pound the door and say, 'Lord, Lord, let us in.'

"He will answer and say to you, 'I do not know you or where you are from.'

26"Then you will say, 'We ate and drank in front of you and you taught in our streets.'

27"But he will reply, 'I say to you, I do not know where you are from. Get away from me, all you workers of unrighteousness!'28There will be crying and the grinding of teeth when you see Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the prophets in God's kingdom, but you are thrown out.29They will come from the east, west, north, and south, and be seated at a table in the kingdom of God.30Know this, those who are least important will be first, and those who are most important will be last."

31In that same hour, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."

32Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox, 'Look, I cast out demons and perform healings today and tomorrow, and the third day I will reach my goal.'33In any case, it is necessary for me to continue on today, tomorrow, and the following day, since it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem.34Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. How often I desired to gather your children the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings, but you did not desire this.35See, your house is abandoned. I say to you, you will not see me until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.'"

### Luke 13

## 13:1-5

#### How was the blood of Galileans mixed with their own sacrifices?

[13:1]

Luke wrote about the blood of Galileans mixed with their sacrifices. Scholars think that at the Passover, Pilate ordered some of the Jews in Galilee to be killed while they were offering sacrifices. Their blood was mixed with the blood of the animal sacrifices for the Passover in some way.

See: Blood; Sacrifice; Offer (Offering)

See Map: Galilee

#### Where was the tower of Siloam?

[13:4]

Luke wrote about the tower of Siloam. Scholars think the tower in Siloam was a tower on the walls around Jerusalem near the pool of Siloam. Luke did not say why the tower fell.

See Map: Jerusalem; Pool of Siloam

#### Why did it mean to “repent”?

[13:5]

See: Repent (Repentance)

## 13:6-9

#### What was a parable?

[13:6]

See: Parable

#### What was a fig tree?

[13:6]

A fig tree was a tree that was very common in Israel. The tree produced a small fruit called a fig.

#### What was a vineyard?

[13:6]

A vineyard was a farm where grapes and olives were grown. In this man’s vineyard, there was also a fig tree planted.

See: Vine (Vineyard)

## 13:10-17

#### What was a synagogue?

[13:10]

See: Synagogue

#### What was the Sabbath?

[13:10]

See: Sabbath

#### What was a “spirit of weakness”?

[13:11]

A “spirit of weakness” was an evil spirit or demon. The evil spirit caused the woman to have a “weakness.” Some scholars say the “spirit of weakness” always kept the woman sick. Other scholars say it disabled the woman in some way.

See: Demon

#### Why was the synagogue ruler mad that Jesus “healed on the Sabbath”?

[13:14]

See: Luke 6:6-11

See: Sabbath; Synagogue

#### Why did Jesus cry out “hypocrites”?

[13:15]

Jesus said that the rulers of the synagogue were “hypocrites.” He said this because of the things they taught about the Law of Moses and the Sabbath. The ruler and other religious leaders said they could help their own animals on the Sabbath, but they could not help other people on the Sabbath.

See: Synagogue; Hypocrisy (Hypocirte); Law of Moses; Sabbath

#### How did Satan bind “bound” the woman?

[13:16]

When Jesus spoke about the woman being bound for eighteen years, he was using a metaphor. Animals were were tied, or bound with a rope. They could not move. The bound woman could not move because she was sick.

See: Metaphor

## 13:18-21

#### How is the kingdom of God like a mustard seed?

[13:19]

Jesus told a parable about a mustard seed. He wanted people to know that the kingdom of God will be very large. In Israel, the mustard tree had the smallest seed. However, this seed grew into a big tree. In the same way, the kingdom of God started among a small group of people but it will grow large in some way. It will include all people of the world.

See: Parable; Kingdom of God

#### Why did Jesus tell the parable of yeast?

[13:21]

Jesus told a parable about yeast. He wanted people to know that the kingdom of God will spread into the whole world. When a woman mixed a small amount of yeast with a big amount of flour the flour raised. Three measures of flour fed 150 people. In the same way, the kingdom of God started among a small group of people but it will become very large. It will include all people of the world.

See: Parable; Kingdom of God; Yeast (Leaven)

## 13:22-30

#### What did it mean to be “saved”?

[13:23]

See: Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

#### What was the narrow door?

[13:24]

Jesus spoke about a narrow door. This was a metaphor. Scholars think Jesus spoke about the “narrow door” because it was difficult to enter a house through a narrow door. In the same way, it was difficult to enter the kingdom of God. Someone could only enter the kingdom of God if they repented.

See: Metaphor; Kingdom of God; Repent (Repentance)

#### Why will many not be able to enter the kingdom of God?

[13:24]

Many people will not be able to enter the kingdom of God. The owner of the house gets up and locks the door. This was a metaphor. Scholars think there will be a time when Jesus will not allow people to enter the kingdom of God. Perhaps this will happen at the second coming of Jesus.

See: Metaphor; Kingdom of God; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### What did Jesus mean by saying “there will be crying and the grinding of teeth”?

[13:28]

Jesus said that there will be “crying and the grinding of teeth”. Some scholars think he was saying that people will be greatly disappointed, angry, and filled with worry because they thought they should be in heaven with God. Other scholars think there will be “crying and the grinding of teeth” because people will know they are guilty, and they will be very sad.

See: Heaven; Hell; Day of Judgment; Judge (Judgment); Punish (Punishment) .

#### Who were the least important and the most important?

[13:30]

Jesus spoke about the least and most important people. Scholars think the least important were the Gentiles and the most important were the Jews.

See: Gentile

## 13:31-35

#### What was a Pharisee?

[13:31]

See: Pharisees

#### Why did Jesus call Herod a fox?

[13:32]

Jesus called Herod a fox. Scholars think Jesus was using a metaphor when he called Herod a “fox”. A fox was an animal that was very tricky, sneaky, and often destroyed things. He wanted to say that Herod like this because he was trying to get rid of Jesus. He was being sneaky by having others try to kill Jesus for him.

See: Metaphor; King Herod

#### What was casting out demons?

[13:32]

See: Demon Possession (Casting Out Demons)

#### What was Jesus’ goal?

[13:33]

Jesus spoke about a goal. This was something he wanted to do. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about going to die in Jerusalem. This was when he finished the things God sent him to do.

#### Why did Jesus say, “it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem”?

[13:33]

Jesus said “it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem.” He wanted people to know that more prophets were killed in Jerusalem than in any other place. Jesus is the greatest of all the prophets and God planned for him to be killed in the city where most of the prophets were killed.

See: Prophet

#### Who were the “children” about whom Jesus spoke?

[13:34]

Jesus spoke about the “children.” He was speaking about people who lived in Jerusalem. Scholars think Jesus was talking about the whole nation of Israel.

#### Why did Jesus say, “your house is abandoned”?

[13:35]

Jesus said, “your house is abandoned”. Jesus spoke about something that was going to happen. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about Jerusalem. Other scholars think Jesus was saying the temple will be abandoned. The Romans destroyed both Jerusalem and the temple about 40 years after Jesus died.

See: Temple

#### When will people say “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord”?

[13:35]

People will say “Blessed is he who come in the name of the Lord”. Jesus was speaking about returning to the earth. Perhaps the “name of the Lord” referred to the coming of the Messiah.

See: Bless (Blessing); Messiah (Christ); Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Luke 13:1

##### some people told him

"some people told Jesus"

##### whose blood Pilate mixed with their own sacrifices

Here "blood" refers to the death of the Galileans. Pilate ordered his soldiers to kill some Galileans while those Galileans were offering their sacrifices to God. Alternate translation: "whom Pilate killed while while they were offering sacrifices" or "whom Pilate's soldiers killed as they were sacrificing animals"

#### Luke 13:2

##### Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?

"Were these Galileans more sinful ... way?" or "Does this prove that these Galileans were more sinful ... way?" Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in verse 3.

#### Luke 13:3

##### No, I tell you

Jesus answers the question he asked in 13:2. Here "I tell you" emphasizes "no." Alternate translation: "They certainly were not more sinful"

##### all of you will perish in the same way

"all of you also will die." The phrase "in the same way" means they will experience the same result; it does not mean that they will die by the same method.

#### Luke 13:4

##### Or those

This is Jesus's second example of people who suffered. Alternate translation: "Or consider those" or "Think about those"

##### Siloam

This is the name of an area in Jerusalem.

##### do you think they were worse sinners ... Jerusalem?

Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people. He answers the question in 13:4. Alternate translation: "were they more sinful ... Jerusalem?"

##### other men

"other people"

#### Luke 13:6

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell the crowd a parable to explain his last statement, "But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish."

##### vineyard

This may have been a vineyard where grapes were grown or simply a garden or orchard.

#### Luke 13:7

##### Why let it waste the ground?

"It is just wasting the ground." or "Do not let it waste the ground."

#### Luke 13:8

##### put manure on it

"put animal dung in the soil." Doing this makes the soil good for plants and trees.

#### Luke 13:10

##### Now

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### during the Sabbath

"on a Sabbath day"

#### Luke 13:11

##### a spirit of weakness

"an evil spirit that made her weak"

#### Luke 13:12

##### Woman, you are freed from your weakness

By saying this, Jesus healed her. Alternate translation: "Woman, I now free you from your weakness" or "Woman, be healed from your illness"

#### Luke 13:13

##### He placed his hands on her

"He touched her"

##### she was made straight again

"she was able to stand up straight again"

#### Luke 13:14

##### was indignant

"was very angry"

##### be healed then

"let him heal you during those six days" or "ask for healing then"

#### Luke 13:15

##### Hypocrites!

"You hypocrites!" Jesus rebukes the religious leaders.

##### Does not each of you untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it to drink on the Sabbath?

"Every one of you unties his ox or his donkey from the stall and leads it to drink water on the Sabbath day."

#### Luke 13:16

##### this daughter of Abraham

"this descendant of Abraham"

##### whom Satan bound

"whom Satan kept crippled by her illness" or "whom Satan bound with this disease"

##### eighteen long years

The word "long" here emphasizes that eighteen years was a very long time for the woman to suffer.

##### should her bonds not be untied on the Sabbath day?

Jesus speaks about the woman's disease as if it were ropes that bound her. Alternate translation: "it is right to untie the bonds of her illness on the Sabbath day."

#### Luke 13:18

##### What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

Jesus uses two questions to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what the kingdom of God is like and what I can compare it to."

#### Luke 13:19

##### a mustard seed

A mustard seed is a very small seed that grows into a large plant. Alternate translation: "a small seed"

##### threw into his garden

"planted in his garden." People planted some kinds of seeds by throwing them so that they scattered in the garden.

##### a big tree

"a very large shrub"

##### birds of heaven

"birds of the sky" or "birds that fly in the sky" or "birds"

#### Luke 13:21

##### like yeast

Only a little bit of yeast is needed to make a lot of dough rise.

##### three measures of flour

This is a large amount of flour, since each measure was about 13 liters. You may need to use a term that your culture uses to measure flour. Alternate translation: "a large amount of flour"

##### until all the flour was leavened

When flour dough is leavened, it expands. Alternate translation: "until the whole lump of dough grew big"

#### Luke 13:23

##### are only a few people to be saved?

"will God save only a few people?"

#### Luke 13:24

##### Struggle to enter through the narrow door

"Work hard to go through the narrow doorway." Jesus is speaking about God's kingdom as if it were a house with a small doorway. Both are hard to enter.

#### Luke 13:25

##### Once the owner

"After the owner" or "When the owner"

##### and pound the door

"and knock on the door" or "and hit the door." This is an attempt to get the owner's attention.

#### Luke 13:27

##### Get away from me

"Go away from me"

#### Luke 13:28

##### There will be crying and the grinding of teeth

"You will cry and grind your teeth." These are symbolic acts that show great regret and sadness.

##### but you are thrown out

"but you yourselves will have been thrown outside" or "but God will have forced you outside"

#### Luke 13:29

##### and be seated at a table in the kingdom of God

"and they will sit down at the feast in the kingdom of God"

#### Luke 13:30

##### will be first ... will be last

Being first represents being important or honored. Alternate translation: "will be the most important ... will be the least important"

#### Luke 13:31

##### Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you

Translate this as a warning to Jesus. They were advising him to go somewhere else and be safe.

#### Luke 13:32

##### that fox

Jesus was calling Herod a fox. A fox is a small wild dog. Possible meanings are 1) Herod was not much of a threat at all or 2) Herod was deceptive.

#### Luke 13:33

##### In any case

"Nevertheless" or "However" or "Whatever happens"

##### it is not acceptable for a prophet to be destroyed outside of Jerusalem

The ancestors of the Jewish people had killed many of God's prophets in Jerusalem, and Jesus knew that the Jews would kill him there also. Alternate translation: "it is only in Jerusalem that it is acceptable for prophets to be killed."

#### Luke 13:34

##### who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you

"you people who kill the prophets and stone those whom God has sent to you"

##### How often I desired

"I have so often desired"

##### to gather your children

"to gather your people" or "to gather the people of Jerusalem"

##### the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings

This describes how a hen protects her young from harm by covering them with her wings.

#### Luke 13:35

##### your house is abandoned

This is a prophecy about what would soon happen to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "your house will be abandoned"

##### the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to the Lord's power and authority.

Chapter 14

1It happened one Sabbath, when he went into the house of one of the leaders of the Pharisees to eat bread, that they were watching him closely.2Behold, there in front of him was a man who was suffering from edema.3Jesus asked the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?"4But they kept silent. So Jesus took hold of him, healed him, and sent him away.5He said to them, "Which of you who has a son or an ox that falls into a well on the Sabbath day will not immediately pull him out?"6They were not able to give an answer to these things.

7When Jesus noticed how those who were invited chose the seats of honor, he spoke a parable, saying to them,8"When you are invited by someone to a wedding feast, do not sit down in the place of honor, because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you.9When the person who invited both of you arrives, he will say to you, 'Give this other person your place,' and then in shame you will proceed to take the lowest place.10But when you are invited, go and sit down in the lowest place, so that when the one who has invited you comes, he may say to you, 'Friend, go up higher.' Then you will be honored in the presence of all who sit at the table with you.11For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted."

12Jesus also said to the man who had invited him, "When you give a dinner or a banquet, do not invite your friends or your brothers or your relatives or your rich neighbors, as they may also invite you in return, and you will be repaid.13But when you give a banquet, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame, and the blind,14and you will be blessed, because they cannot repay you. For you will be repaid in the resurrection of the just."

15When one of them who sat at the table with Jesus heard these things, he said to him, "Blessed is he who will eat bread in the kingdom of God!"

16But Jesus said to him, "A certain man prepared a large dinner and invited many.17At the dinner hour, he sent his servant to say to those who were invited, 'Come, because everything is now ready.'

18"They all alike began to make excuses. The first said to him, 'I have bought a field, and I must go out and see it. Please excuse me.'

19"Another said, 'I have bought five pairs of oxen, and I am going to try them out. Please excuse me.'

20"Then another man said, 'I have married a wife, and therefore I cannot come.'

21"The servant came and told his master these things. Then the master of the house became angry and said to his servant, 'Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the town and bring in here the poor, the crippled, the blind, and the lame.'

22"The servant said, 'Master, what you commanded has been done, and yet there is still room.'

23"The master said to the servant, 'Go out into the highways and hedges and compel them to come in, that my house may be filled.24For I say to you, none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner.'"

25Now large crowds were going with him, and he turned and said to them,26"If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters, and even his own life, he cannot be my disciple.27Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple.28For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it?29Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation and is not able to finish, all who see it will begin to mock him,30saying, 'This man began to build and was not able to finish.'31Or what king, as he goes to encounter another king in war, will not sit down first and take advice about whether he is able with ten thousand men to fight the other king who comes against him with twenty thousand men?32If not, while the other army is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks for conditions of peace.33So therefore, any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple.34Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its taste, how can it be made salty again?35It is of no use for the soil or even for the manure pile. It is thrown away. He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

### Luke 14

## 14:1-6

#### What was the Sabbath?

[14:1]

See: Sabbath

#### What was edema?

[14:2]

Edema was swelling of the arms and legs. It affected the heart and kidneys.

#### Who were the “experts in the Jewish laws”?

[14:3]

The experts of the Jewish laws were people who taught about the Law of Moses. They were also called “scribes.”

See: Scribe; Law of Moses

#### Was it lawful for Jesus to heal on the Sabbath?

[14:3]

See: Luke 6:6-11

See: Sabbath

## 14:7-11

#### What was a parable?

[14:7]

See: Parable

#### What were “seats of honor”?

[14:8]

The “seats of honor” were the places at a feast where the most important people sat.

See: Wedding; Pride; Humble (Humility)

## 14:12-24

#### What is the “resurrection of the just”?

[14:14]

The “resurrection of the just” is a time in the future when God will cause all righteous people, who have died, to live again.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection) ; Righteous (Righteousness)

#### Why are people blessed who “eat bread in the kingdom of God”?

[14:15]

People who eat bread in the kingdom of God are blessed. Some scholars think people will be blessed because they will be eating with all those who belong to the kingdom of God. More scholars think that eating in the kingdom of God will happen in heaven.

See: Bless (Blessing); Kingdom of God; Heaven

#### Why did Jesus say, “none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner”?

[14:24]

Jesus said “none of those men who were invited will taste my dinner”. He said this because the men who were invited refused when Jesus first invited them.

## 14:25-35

#### Why must Christians hate their families?

[14:26]

Jesus said that Christians must hate their families. This was a hyperbole. He wanted Christians to love him more than they loved their families (see: Matthew 10:37).

See: Hyperbole

#### What did it mean to be a disciple of Jesus?

[14:26]

See: Disciple

#### What did it mean for a person to “carry his own cross”?

[14:27]

Jesus told people to carry a cross. This was a metaphor. Someone carried their own cross when they suffered or died for following Jesus. The cross was a metaphor for suffering and death.

See: Cross; Metaphor

#### What did it mean to “count the cost”?

[14:28]

When someone counted the cost of something, they would calculate how much money the materials to build a tower would cost. He would also calculate the cost of paying people to construct the tower. He would then know if he had enough to build the tower.

#### Why did Jesus say that if a person “does not give up all his possessions (he) cannot be my disciple”?

[14:33]

Jesus said that if a person did not give up everything, then this person cannot be Jesus’ disciple. Jesus was telling people the cost of following him. Some scholars think Jesus was clearly saying that a disciple must give up everything they own to follow Jesus. Other scholars think Jesus was saying that a disciple must not keep anything that would stop him from following Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### Why did Jesus say, “he who has ears to hear, let him hear”?

[14:35]

Jesus said “he who has an ear, let him hear” because he really wanted people to listen to the things that he just said. Jesus knew that when he spoke, the Holy Spirit spoke too.

See: Holy Spirit

#### Luke 14:1

##### he went into the house

"Jesus went into the house"

##### to eat bread

"to eat" or "for a meal." Bread was an important part of a meal and is used in this sentence to refer to a meal.

##### they were watching him closely

"they were watching him carefully." They wanted to see if they could accuse him of doing anything wrong.

#### Luke 14:2

##### was suffering from edema

Edema is swelling caused by water building up in parts of the body. Alternate translation: "was suffering because parts of his body were swollen with water"

#### Luke 14:3

##### Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not

"Does the law permit us to heal on the Sabbath, or does it forbid it"

#### Luke 14:5

##### Which of you who has a son or an ox ... will not immediately pull him out?

Jesus wanted them to admit that it was good to help others on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "Surely if your son or ox fell into a well on the Sabbath day, you would immediately pull him out, right?"

#### Luke 14:6

##### They were not able to give an answer to these things

They knew that Jesus was right, but they did not want to admit it. Alternate translation: "They had nothing to say about these things"

#### Luke 14:7

##### those who were invited

"those whom the leader of the Pharisees had invited to the meal"

##### the seats of honor

"the seats for honored people" or "the seats for important people"

#### Luke 14:8

##### When you are invited by someone

"When someone invites you"

##### because someone may have been invited who is more honored than you

"because the host may have invited someone who is more important than you are"

#### Luke 14:9

##### both of you

This refers to the two people who want the same seat of honor.

##### in shame

"you will feel ashamed and"

##### the lowest place

"the least important place" or "the place for the least important person"

#### Luke 14:10

##### go up higher

"move to a better seat"

##### Then you will be honored

"Then the one who invited you will honor you"

#### Luke 14:11

##### who exalts himself

"who tries to look important" or "who chooses an important position for himself"

##### will be humbled

"will be shown to be unimportant" or "will receive an unimportant position"

##### who humbles himself

"who chooses to look unimportant" or "who chooses an unimportant position for himself"

##### will be exalted

"will be shown to be important" or "will receive an important position"

#### Luke 14:12

##### as they may also invite you in return

"because they might invite you to their dinner or banquet"

##### you will be repaid

"in this way they will repay you"

#### Luke 14:14

##### you will be blessed

"God will bless you"

##### you will be repaid

"God will repay you"

##### in the resurrection of the just

"when God brings the righteous people back to life"

#### Luke 14:15

##### he said to him

he said to Jesus

##### Blessed is he

"Blessed is anyone" or "How good it will be for everyone"

##### he who will eat bread

The word "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "he who will eat at the meal"

#### Luke 14:16

##### General Information

Jesus tells a parable.

##### invited many

"invited many people" or "invited many guests"

#### Luke 14:17

##### At the dinner hour

"At the time for the dinner" or "When the dinner was about to begin"

##### those who were invited

"those he had invited"

#### Luke 14:18

##### to make excuses

"to say why they could not come to the dinner"

##### Please excuse me

"Please forgive me" or "Please accept my apology"

#### Luke 14:19

##### five pairs of oxen

People used pairs of oxen to pull farming tools. Alternate translation: “ten oxen to work in my fields”

##### I am going to try them out

"I am going to try using them"

#### Luke 14:20

##### I have married a wife

Use an expression that is natural in your language. Some languages may say "I just got married" or "I have taken a wife."

#### Luke 14:22

##### what you commanded has been done

"I have done what you commanded"

#### Luke 14:23

##### the highways and hedges

"the roads and paths outside of the city"

##### compel them to come in

"make anyone you find to come in"

##### that my house may be filled

"so that my house may be full of people"

#### Luke 14:24

##### who were invited

"whom I invited"

##### will taste my dinner

"will enjoy the dinner I have prepared"

#### Luke 14:25

##### Now large crowds were going with him

Now large crowds were going with Jesus

#### Luke 14:26

##### If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father ... he cannot be my disciple

Here, "hate" is an exaggeration for the lesser love people are to show to people other than Jesus. Alternate translation: "If anyone comes to me and does not love me more than he loves his father ... he cannot be my disciple" or "Only if a person loves me more than he loves his own father ... can he be my disciple"

#### Luke 14:27

##### Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple

"Only he who carries his own cross and comes after me can be my disciple" or "If anyone wants to be my disciple, he must carry his own cross and follow me"

#### Luke 14:28

##### General Information:

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

##### For which of you who desires to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost to calculate if he has what he needs to complete it?

"If a person wanted to build a tower, he would first sit down and determine if he had enough money to complete it."

##### tower

This may have been a watchtower. Alternate translation: "a tall building" or "a high lookout platform"

#### Luke 14:29

##### Otherwise

"If he does not first count the cost"

##### when he has laid a foundation

"when he has built a base" or "when he has completed the first part of the building"

#### Luke 14:31

##### what king ... will not sit down first and take advice ... men?

Jesus uses another question to teach the crowd about counting the cost. Alternate translation: "you know that a king ... would sit down first and take counsel ... men."

##### take advice

Possible meanings are 1) "think carefully " or 2) "listen to his advisors."

#### Luke 14:32

##### If not

"If he realizes that he will not be able to defeat the other king"

##### for conditions of peace

"for terms to end the war" or "what the other king wants him to do in order to end the war"

#### Luke 14:33

##### any one of you who does not give up all his possessions cannot be my disciple

"only those of you who give up all your possessions can be my disciples"

##### give up all his possessions

"leave behind all that he has"

#### Luke 14:34

##### how can it be made salty again?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "it cannot be made salty again." or "no one can make it salty again."

#### Luke 14:35

##### manure pile

People use manure to fertilize gardens and fields. Salt without taste is so useless it is not even worth mixing with manure. Alternate translation: "compost heap" or "fertilizer"

##### It is thrown away

"People throw it away"

##### He who has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is saying that what he has just said is important, and people may need to take some effort to understand it. See how you translated this in Luke 8:8. Alternate translation: “Let the one who has ears to hear listen” or “If anyone can hear, let him listen and understand” or “If you have ears to hear, then listen"

Chapter 15

1Now all the tax collectors and other sinners were coming to Jesus to listen to him.2Both the Pharisees and the scribes grumbled to each other, saying, "This man welcomes sinners, and even eats with them."

3Jesus spoke this parable to them, saying,4"Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep and then loses one of them, will not leave the ninety-nine in the wilderness, and go after the lost one until he finds it?5Then when he has found it, he lays it across his shoulders and rejoices.6When he comes to the house, he calls together his friends and his neighbors, saying to them, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found my lost sheep.'7I say to you that even so, there will be joy in heaven over one sinner who repents, more than over ninety-nine righteous persons who do not need to repent.

8"Or what woman who has ten silver coins, if she were to lose one coin, would not light a lamp, sweep the house, and seek diligently until she has found it?9When she has found it, she calls together her friends and neighbors, saying, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found the coin which I lost.'10Even so, I say to you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents."

11Then Jesus said, "A certain man had two sons,12and the younger of them said to his father, 'Father, give me the portion of the wealth that falls to me.' So he divided his property between them.13Not many days later, the younger son gathered together all he owned and went to a country far away, and there he wasted all his wealth by living recklessly.14Now when he had spent everything, a severe famine spread through that country, and he began to be in need.15He went and hired himself out to one of the citizens of that country, who sent him into his fields to feed pigs.16He was longing to eat the carob pods that the pigs ate because no one gave him anything.17But when the young son came to himself, he said, 'How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread, and I am here, perishing from hunger!18I will get up and leave here and go to my father, and will say to him, "Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you.19I am no longer worthy to be called your son; make me as one of your hired servants."'20So the young son got up and left and came toward his father. While he was still far away, his father saw him and was moved with compassion, and he ran and embraced him and kissed him.21The son said to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.'

22"The father said to his servants, 'Bring quickly the best robe, and put it on him, and put a ring on his hand, and sandals on his feet.23Then bring the fattened calf and kill it. Let us feast and be merry!24For my son was dead, and now he is alive. He was lost, and now he is found.' Then they began to be merry.

25"Now his older son was out in the field. As he came and approached the house, he heard music and dancing.26He called to one of the servants and asked what these things might be.27The servant said to him, 'Your brother has come home and your father has killed the fattened calf because he has received him in good health.'

28"The older son was angry and would not go in, and his father came out and pleaded with him.29But the older son answered and said to his father, 'Look, these many years I slaved for you, and I never neglected a command of yours, and yet you never gave me a young goat that I might be merry with my friends,30but when your son came, who has devoured your living with prostitutes, you killed for him the fattened calf.'

31"The father said to him, 'Child, you are always with me, and all that is mine is yours.32But it was proper for us to be merry and rejoice, for this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive; he was lost, and has now been found.'"

### Luke 15

## 15:1-10

#### Who were tax collectors and sinners?

[15:1]

Tax collectors were Jews who worked for the Roman government. People in Israel hated the tax collectors. The tax collector paid the Romans so they could collect taxes from other people. If they collected more taxes than they paid the Roman government, then they were allowed to keep it. Because of this, many tax collectors became rich. The Jews thought a Jewish tax collector betrayed the Jewish people because they took money from the Jews and gave it to the Romans. They thought tax collectors were evil because they took money from people who honored God and gave it to people who rejected God.

The sinners Luke wrote about were Jewish people who did not obey the Law of Moses.

See: Luke 5:29-32

See: Law of Moses; Tax (Tax Collector, Toll), Sin

#### Who were the scribes?

[15:2]

See: Scribe

#### What was a parable?

[15:3]

See: Parable

#### How will there be “joy in heaven”?

[15:7]

Jesus said that there will be “joy in heaven.” Jesus spoke about the joy of God and the joy of the angels. They have joy because a sinner repented.

See: Angel; Sin; Rejoice (Joy, Joyful); Repent (Repentance)

## 15:11-32

#### What did the younger son mean when he said “the portion of the wealth that falls to me”?

[15:12]

The younger son said “the portion of the wealth that falls to me”. He was speaking about the money of his inheritance.

See: Inherit (Inheritance, Heir)

#### How did the younger son live?

[15:13]

The younger son lived recklessly. That is, he wasted his money on doing things that did not honor God.

#### Why did the younger son say that he “sinned against heaven”?

[15:18]

The younger son said he “sinned against heaven.” This was a metaphor the ancient Jews used to talk about God without saying the word God. That is, the younger son sinned against God.

See: Metaphor; Sin; Heaven

#### Why was the young man’s father “moved with compassion”?

[15:20]

Jesus said the father was “moved with compassion.” Scholars think the father wanted to be compassionate to his son. That is, he had wanted to show mercy to his young, to forgive him, and to love him.

See: Mercy

#### What was the “fattened calf”?

[15:23]

The fattened calf was not with the other calves in the field. People gave it extra food and then had it prepared for a special celebration.

#### How did people believe the younger son was “dead”?

[15:24]

The father spoke about his son being dead. However, he was not dead. He believed his son was dead in some way. That is, he meant that his son was like someone who was dead, but now had come back to life. The father never expected to see his son again.

#### Why did the father say to the older son, “you are always with me”?

[15:31]

The father told the older son, “you are always with me.” This was because the older son lived with the father all the time. Therefore, there was no need to have a special feast to celebrate his return.

#### Luke 15:1

##### Now

This marks the beginning of a new event.

##### all the tax collectors

"many tax collectors"

#### Luke 15:2

##### and even eats with them

The word "even" shows that they thought it was bad enough that Jesus allowed sinners to come to him, but it was worse that he would eat with them.

#### Luke 15:3

##### General Information:

Jesus begins to tell several parables. These parables are situations that anyone could experience. They are not about particular people.

#### Luke 15:4

##### Which one of you, if he has a hundred sheep and then loses one of them, will not leave ... until he finds it?

"If one of you had a hundred sheep and then lost one of them, he would leave ... until he finds it."

#### Luke 15:5

##### lays it across his shoulders

"carries it on his shoulders"

#### Luke 15:7

##### even so

"in the same way"

##### there will be joy in heaven

"everyone in heaven will rejoice"

#### Luke 15:8

##### Or what woman ... would not light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it?

Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if they lost a silver coin, they would look for it diligently. Alternate translation: "Any woman ... would certainly light a lamp ... and seek diligently until she has found it."

#### Luke 15:10

##### Even so

"In the same way" or "Just as people would rejoice with the woman"

##### over one sinner who repents

"when one sinner repents"

#### Luke 15:11

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells another parable.

#### Luke 15:12

##### give me

The son wanted his father to give it to him immediately.

##### the portion of the wealth that falls to me

"the part of your wealth that you plan for me to receive when you die"

##### So he divided his property between them

"So the father divided his property between his two sons"

#### Luke 15:13

##### by living recklessly

"by living without thinking about the consequences of his actions" or "by living wildly"

#### Luke 15:14

##### a severe famine spread through that country

"a drought occurred there and the entire country did not have enough food"

##### to be in need

"to lack what he needed" or "to not have enough"

#### Luke 15:15

##### hired himself out to one of the citizens

"began to work for one of the citizens"

#### Luke 15:16

##### He was longing to eat

"He wished very much that he could eat"

##### the carob pods

These are the husks of beans that grow on the carob tree. Alternate translation: "the carob bean pods" or "the bean husks"

#### Luke 15:17

##### the young son came to himself

This phrase means he began to think clearly. Alternate translation: "he came to his senses"

##### How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread

This is part of an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "All my father's hired servants have more than enough bread to eat"

##### bread

The word “bread” refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

##### perishing

"dying"

#### Luke 15:18

##### I will get up

This means that he will begin to act. It does not mean that he was sitting or lying down when he said these words.

##### I have sinned against heaven

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word "God" and used the word "heaven" instead. Alternate translation: "I have sinned against God"

#### Luke 15:19

##### I am no longer worthy to be called your son

"You called me son in the past, but now I am not worthy for you to call me son"

##### make me as one of your hired servants

"hire me and I will become one of your servants." This is a request, not a command.

#### Luke 15:20

##### While he was still far away

"While he was still far away from his father's house"

##### was moved with compassion

"had pity on him" or "loved him deeply from his heart"

##### embraced him and kissed him

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: "welcomed him affectionately"

#### Luke 15:21

##### I am no longer worthy to be called your son

"I am not worthy for you to call me your son"

#### Luke 15:22

##### the best robe

"the best coat" or "the best garment"

##### put a ring on his hand

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers.

##### sandals

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals.

#### Luke 15:23

##### the fattened calf

People would give one of their young cows special food so that it would grow well. Then when they wanted to have a feast, they would eat that young cow. Alternate translation: "the best calf" or "the young animal we have been making fat"

##### kill it

"kill it and cook it"

#### Luke 15:24

##### my son was dead, and now he is alive

"it is as if my son were dead and became alive again" or "I felt like my son had died, but he is now alive"

##### He was lost, and now he is found

"It is as if I had lost my son and now I have found him" or "It is as if he had lost his way, but now he has returned"

#### Luke 15:25

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

##### was out in the field

"was out in the field working"

#### Luke 15:26

##### what these things might be

"what was happening"

#### Luke 15:27

##### he has received him in good health

"your father has received your brother, and your brother is healthy" or "your brother is well and has returned to your father"

#### Luke 15:29

##### I slaved for you

"I worked as hard as a slave for you"

##### a young goat

A young goat was smaller and less expensive than a fatted calf. Alternate translation: "even a young goat"

#### Luke 15:30

##### your son

"that son of yours." The older son refers to his brother this way in order to show how angry he is.

##### has devoured your living

"has wasted all your wealth" or "has thrown away all your money"

#### Luke 15:31

##### Child

"My dear child" or "My dear son." The father was addressing his son tenderly.

#### Luke 15:32

##### this brother of yours

The father was probably reminding the older son of his responsibility to love his brother.

##### this brother of yours was dead, and is now alive; he was lost, and has now been found.

See how you translated similar words in Luke 15:24.

Chapter 16

1Jesus also said to the disciples, "There was a certain rich man who had a manager, and it was reported to him that this manager was wasting his possessions.2So the rich man called him and said to him, 'What is this that I hear about you? Give an account of your management, for you can no longer be manager.'

3"The manager said to himself, 'What should I do, since my master is taking away my management job? I do not have strength to dig, and I am ashamed to beg.4I know what I will do, so that when I am removed from my management job, people will welcome me into their houses.'

5"Then the manager called for each one of his master's debtors, and he asked the first one, 'How much do you owe to my master?'6He said, 'A hundred baths of olive oil.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, sit down quickly, and write fifty.'

7"Then the manager said to another, 'How much do you owe?' He said, 'A hundred cors of wheat.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, and write eighty.'

8"The master then commended the unrighteous manager because he had acted shrewdly. For the sons of this world are more shrewd in dealing with their own people than are the sons of light.9I say to you, make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth so that when it is gone, they may welcome you into the eternal dwellings.

10"He who is faithful in very little is also faithful in much, and he who is unrighteous in very little is also unrighteous in much.11If you have not been faithful in using unrighteous wealth, who will trust you with true wealth?12If you have not been faithful in using other people's property, who will give you money of your own?

13"No servant can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth."

14Now the Pharisees, who were lovers of money, heard all these things, and they ridiculed him.15He said to them, "You justify yourselves in the sight of men, but God knows your hearts. That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God.16The law and the prophets were in effect until John came. From that time on, the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached, and everyone tries to force their way into it.17But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the law to become invalid.

18"Everyone who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery, and he who marries one who is divorced from her husband commits adultery.

19"Now there was a certain rich man who was clothed in purple and fine linen and was enjoying every day his great wealth.20A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate, covered with sores,21and longing to eat what fell from the rich man's table. Even the dogs came and licked his sores.22It came about that the beggar died and was carried away by the angels to Abraham's side. The rich man also died and was buried,23and in Hades, being in torment, he lifted up his eyes and saw Abraham far away and Lazarus at his side.24So he cried out and said, 'Father Abraham, have mercy on me and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue, for I am in anguish in this flame.'

25"But Abraham said, 'Child, remember that in your lifetime you received your good things, and Lazarus in like manner evil things. But now he is comforted here, and you are in agony.26Besides all this, a great chasm has been put in place, so that those who want to cross over from here to you cannot, and no one can cross over from there to us.'

27"The rich man said, 'I beg you, Father Abraham, that you would send him to my father's house—28for I have five brothers—in order that he may warn them, so that it may not be that they come into this place of torment.'

29"But Abraham said, 'They have Moses and the prophets; let them listen to them.'

30"The rich man replied, 'No, Father Abraham, but if someone would go to them from the dead, they will repent.'

31"But Abraham said to him, 'If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead.'"

### Luke 16

## 16:1-13

#### What was a manager?

[16:1]

A manager took care of a master’s house, land, and business. A master gave the manager a ring. This was a symbol that he had permission to do things for the master. Sometimes managers were servants but sometimes they were free people.

See: Serve

#### What was meant by the words, “to dig”?

[16:3]

Jesus spoke about digging. Some scholars think he was speaking about digging ditches or digging in the fields using a shovel. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about doing any type of hard work.

#### How did the manager change what the debtors owed his master?

[16:6, 16:7]

The manager changed what the debtor owed his master. Scholars do not know how the the manager did this.

Some scholars think he wrote that the people owed less money than they owed.

Some scholars think he did not make them pay more money than they owed. They think the owner charged them more interest than he should have.

Some scholars think he would have made money from these people. However, he chose not to make money from them. The master did not lose any money.

**Advice to translators**: A debtor is someone who owed someone else money. When someone borrows money, they often have to pay more money back. This is called interest.

#### What was an “unrighteous manager”?

[16:8]

See: Righteous (Righteousness); Steward

#### How did the master “commend” the unrighteous manager?

[16:8]

Scholars think that when the master “commended” the manager, he complimented the manager for acting shrewdly.

**Advice to Translators**: The master did not compliment the manager for acting dishonestly. You will need to distinguish acting “shrewdly” from acting dishonestly.

#### What did it mean to act “shrewdly”?

[16:8]

When someone acted “shrewdly”, they acted with wisdom and skill in the face of a coming problem or crisis. Some scholars think it meant to act in a way that was prudent and they planned for things.

See: Wise (Wisdom, Fool)

#### What was “unrighteous wealth”?

[16:9]

Money that was considered “unrighteous wealth” was money gained from doing evil.

See: Sin

#### Why did Jesus tell the disciples to make friends “by means of unrighteous wealth”?

[16:9]

Jesus told his disciples to use the money they gained on earth in a way that helped people who were in need. Jesus wanted his disciples to help people because those people might become friends of the disciples. Those friends might then believe in Jesus.

See: Disciple

#### Who were the “friends” who will welcome the disciples into eternal dwellings?

[16:9]

Scholars have different ideas of who the “friends” are who will welcome the disciples into eternal dwellings.

These friends were poor people whom the disciples helped. These poor people became Christians and died before the disciples. Then these poor people welcomed the disciples into heaven when the disciples died.

These friends were angels. This was a metaphor for God. They spoke about God without saying the name of God. However, the angels will also welcome the disciples into heaven.

These friends were God and Jesus. Only God and Jesus will receive people into heaven.

See: Eternal Life; Disciple; Heaven; Angel; Metaphor

#### How did Jesus want the disciples to be “faithful”?

[16:10]

Jesus wanted the disciples to be “faithful”(πιστός/g4103) by being honest with money (see: 16:11). Then God will give them true wealth. This is a metaphor for the treasures and blessings in heaven. This is really valuable and will last forever.

See: Faithful; Bless (Blessing); Heaven; Metaphor

#### What did Jesus mean when he told the disciples, “you cannot serve God and wealth”?

[16:13]

Jesus said the disciples were not able to serve God and wealth. This was a metaphor. They could not serve a master other than God. If the disciples served someone or something other than God, they did not serve God. Jesus wanted his disciples to serve God only. Jesus said this more than one time (see: Matthew 6:24).

See: Metaphor; Disciple

## 16:14-18

#### What did it mean that the Pharisees were lovers of money?

[16:14]

Luke wrote that the Pharisees loved money. Scholars think that someone who was described as a lover of money was a person who wanted to get more and more money. This person really wanted to have a lot of money.

See: 1 Timothy 6:10; 2 Timothy 3:2

See: Pharisees

#### How did the Pharisees justify themselves to other people?

[16:15]

The Pharisees justified themselves to other people by doing certain things so people could see them doing these things. They gave people money because people saw them give money. They did these things to try to make people think they were righteous. However, that did not justify them to God.

See: Pharisees; Justify (Justification); Righteous (Righteousness)

#### What was meant by the words, “God knows your hearts”?

[16:15]

God knows someone’s heart. That is, he knows what a person is thinking and what a person wants. God knew these Pharisees loved money rather than God.

See: Heart (Metaphor); Pharisees; Love

#### What did Jesus mean when he said, “that which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God”?

[16:15]

Jesus said, “that which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God”. Jesus was speaking about the things people thought were valuable or to be admired. These were not the things God wanted them to do.

See: World; Sin

#### What were the Law and the prophets?

[16:16]

See: Old Testament (Law and Prophets)

#### What was the gospel of the kingdom of God?

[16:16]

See: Gospel; Kingdom of God; Preach (Preacher)

#### How do people try to force their way into the kingdom of God?

[16:16]

Jesus said that people tried to force their way into the kingdom of God. Scholars disagree about what Jesus said.

Some scholars think people who believed in Jesus wanted to enter the kingdom of God.

Some scholars think both Christians and non-Christians wanted to enter the kingdom of God.

Some scholars think non-Christians tried to force their way into the kingdom of God but they were not able to get into it.

Some scholars think people tried to fight a war to bring the kingdom of God to earth.

Some scholars think Jesus warned people to enter the kingdom of God because not all people will enter into it.

Some scholars think the Pharisees tried to stop people from entering into the kingdom of God. Demons also tried to stop people from entering into it. Disciples opposed them.

See: Kingdom of God; Pharisees; Demon; Disciple

#### What was Jesus talking about when he talked about the Law becoming invalid?

[16:17]

Jesus talked about the Law of Moses becoming invalid. Some scholars think he was talking about certain parts of the Law of Moses. However, some parts of the Law of Moses still need to be followed. Other scholars think the Law of Moses ended when Jesus became alive again.

See: Law of Moses; Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### What is adultery?

[16:18]

See: Adultery

## 16:19-31

#### Why was the man described as being “clothed in purple and fine linen”?

[16:19]

When Jesus spoke about the rich man being “clothed in purple and fine linen,” he wanted people to know that this man was as rich as a king. For only kings and very rich people could buy this type of clothing.

#### What did it mean that Lazarus was laid at the rich man’s gate?

[16:20

Lazarus was laid at the rich man’s gate. Some scholars think Lazarus was laid on his mat at the opening to the rich man’s home in hopes that the rich man would give food or money to Lazarus. Other scholars think Lazarus was thrown down or dropped off at the gate to the rich man’s house. They think he was dumped there so he could beg for money from the rich man.

**Advice to Translators**: A beggar was someone who asked people for money because they were poor or because they could not do anything.

#### What did Jesus mean when he said Lazarus was “longing to eat what fell from the rich man’s table”?

[16:21]

Lazarus was “longing to eat what fell from the rich man’s table.” Scholars think Lazarus was so hungry that he waited every day for the servants of the rich man to toss the food scraps out to the dogs and beggars.

**Advice to translators**: Food scraps were food that was not eaten and thrown away or put in the garbage.

#### Why did the dogs lick Lazarus’ sores?

[16:21]

The dogs licked Lazarus’ scores. Scholars think this was because Lazarus was too sick to stop them. Some scholars also think it helped ease Lazarus’ pain from his sores.

#### What did it mean that Lazarus was “carried away by the angels to Abraham’s side”?

[16:22]

“Abraham’s side” is another name for “heaven.”

See: Heaven

#### Where is Hades?

[16:23]

See: Hades (Sheol)

#### What was a “great chasm”?

[16:26]

Scholars think Jesus used the words “great chasm” to talk about a distance that cannot be crossed.

#### Why did the rich man call Abraham “Father Abraham”?

[16:27]

The rich man called Abraham “Father Abraham” because Abraham was the ancestor of all Jewish people.

See: Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)

#### What did Abraham mean when he said, “They have Moses and the prophets”?

[16:29]

Many scholars think that “Moses and the prophets” spoke and wrote enough to teach the rich man’s brothers about God.

#### Luke 16:1

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable.

##### it was reported to him

"people reported to the rich man"

##### was wasting his possessions

"was wasting the rich man's wealth"

#### Luke 16:2

##### What is this that I hear about you?

The rich man uses a question to scold the manager. Alternate translation: "I have heard what you are doing."

##### Give an account of your management

"Give me a report of how you have managed my possessions"

#### Luke 16:3

##### What should I do ... job?

The manager asks himself this question as a way of thinking about his options. Alternate translation: "I need to think about what I should do ... job."

#### Luke 16:4

##### when I am removed from my management job

"when I lose my management job" or "when my master takes away my management job"

#### Luke 16:5

##### his master's debtors

"the people who were in debt to his master" or "the people who owed things to his master"

#### Luke 16:6

##### He said ... He said to him

"The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

##### A hundred baths of olive oil ... write fifty

A bath is about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "I owe 2,200 liters of olive oil ... write 1,100 liters"

##### Take your bill

A "bill" is a piece of paper that tells how much someone owes.

#### Luke 16:7

##### the manager said to another ... He said ... He said to him

"the manager said to another debtor ... The debtor said ... The manager said to the debtor"

##### A hundred cors of wheat ... write eighty

A cor is about 220 liters. Alternate translation: "I owe 22,000 liters of wheat ... write 17,600 liters" or "I owe one hundred large baskets of wheat ... write eighty large baskets of wheat "

#### Luke 16:8

##### commended

"praised" or "spoke well of" or "approved of"

##### he had acted shrewdly

"he had acted cleverly" or "he had done a sensible thing"

##### the sons of this world

"the people of this world" or "worldly people." This refers to those who, like the unrighteous manager, do not know or care about God.

##### the sons of light

Here "light" represents everything godly. Alternate translation: "the people of God" or "godly people"

#### Luke 16:9

##### make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth

"make people your friends by helping them with worldly wealth"

##### the eternal dwellings

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

#### Luke 16:10

##### He who is faithful ... is also faithful ... he who is unrighteous ... is also unrighteous

"People who are faithful ... are also faithful ... people who are unrighteous ... are also unrighteous."

##### faithful in very little ... unrighteous in very little

"faithful even with small things ... unrighteous even in small things"

#### Luke 16:11

##### who will trust you with true wealth?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will trust you with true wealth." or "no one will give you true wealth to manage."

##### true wealth

This refers to wealth that is more genuine, real, or lasting than money and possessions.

#### Luke 16:12

##### who will give you money of your own?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "no one will give you wealth for yourself."

#### Luke 16:13

##### No servant can serve two masters

"A servant cannot serve two masters"

#### Luke 16:14

##### Now

This word marks the author's shift from reporting what Jesus said to reporting something about the Pharisees.

##### who were lovers of money

"who loved having money" or "who where very greedy for money"

##### they ridiculed him

"the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus"

#### Luke 16:15

##### You justify yourselves in the sight of men

"You make yourselves look good to other people"

##### God knows your hearts

Here "hearts" represents the desires of people. Alternate translation: "God understands your true desires" or "God knows your motives"

##### That which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God

"Those things that men think are very important are things that God hates"

#### Luke 16:16

##### The law and the prophets

This refers to all of God's word that had been written up to that time.

##### were in effect

"had authority" or "were what people needed to obey"

##### John came

"John the Baptist came"

##### the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached

"we teach people about the good news of the kingdom of God"

##### everyone tries to force their way into it

"many people are doing everything they can to enter it"

#### Luke 16:17

##### one stroke of a letter of the law

A "stroke of a letter" is the smallest part of a letter. Here it represents something in the law that may seem to be insignificant. Alternate translation: "even the smallest detail of the law"

##### to become invalid

"to disappear" or "to cease to exist"

#### Luke 16:18

##### commits adultery

"is guilty of adultery"

#### Luke 16:19

##### Now

This word marks a shift in Jesus's speech. He begins to tell a story that will help people understand what he was teaching them.

##### who was clothed in purple and fine linen

"who wore clothing made with fine linen and purple dye" or "who wore very expensive clothes." Purple dye and fine linen cloth were very expensive.

#### Luke 16:20

##### A certain beggar named Lazarus was laid at his gate

"People had laid a certain beggar named Lazarus at his gate"

##### at his gate

"at the gate to the rich man's house"

##### covered with sores

"and the beggar had sores all over his body"

#### Luke 16:21

##### longing to eat what fell

"wishing he could eat the scraps of food that fell"

##### Even the dogs came

The word "Even" here shows that what follows is worse than what has already been told about Lazarus. Alternate translation: "In addition to that, the dogs came" or "Worse yet, the dogs came"

##### dogs

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Lazarus was too sick and weak to stop the dogs from licking his wounds.

#### Luke 16:22

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an event in the story.

##### and was carried away by the angels

"and the angels carried him away"

##### to Abraham's side

"to be with Abraham" or "to sit next to Abraham"

##### and was buried

"and people buried him"

#### Luke 16:23

##### in Hades, being in torment

"he went to Hades, where, suffering in terrible pain"

##### he lifted up his eyes

"he looked up"

#### Luke 16:24

##### Father Abraham

Abraham was the ancestor of all the Jews, including the rich man.

##### I am in anguish in this flame

"I am in terrible pain in this flame" or "I am suffering terribly in this fire"

#### Luke 16:25

##### Child

The rich man was one of Abraham's descendants.

##### good things

"fine things" or "pleasant things"

##### and Lazarus in like manner evil things

"and Lazarus received evil things" or "and Lazarus received things that caused him to suffer"

##### he is comforted here

"he is comfortable here" or "he is happy here"

#### Luke 16:26

##### Besides all this

"In addition"

##### a great chasm has been put in place

"God has placed a huge ravine between you and us" or "there is a great chasm"

##### a great chasm

"a steep, deep and wide valley" or "a big separation" or "a huge ravine"

#### Luke 16:28

##### in order that he may warn them

"so that Lazarus may warn them"

##### this place of torment

"this place where we suffer torment" or "this place where we suffer terrible pain"

#### Luke 16:29

##### Moses and the prophets

This refers to their writings. Alternate translation: "what Moses and the prophets wrote"

##### let them listen to them

"your brothers should pay attention to Moses and the prophets"

#### Luke 16:30

##### if someone would go to them from the dead

The rich man would like this to happen. Alternate translation: "if a person who has died would go to them" or "if someone who has died would go and warn them"

##### from the dead

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

#### Luke 16:31

##### neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead

"they will not believe even if someone comes back from the dead"

Chapter 17

1Jesus said to his disciples, "It is certain there will be stumbling blocks, but woe to that person through whom they come!2It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to stumble.3Watch yourselves. If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him.4If he sins against you seven times in the day, and seven times returns to you, saying, 'I repent,' you must forgive him!"

5The apostles said to the Lord, "Increase our faith."

6The Lord said, "If you had faith like a mustard seed, you would say to this mulberry tree, 'Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea,' and it would obey you.7But which of you, who has a servant plowing or keeping sheep, will say to him when he has come in from the field, 'Come immediately and sit down to eat'?8Will he not say to him, 'Prepare something for me to eat, and put a belt around your clothes and serve me until I have finished eating and drinking. Then afterward you will eat and drink'?9He does not thank the servant because he did the things that were commanded, does he?10Even so you also, when you have done everything that you are commanded, should say, 'We are unworthy servants. We have only done what we ought to do.'"

11It came about that as he traveled to Jerusalem, he went along the border between Samaria and Galilee.12As he entered into a certain village, there he was met by ten men who were lepers. They stood far away from him13and they lifted up their voices, saying, "Jesus, Master, have mercy on us."

14When he saw them, he said to them, "Go and show yourselves to the priests." As they went away they were cleansed.15When one of them saw that he was healed, he turned back, with a loud voice glorifying God.16He fell on his face at Jesus' feet, giving him thanks. Now he was a Samaritan.17Then Jesus said, "Were not the ten cleansed? Where are the nine?18Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?"19He said to him, "Arise, and go. Your faith has made you well."

20Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing.21Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For look, the kingdom of God is within you."

22He said to the disciples, "The days are coming when you will desire to see one of the days of the Son of Man, but you will not see it.23Then they will say to you, 'Look, there! Look, here!' But do not go out or run after them,24for as the lightning shines brightly when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day.25But first he must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation.26As it happened in the days of Noah, even so will it also happen in the days of the Son of Man.27They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage until the day that Noah entered into the ark—and the flood came and destroyed them all.28In the same way, even as it happened in the days of Lot—they were eating and drinking, buying and selling, planting and building.29But in the day that Lot went out from Sodom, it rained fire and sulfur from heaven and destroyed them all.30After the same manner it will be in the day that the Son of Man is revealed.31In that day let him who is on the housetop not go down to get his goods out of the house, and in the same way let him who is in the field not return.32Remember Lot's wife.33Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it.34I tell you, in that night there will be two people in one bed. One will be taken, and the other will be left.35There will be two women grinding grain together. One will be taken, and the other will be left."36[1](#footnote-target-1)

37They asked him, "Where, Lord?"

He said to them, "Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together."

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Luke 17:36 the best ancient copies do not have verse 36,There will be two in the field; one will be taken and the other left .

### Luke 17

## 17:1-10

#### What is “woe”?

[17:1]

See: Woe

#### What was a “millstone”?

[17:2]

A millstone was a large, heavy round stone used to grind grain. The grain was ground between two stones. The top stone was the millstone. The millstone was often turned by a large animal.

#### Who were the little ones?

[17:2]

In the Bible, the little ones were often the children (see: Matthew 18:1-22). Here, some scholars think Jesus was speaking about Christians who had recently believed in Jesus. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about those people who were poor and needed people to help them.

#### Who was a “brother”?

[17:3]

When Jesus spoke about a brother, he was speaking about Christians.

See: Family of God

#### What did it mean to “rebuke” a brother?

[17:3]

When someone “rebuked” a brother, he corrected his brother and told him that what he had done was wrong.

#### How did someone repent?

[17:3]

See: Repent (Repentance)

#### What was meant by the words, “if he sins against you seven times in the day”?

[17:4]

Jesus wanted the disciples to forgive another person as often as they sinned and repented. Some scholars think that when Jesus said to forgive seven times, he was speaking about always forgiving someone. Other scholars think Jesus was talking about seven different kinds of sins and a brother was to forgive all types of sins.

See: Repent (Repentance); Sin; Forgive (Forgiveness, Pardon)

#### Why did the apostles say, “Increase our faith”?

[17:5]

The apostles asked Jesus to increase their faith. Scholars think that when the apostles said “increase our faith”, they were asking Jesus to help them. They wanted Jesus to help them have more confidence in God. They wanted Jesus to help them trust and believe in God even more.

See: Apostle; Faith (Believe in)

#### What did it mean to have “faith like a mustard seed”?

[17:6]

Jesus spoke to his disciples about having “faith like a mustard seed”. This was a metaphor. A mustard seed is a very, very small seed. However, this very small seed grows into a large tree (see: Luke 13:18-19). Jesus was telling his disciples that even if a person’s faith is small, it can do great things.

See: Disciple; Metaphor; Faith (Believe in)

#### What was a mulberry tree?

[17:6]

A mulberry tree was a tree where Jesus and the disciples lived. It was a large tree and had many roots.

See: Disciple

#### What did it mean for a servant to “put a belt around his clothes”?

[17:8]

A servant “put a belt around his clothes”. Some scholars think the servant removed his clothes for working in the field and put on the clothes for serving meals. Other scholars think he put something over his clothes before serving other people food.

See: Serve

#### Why did Jesus want the apostles to say they were “unworthy servants”?

[17:10]

Jesus wanted the disciples to say that they were “unworthy servants.” They did not think they were greater than other people. They wanted to serve other people. They did not want other people to honor them.

See: Serve; Disciple; Humble (Humility)

## 17:11-19

#### Where were Jerusalem, Samaria, and Galilee?

[17:11]

See Map: Jerusalem; Samaria; Galilee

#### Why did the lepers say to Jesus, “Jesus, Master, have mercy on us”?

[17:13]

When the lepers asked Jesus to have mercy on them, they were asking Jesus to have compassion on them. Some scholars think they wanted Jesus to heal them. Other scholars do not think they were asking Jesus to heal them.

See: Leprosy (Leper); Mercy; Miracle

#### Why did Jesus tell the lepers to go to the priests?

[17:14]

At this time, only the priests in the temple could say that someone no longer had leprosy. The priest would then declare the person to be clean (see: Leviticus 14:1-32).

See: Leprosy (Leper); Priest (Priesthood); Temple; Clean and Unclean

#### How did Jesus cleanse the lepers?

[17:14, 17:15]

Scholars think Jesus healed the lepers by speaking.

See: Leprosy (Leper); Miracle

#### Who were the Samaritans?

[17:16]

See: Samaria

#### Why did Jesus tell the Samaritan man his faith made him “well”?

[17:19]

Jesus said, “Your faith has made you well.” Scholars think the leper was healed because he believed that Jesus would heal him. He would not have leprosy anymore.

## 17:20-37

#### Why did the Pharisees ask when the kingdom of God will come?

[17:20]

The Pharisees asked when the kingdom of God will come.

1. Some scholars think the Pharisees tried to make Jesus tell them a specific date when the kingdom of God would come. If he did this, and the kingdom of God did not come, then they could tell people that Jesus is not the messiah.
2. Some scholars think the Pharisees wanted to know how to predict when God’s kingdom will come.

See: Kingdom of God; Pharisees; Messiah (Christ)

#### How was the kingdom of God “within” you?

[17:21]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God was “within” or “among”(ἐντός/g1787) you.

The kingdom of God was “among” the people already because Jesus was among them.

The kingdom of God will come suddenly in the future. It will be “among” them. There will be no signs to warn them of its coming.

The kingdom of God was “within” the hearts of people who believed in Jesus. That is, when people obeyed God, then God ruled them in a certain way.

See: Kingdom of God; Sign; Heart (Metaphor)

#### What was “one of the days of the Son of Man”?

[17:22]

Jesus spoke about “one of the days of the Son of Man”.

Some scholars think this was the days when the Messiah will be ruling over all things.

Some scholars think this was the day on which Jesus, the Messiah will return to the earth, at his second coming.

Some scholars think the disciples wanted to see the kingdom of the Messiah.

See: Messiah (Christ); Jesus' Return to Earth; Disciple; Kingdom of God; Day of the Lord

#### Why did Jesus talk about lightning flashing from one part of the sky to another part?

[17:24]

On the day of the Son of Man, there will be lightning in the sky. That is, everyone will see Jesus return in the same way they see the brightness of lightning. Jesus will return suddenly in the same way lightning is sudden.

See: Son of Man; Day of the Lord; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Why did Jesus speak about being “rejected by this generation”?

[17:25]

Jesus spoke about being rejected by this generation. Jesus was telling his disciples he must first be rejected by the people who were living at this time. That is, he would be rejected by the Jewish people.

See: Generation; Disciple

#### What were the days of Noah?

[17:26]

The “days of Noah” were to the days in which Noah lived, before the Flood. Perhaps Jesus was speaking specifically about the days just before the flood (see: Genesis 6:5-13).

#### What were the “days of Lot”?

[17:28]

The “days of Lot” were the days when Lot lived, before God destroyed the city of Sodom (see: Genesis 19:1-25).

See: Map: Sodom

#### What was meant by the words, “Lot went out from Sodom”?

[17:29]

Jesus said, “Lot went out from Sodom.” That is, Lot left the city of Sodom. Just as God waited for Noah to enter the ark before he destroyed the world with a flood, so God waited until Lot left Sodom before he destroyed the city with fire from heaven.

See: Fire; Heaven

See: Map: Sodom

#### What did Jesus mean when he said, “After the same manner it will be in the day that the Son of man is revealed”?

[17:30]

Jesus said, “after the same manner.” He wanted to say that people will be living normal lives, just as they were before people were punished in Noah’s day, and before people were punished in Lot’s day. The day that the Son of Man is “revealed” speaks about when Jesus returns to earth.

**Advice to translators**: Noah’s day is the time when Noah lived. Lot’s day is the time when Lot lived.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Reveal (Revelation); Day of the Lord.; Son of Man; Punish (Punishment)Reveal (Revelation)

#### Why did Jesus say, “Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it”?

[17:33]

See: Luke 9:24

#### Why did Jesus say, “one will be taken, and the other will be left”?

[17:34]

Jesus said that, “one will be taken, and the other will be left.” Some scholars think that the people that will be taken are Christians who are taken to a place of safety with Jesus. The people who are left will be punished. Other scholars think the people who will be taken are the people God punishes, and the ones who are left are people who will not be punished.

See: Punish (Punishment); RaptureKingdom of God

#### Why do scholars think Luke did not write the words in verse 36?

[17:36]

Scholars think Luke did not write the words in verse 36 because most ancient copies of the Greek New Testament do not contain the words in verse 36. However, Jesus did say these words in the Book of Matthew (see: Matthew 24:40).

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “where there is a body, there will (be) vultures”?

[17:37]

Jesus said, “where there is a body, there will (be) vultures.” A vulture is a bird that eats dead animals.They fly over the dead animals before they eat them. Some scholars think Jesus was telling the disciples that punishment comes to wherever evil people are. Other scholars think Jesus was telling his disciples that people would know when Jesus returns to the earth, just as it is obvious there is a dead body because of the vultures flying overhead.

See: Disciple; Punish (Punishment); Jesus' Return to Earth; Metaphor

#### Luke 17:1

##### It is certain there will be stumbling blocks

"There will certainly be things that tempt people to sin" or "Things that tempt people to sin will certainly happen"

##### to that person through whom they come

"to anyone who causes the temptations to come" or "to any person who causes people to be tempted"

#### Luke 17:2

##### if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea

"if they were to hang a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea" or "if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and push him into the sea"

##### a millstone

This is a very large, heavy circular stone that people use for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a heavy stone"

##### these little ones

"these people whose faith is small"

##### to stumble

"to sin"

#### Luke 17:3

##### your brother

The word "brother" is here used in the sense of someone with the same belief. Alternate translation: "a fellow believer"

##### rebuke him

"tell him strongly that what he did was wrong" or "correct him"

#### Luke 17:5

##### Increase our faith

"Please give us more faith"

#### Luke 17:6

##### If you had faith like a mustard seed

A mustard seed is a very small seed. Jesus implies that they do not have even a small amount of faith. Alternate translation: "If you had faith that was as big as even a tiny mustard seed"

##### mulberry tree

If this type of tree is not familiar, it may be helpful to substitute another type of tree. Alternate translation: "fig tree" or "tree"

##### Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea

"Uproot yourself and plant yourself in the sea" or "Take your roots out of the ground, and put your roots down into the ocean"

#### Luke 17:7

##### But which of you, who ... sheep, will say ... sit down to eat'?

Jesus asks his disciples a question to help them think about the role of a servant. This could be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But none of you who ... sheep would say ... sit down to eat.'

##### a servant plowing or keeping sheep

"a servant who plows your field or takes care of your sheep"

#### Luke 17:8

##### Will he not say to him ... eat and drink'?

Jesus uses a second question explain how someone would actually treat a servant. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "He would certainly say to him ... eat and drink.'"

##### put a belt around your clothes and serve me

"tie your clothes at your waist and serve me" or "dress up properly and take care of me." People would tie their clothes closely around their waist so that their clothes would not get in their way while they worked.

##### Then afterward

"Then after you serve me"

#### Luke 17:9

##### he did the things that were commanded

"the servant did the things that the master commanded him to do"

##### does he?

"right?" or "is this not true?"

#### Luke 17:10

##### you also

Jesus was speaking to his disciples, so the word "you" refers to them.

##### that you are commanded

"that God has commanded you"

#### Luke 17:11

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

#### Luke 17:12

##### there he was met by ten men who were lepers

"ten men who were lepers met him" or "ten men who had leprosy met him"

##### They stood far away from him

This was a respectful gesture, because lepers were not allowed to approach other people.

#### Luke 17:13

##### they lifted up their voices

"they called with loud voices" or "they called aloud"

#### Luke 17:14

##### they were cleansed

When people were healed, they were no longer ceremonially unclean. Alternate translation: "they were cleansed of their leprosy" or "they were healed of their leprosy and so became clean"

#### Luke 17:15

##### saw that he was healed

"realized that he was healed" or "realized that Jesus had healed him"

##### he turned back

"he went back to Jesus"

##### with a loud voice glorifying God

"and glorified God loudly"

#### Luke 17:16

##### He fell on his face at Jesus' feet

"he knelt down and put his face close to Jesus' feet." He did this to honor Jesus.

##### Now he was a Samaritan

The word "now" marks Luke's change from telling about what happened to telling about that man.

#### Luke 17:17

##### Were not the ten cleansed?

Jesus used questions here to show the people how disappointed he was that only one of the men came back to glorify God. Alternate translation: "Ten men were healed." or "God healed ten men."

##### Where are the nine?

"Why did not the other nine come back?" This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "The other nine men should have come back, too."

#### Luke 17:18

##### Were there no others who returned to give glory to God, except this foreigner?

This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one returned to give glory to God except this foreigner!"

#### Luke 17:19

##### Your faith has made you well

"Because of your faith you have become well" or "Because you believe, you are well again"

#### Luke 17:20

##### Being asked by the Pharisees

This is the beginning of a new event. Alternate translation: "When the Pharisees asked Jesus" or "One day the Pharisees asked Jesus"

##### The kingdom of God does not come with careful observing

"The kingdom of God does not come in a way that people can see"

#### Luke 17:21

##### the kingdom of God is within you

The idea of the noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verb "rules" or "reigns." Possible meanings are 1) "God rules within you" or 2) "God reigns among you."

#### Luke 17:22

##### The days are coming when

"A time is coming when" or "Soon"

##### you will desire to see

"you will want to see" or "you will wish to experience"

##### one of the days of the Son of Man

"one of the days when the Son of Man will rule as king"

##### the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man"

##### but you will not see it

"you will not experience it"

#### Luke 17:23

##### Look, there! Look, here!

"Look, he is over there! Look, he is over here!"

#### Luke 17:24

##### as the lightning shines brightly ... so will the Son of Man be

When lightning flashes, people can see it clearly. Alternate translation: "as people can see lightning clearly when it flashes ... so they will clearly see the Son of Man"

##### in his day

"when he comes to reign"

#### Luke 17:25

##### and be rejected by this generation

"and the people of this generation must reject him"

#### Luke 17:26

##### As it happened ... even so will it also happen

"As it was ... even so it will be" or "As it was ... it will be like that"

##### in the days of Noah

"when Noah lived"

##### in the days of the Son of Man

"when the Son of Man comes"

#### Luke 17:27

##### They ate, they drank, they married, and they were given in marriage

People were doing ordinary things. They did not care that God was going to judge them.

##### they married, and they were given in marriage

"they married, and they gave their daughters to be married" or "and they got married"

##### the ark

"the ship" or "the barge"

#### Luke 17:28

##### they were eating and drinking

"people were eating and drinking"

#### Luke 17:29

##### it rained fire and sulfur from heaven

"fire and burning sulfur fell from the sky like rain"

#### Luke 17:30

##### After the same manner it will be

"It will be the same" or "It will be like that"

##### in the day that the Son of Man is revealed

"when the Son of Man appears" or "when the Son of man comes"

#### Luke 17:31

##### let him who is on the housetop not go down

"whoever is on the housetop must not go down" or "if anyone is on his housetop, he must not go down."

##### on the housetop

Their housetops were flat, so people could walk or sit on them.

##### his goods

"his possessions" or "his things"

##### let him who is in the field not return

"whoever is in the field must not go back to his house." They must not go back to their house to get anything. They must flee quickly.

#### Luke 17:32

##### Remember Lot's wife

"Remember what happened to Lot's wife." This is a warning. She looked back toward Sodom and God punished her along with the people of Sodom. Alternate translation: "Do not do what Lot's wife did"

#### Luke 17:33

##### Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it

"People who try save their lives will lose them" or "Whoever tries to save his old way of life will lose his life"

##### but whoever loses his life will save it

"but people who lose their lives will save them" or "but whoever abandons his old way of life will save his life"

#### Luke 17:34

##### in that night

The sentence tells what will happen if the Son of Man comes during the night.

##### One will be taken, and the other will be left

"God will take one person and leave the other" or "Angels will take one person and leave the other." The emphasis is not on two particular people but on the fact that some people will be taken away and others will be left.

#### Luke 17:37

##### Where, Lord?

"Lord, where will this happen?"

##### Where there is a body, there will the vultures also be gathered together

Apparently this is a proverb that means "It will be obvious" or "You will know it when it happens." Alternate translation: "It will be as obvious as it is when vultures gather around a dead body" or "As the gathering of vultures shows that there is a dead body, there will be signs about these things"

##### vultures

Vultures are large birds that eat the bodies of dead animals that they find. You could describe these birds this way or use the word for local birds that do this.

Chapter 18

1Then he spoke a parable to them about how they should always pray and not become discouraged,2saying, "In a certain city there was a judge who did not fear God and did not respect people.3Now there was a widow in that city, and she came often to him, saying, 'Help me get justice against my opponent.'

4For a long time he was not willing to help her, but after a while he said to himself, 'Though I do not fear God or respect man,5yet because this widow causes me trouble, I will help her get justice, so that she does not wear me out by her constant coming.'"6Then the Lord said, "Listen to what the unjust judge says.7Now will not God also bring justice to his chosen ones who cry out to him day and night? Will he delay long over them?8I say to you that he will bring justice to them speedily. Even so, when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?"

9Then he also spoke this parable to some who trusted in themselves that they were righteous and who despised other people:10"Two men went up into the temple to pray—the one was a Pharisee and the other was a tax collector.11The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself, 'God, I thank you that I am not like other people—robbers, unrighteous people, adulterers—or even like this tax collector.12I fast two times every week. I give tithes of all that I get.'

13But the tax collector, standing at a distance, would not even lift up his eyes to heaven, but hit his breast, saying, 'God, have mercy on me, a sinner.'14I say to you, this man went back down to his house justified rather than the other, because everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but everyone who humbles himself will be exalted."

15The people were also bringing to him their infants so that he might touch them, but when the disciples saw it, they rebuked them.16But Jesus called them to him, saying, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them. For the kingdom of God belongs to such ones.17Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it."

18A certain ruler asked him, saying, "Good teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

19Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me good? No one is good, except God alone.20You know the commandments—do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not testify falsely, honor your father and mother."

21The ruler said, "All these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

22When Jesus heard that, he said to him, "One thing you still lack. You must sell all that you have and distribute it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven—and come, follow me."

23But when the ruler heard these things, he became extremely sad, for he was very rich.24Then Jesus, seeing him,[1](#footnote-target-1)said, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God!25For it is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

26Those hearing it said, "Then who can be saved?"

27Jesus answered, "The things which are impossible with people are possible with God."

28Peter said, "Well, we have left everything that is our own and have followed you."

29Jesus then said to them, "Truly, I say to you that there is no one who has left house, or wife, or brothers, or parents, or children, for the sake of the kingdom of God,30who will not receive much more in this time, and in the age to come, eternal life."

31After he gathered the twelve to himself, he said to them, "See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and all the things that have been written by the prophets about the Son of Man will be accomplished.32For he will be given over to the Gentiles, and will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon.33After whipping him, they will kill him, and on the third day he will rise again."34They understood none of these things, and this word was hidden from them, and they did not understand the things that were said.

35It came about that, as Jesus approached Jericho, a certain blind man was sitting by the road begging,36and hearing a crowd going by, he asked what was happening.37They told him that Jesus of Nazareth was passing by.38So the blind man cried out, saying, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me."39The ones who were walking ahead rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me."

40Jesus stood still and commanded that the man be brought to him. Then when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him,41"What do you want me to do for you?"

He said, "Lord, I want to receive my sight."

42Jesus said to him, "Receive your sight. Your faith has healed you."43Immediately he received his sight and followed him, glorifying God. All the people, when they saw this, gave praise to God.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some ancient Greek copies have the phrase:seeing that he had become sad .

### Luke 18

## 18:1-8

#### What was a parable?

[18:1]

See: Parable

#### Why did Jesus talk about the judge and the widow?

[18:2, 18:3]

Jesus talked about the judge and the widow so that his disciples will pray again and again for God to bring justice to the earth when Jesus returns. Jesus also wanted the disciples to always know God hears their prayers. Some scholars think God will quickly bring justice for Christians. The unjust judge was slow to bring justice but God will not be slow. Other scholars think God will be slow to bring justice for Christians. God is patient and he does not judge a Christian’s sins right away, or he limits the ability of people to persecute Christians. Other scholars think God is slow to bring justice but when Jesus returns he will bring justice quickly.

See: Justice (Just, Unjust); Disciple; Jesus' Return to Earth; People of God; Persecute (Persecution)

#### How does someone fear God?

[18:4]

See: Fear of God

#### Who were God’s chosen ones?

[18:7]

God’s chosen ones were the disciples or people who followed Jesus.

#### When will the Son of Man come?

[18:8]

See: Son of Man; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Why did Jesus ask, “will he indeed find faith on the earth”?

[18:8]

Jesus asked about finding faith on earth. Some scholars think Jesus was asking if people will believe that he is the Messiah. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about people believing that God will bring justice quickly. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about people believing that he will return to the earth.

See: Messiah (Christ); Jesus' Return to Earth; Faith (Believe in)

## 18:9-14

#### Why did Jesus talk about the Pharisee and the tax collector?

[18:10]

Jesus talked about the Pharisee and the tax collector because he warned people not to think they were doing something that honored God when they hated other people. The Pharisee listed sins he did not do, but other people did these sins. The Pharisee also fasted more times than the Law of Moses said they needed to fast. They also tithed on everything. He stood in the temple so that other people saw him when he prayed. However, he was not at peace with God. God did not think he did the right things.

On the other hand, the tax collector stood away from people and did not think he was able to look at God. He hit his chest because he was ashamed of his sins. Jesus said he was justified. That is, God forgave his sins.

See: Pharisees; Tax (Tax Collector, Toll); Fasting; Law of Moses; Tithe

## 18:15-17

#### Why did people bring infants to Jesus?

[18:15]

People brought infants to Jesus for him to bless them. The ancient Jews brought infants to their leaders on the Day of Atonement for their leaders to bless the infants.

See: Matthew 19:13

See: Bless (Blessing); Atone (Atonement)

#### Why did the disciples rebuke these people?

[18:15]

The disciples rebuke these people. Some scholars think the disciples rebuked these people because they thought Jesus was too tired to bless the infants. Other scholars think the disciples thought Jesus did not have time to bless infants.

See: Disciple; Bless (Blessing)

#### How did someone receive the kingdom of God?

[18:16]

Someone received the kingdom of God by believing in Jesus in the same way a child believes in Jesus. Children accepted Jesus and trusted him when he blessed them. People did not honor children. Children are humble. That is, they do not think they are greater than they are. Children also trust and depended on their parents.

See: Kingdom of God; Bless (Blessing); Humble (Humility)

## 18:18-30

#### Who was the “certain ruler”?

[18:18]

Luke did not write who the “certain ruler” was, but the ruler was young (see: Matthew 19:22). Some scholars think he was a Jewish leader who may have been the leader of a synagogue. Other scholars think he was too young to do that.

See: Synagogue

#### Why did Jesus say no one is good except God?

[18:19]

Jesus said that no one is good except God.

Some scholars think Jesus wanted the young ruler to know that only God is good. That is, he was telling the young ruler that his goodness was the goodness of God working in him.

Some scholars think the rich young ruler thought Jesus was only a man. He did not think Jesus was good in the same way that God is good. This was because the young ruler did not do what Jesus said.

Other scholars think only God is perfectly holy and righteous. If the rich young ruler wanted to please God he needed to obey God’s Son whom God sent.

See: Holy (Holiness, Set Apart); Righteous (Righteousness); Son of God

#### Why did Jesus repeat some of the Ten Commandments?

[18:20]

Jesus repeated some of the ten commandments to the young ruler. Some scholars think the young ruler was asking how he could have eternal life through his own power. That is, through doing good things. However, no one except for Jesus has ever been able to keep all of the commandments perfectly, and therefore have eternal life by keeping them.

See: Ten Commandments; Eternal Life; Command (Commandment)

#### Why did Jesus tell the rich young ruler to sell everything and give the money to the poor?

[18:22]

Jesus told the rich young ruler to sell everything and give the money to the poor because the rich young ruler loved his money and the things he owned. He was not willing to give up everything to follow Jesus. Perhaps Jesus also wanted the young ruler to understand the greater value of being rewarded in heaven.

See: Reward; Heaven

#### Why do some scholars think Luke did not write “seeing that he had become sad” in verse 24?

[18:24]

Some scholars think Luke did not write “seeing that he had become sad” in verse 24 because some of the oldest Greek copies did not contain them.

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### What was the eye of the needle?

[18:25]

The eye of the needle was a small circle on one end of a needle used for sewing cloth. It was very small. The camel was was a very large animal. Scholars think Jesus was saying that in the same way it was impossible for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle, so it was impossible for a rich man to get into the kingdom of God on his own. That is, he could not be at peace with God without Jesus.

See: Kingdom of God

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “things which are impossible with people are possible with God”?

[18:27]

Jesus said, “things which are impossible with people are possible with God.” Scholars think that Jesus was saying that God can do what people cannot do. That is, God makes it possible for a person to be saved, whereas a person cannot possibly save himself.

See: Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

#### How will Jesus reward people?

[18:30]

See: Reward

## 18:31-34

#### Who were the twelve?

[18:31]

When Jesus gathered the twelve, he brought the twelve apostles to him. There was a large crowd of people. Jesus wanted to talk to the twelve alone.

See: Apostle; Disciple

#### Why did Jesus say they are going up to Jerusalem?

[18:31]

Jesus said they are going up to Jerusalem because Jerusalem was on a mountain. They were going to Jerusalem.

See Map: Jerusalem

#### What were the things written by the prophets about the Son of Man?

[18:31]

Things were written in the prophets about the Son of Man. They said that the Son of Man will suffer (see: Isaiah 53).

See: Old Testament (Law and Prophets); Son of Man

#### What was meant by the words, “this word was hidden from them”?

[18:34]

Some scholars think that Jesus did not allow the twelve to understand. Other scholars think that because the disciples expected the Messiah to come in a certain way, they could not understand the words of which Jesus spoke.

#### Where was Jericho?

[18:35]

See Map: Jericho

#### Why did the blind man ask Jesus to have mercy on him?

[18:38]

The blind man asked Jesus for mercy. The man was asking Jesus to show him compassion and help him. He specifically wanted Jesus to be kind to him and heal him (see: Luke 18:41).

See: Mercy; Miracle

#### Why did people rebuke this man for crying out to Jesus?

[18:39]

People rebuked this man for crying out to Jesus. Some scholars think they believed Jesus was too important to stop for a blind man. Other scholars think these people thought Jesus was in a hurry to get to Jerusalem. Other scholars think these people knew the Jewish leaders would be angry with people calling Jesus the “Son of David”.

See: Son of David

#### How did Jesus heal the blind man?

[18:42]

Jesus immediately healed the blind man because the blind man believed in him. When Jesus told him his faith healed him, Jesus healed the blind man. Perhaps Jesus also wanted to say that this man’s faith made him have peace with God.

See: 7:48-50

See: Faith (Believe in)

#### Luke 18:1

##### Then he spoke a parable to them

"Then Jesus told them a parable"

#### Luke 18:2

##### did not respect people

"did not care about other people"

#### Luke 18:3

##### a widow

A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried. She would not have had anyone to protect her from those who wanted to harm her.

##### she came often to him

The word "him" refers to the judge.

##### Help me get justice against my opponent

"Give me a just ruling against my opponent"

##### my opponent

"my enemy" or "the person who is trying to harm me." It is not clear whether the widow is suing the opponent or the opponent is suing the widow.

#### Luke 18:4

##### man

The word here refers to people in general.

#### Luke 18:5

##### causes me trouble

"bothers me"

##### so that she does not wear me out

"so that she will not exhaust me"

#### Luke 18:6

##### Listen to what the unjust judge says

"Think about what the unjust judge said"

#### Luke 18:7

##### Now

This word is used to show Jesus' change from talking about the the judge in the story to talking about God.

##### will not God also bring ... night?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "God will also certainly bring ... night!"

##### his chosen ones

"the people he has chosen"

##### Will he delay long over them?

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "He will certainly not delay long over them!"

#### Luke 18:8

##### Even so, when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth?

Jesus asks this question either to indicate that some people will not have faith in God or to encourage people to have faith in God. Alternate translation: “But when the Son of Man comes, will he see that people on earth believe God?"

#### Luke 18:9

##### who trusted in themselves that they were righteous

"who thought they were righteous"

##### despised other people

"looked down on other people'

#### Luke 18:10

##### into the temple

"into the temple courtyard"

#### Luke 18:11

##### The Pharisee stood and prayed these things about himself

Possible meanings are "The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself in this way" or "The Pharisee stood by himself and prayed."

#### Luke 18:12

##### all that I get

"everything I earn"

#### Luke 18:13

##### standing at a distance

This was a sign of humility. He did not feel worthy to stand closer.

##### would not even lift up his eyes to heaven

"would not even look up toward heaven"

##### hit his breast

This is a physical expression of great sorrow, It shows this man's repentance and humility. Alternate translation: "hit his breast to show his sorrow"

##### God, have mercy on me, a sinner

"God, please be merciful to me. I am a sinner" or "God, please have mercy on me even though I have committed many sins"

#### Luke 18:14

##### this man went back down to his house justified

"the tax collector went back down to his house with God's approval" or "God forgave this man"

##### rather than the other

"rather than the other man" or "and not the other man" or "but God did not forgive the Pharisee"

##### will be humbled ... will be exalted

"God will humble him ... God will exalt him"

#### Luke 18:15

##### The people were also bringing to him their infants

"The people were also bringing their babies to Jesus"

##### they rebuked them

"the disciples scolded the parents"

#### Luke 18:16

##### belongs to such ones

"belongs to people who are like these little children"

#### Luke 18:17

##### whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter it

"whoever wants to enter God's kingdom must receive it as a child receives it"

#### Luke 18:18

##### A certain ruler asked him

"A certain ruler asked Jesus"

##### to inherit eternal life

"to receive life that does not end"

#### Luke 18:19

##### No one is good, except God alone

"The only one who is good is God"

#### Luke 18:21

##### All these things

"All of these commandments"

#### Luke 18:22

##### One thing you still lack

"You still need to do one more thing" or "There is one thing that you have not yet done"

##### distribute it to the poor

"give away the money to the poor people"

#### Luke 18:24

##### How difficult it is ... kingdom of God!

This is an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: "It is so very hard ... kingdom of God!"

#### Luke 18:25

##### a needle's eye

A needle's eye is the hole in a sewing needle through which the thread is passed.

#### Luke 18:26

##### Those hearing it said

"The people who were listening to Jesus said"

##### Then who can be saved?

They were very surprised at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "Does that mean that no one can be saved?" or "Does that mean that God will not save anyone?"

#### Luke 18:27

##### The things which are impossible with people are possible with God

"The things that people cannot do, God can do" or "God is able to do what people are not able to do"

#### Luke 18:29

##### Truly, I say to you

Jesus uses this expression to stress the importance of what he is about to say.

#### Luke 18:30

##### who will not receive

This could be stated in positively. First the words "there is not one who" in the previous verse (verse 29) would be changed to "everyone who" and then these words would be changed to "will receive."

##### in this time

"in this present world"

##### and in the age to come, eternal life

"and in the age to come, he will receive eternal life" or "and in the future world, he will receive eternal life"

#### Luke 18:31

##### the twelve

"his twelve disciples"

##### that have been written by the prophets

"that the prophets have written"

##### will be accomplished

"will happen" or "will occur"

#### Luke 18:32

##### For he will be given over to the Gentiles

"For the leaders in Jerusalem will give him over to the Gentiles"

##### and will be mocked, and shamefully treated, and spit upon

"and they will mock him, treat him shamefully, and spit on him"

#### Luke 18:33

##### on the third day

"on the third day after that"

#### Luke 18:34

##### They understood none of these things

"His disciples did not understand any of these things"

##### this word was hidden from them

"the meaning of this speech was mysterious to them"

##### the things that were said

"the things that Jesus said"

#### Luke 18:35

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

#### Luke 18:36

##### and hearing a crowd going by

"When the blind man heard a crowd going by"

#### Luke 18:37

##### Jesus of Nazareth

People called him "Jesus of Nazareth" because he was from the town of Nazareth.

#### Luke 18:38

##### cried out

"called out" or "shouted"

##### Son of David

Jesus was a descendant of David, Israel's most important king.

##### have mercy on me

"show me pity" or "show me compassion"

#### Luke 18:39

##### cried out all the more

This could mean that he cried out louder or that he cried out more persistently.

#### Luke 18:40

##### commanded that the man be brought to him

"commanded the people to bring the blind man to him"

#### Luke 18:41

##### to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

#### Luke 18:42

##### Receive your sight

Jesus is healing the man by commanding him to be healed. Alternate translation: "You will now receive your sight" or "Begin to see"

##### Your faith has healed you

"You are healed because you have faith" or "I have healed you because you have believed in me"

#### Luke 18:43

##### glorifying God

"giving glory to God" or "praising God"

Chapter 19

1Jesus entered and was passing through Jericho.2Behold, there was a man there named Zacchaeus. He was a chief tax collector and was rich.3He was trying to see who Jesus was, but could not see over the crowd, because he was small in height.4So he ran on ahead of the people and climbed up into a sycamore tree to see him, because Jesus was about to pass that way.5When Jesus came to the place, he looked up and said to him, "Zacchaeus, come down quickly, for today I must stay at your house."6So he hurried and came down and welcomed him joyfully.7When everyone saw this, they all complained, saying, "He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner."8Zacchaeus stood and said to the Lord, "Look, Lord, the half of my possessions I give to the poor, and if I have cheated anyone of anything, I will restore four times the amount."

9Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.10For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the people who are lost."

11As they heard these things, he continued speaking and told a parable, because he was near to Jerusalem, and they thought that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately.12He said therefore, "A certain nobleman went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom and then to return.13He called ten of his servants and gave them ten minas and said to them, 'Conduct business until I come back.'

14"But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We will not have this man reign over us.'15It happened when he returned, having received the kingdom, he commanded the servants to whom he had given the money to be called to him, that he might know what profit they had made by doing business.

16"The first came before him, saying, 'Lord, your mina has made ten minas more.'

17"The nobleman said to him, 'Well done, good servant. Because you were faithful in very little, you will have authority over ten cities.'

18"The second came, saying, 'Your mina, lord, has made five minas.'

19"The nobleman said to him, 'You take charge over five cities.'

20"Another came, saying, 'Lord, here is your mina, which I kept safely in a cloth,21for I was afraid of you, because you are a demanding person. You take up what you did not put in, and you reap what you did not sow.'

22"The nobleman said to him, 'By your own words I will judge you, you wicked servant. You knew that I am a demanding person, taking up what I did not put in, and reaping what I did not sow.23Then why did you not put my money in the bank, so that when I returned I would have collected it with interest?'24The nobleman said to them that stood by, 'Take away from him the mina, and give it to him that has the ten minas.'

25"They said to him, 'Lord, he has ten minas.'

26"'I say to you, that everyone who has will be given more, but from him that has not, even that which he has will be taken away.27But these enemies of mine, those who did not want me to reign over them, bring them here and kill them before me.'"

28When he had said these things, he went on ahead, going up to Jerusalem.

29It came about that when he came near to Bethphage and Bethany, to the mountain that is called Olives, he sent two of the disciples,30saying, "Go into the next village. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.31If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say, 'The Lord has need of it.'"32Those who were sent went and found the colt just as Jesus had told them.

33As they were untying the colt, the owners said to them, "Why are you untying the colt?"

34They said, "The Lord has need of it."35They brought it to Jesus, and they threw their cloaks upon the colt and set Jesus on it.36As he went, they spread their cloaks on the road.

37As he was now approaching the place where the Mount of Olives descends, the whole multitude of the disciples began to rejoice and praise God with a loud voice for all the mighty works which they had seen, saying,38"Blessed is the king who comes in the name of the Lord!Peace in heaven and glory in the highest!"

39Some of the Pharisees in the multitude said to him, "Teacher, rebuke your disciples."

40Jesus answered and said, "I tell you, if these were silent, the stones would cry out."

41When Jesus approached the city, he wept over it,42saying, "If only you had known in this day, even you, the things which bring you peace! But now they are hidden from your eyes.43For the days will come upon you when your enemies will build a barricade around you and surround you and press in on you from every side.44They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you. They will not leave one stone upon another because you did not recognize the time of your visitation."

45Jesus entered the temple and began to cast out those who were selling,46saying to them, "It is written, 'My house will be a house of prayer,' but you have made it a den of robbers."

47So Jesus was teaching daily in the temple. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking to destroy him, as were the leaders of the people,48but they could not find a way to do it because all the people were listening to him intently.

### Luke 19

## 19:1-10

#### Where was Jericho?

[19:1]

See: Map of Jericho

#### What did it mean that Zacchaeus was the “chief tax collector”?

[19:2]

Zacchaeus was the “chief tax collector.” Scholars think he was the leader of several other tax collectors who worked for him.

See: Tax (Tax Collector, Toll)

#### Why did Jesus say to Zacchaeus, “today I must stay at your house”?

[19:5]

Scholars think Jesus told Zacchaeus, “today I must stay at your house” because it was God’s will that Jesus stayed with Zacchaeus. They think God planned for salvation to come Zacchaeus and his house on that day (see: Luke 19:9).

See: Will of God; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

#### Why did the people complain that Jesus went to visit a man who was a sinner?

[19:7]

Scholars think the people complained about Jesus going to the house of Zacchaeus because they thought Zacchaeus was a greater sinner than other sinners. Tax collectors often collected more money than the required taxes for themselves. Zacchaeus was a tax collector. Zaccheus was also a Jew. Therefore, the Jewish people thought he was a traitor.

See: Sin; Tax (Tax Collector, Toll)

#### Who was a “son of Abraham”?

[19:9]

The words “son of Abraham” were used to talk about a descendant of Abraham. Abraham was the ancestor of all Jewish people.

See: Luke 3:7-9; 16:24

See: Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)

#### What did Jesus mean when he said, “Today salvation has come to this house”?

[19:9]

Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about a certain person within the house who was saved on that day. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking about Zacchaeus and his family being saved on that day.

See: Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

## 19:11-27

#### What was a parable?

[19:11]

See: Parable

#### What was a “nobleman”?

[19:12]

A “nobleman” was a man who had been born to a family people honored. Scholars think a nobleman would rule other people. Perhaps this particular nobleman was on his way to Rome to be made a king of Israel.

#### What was a “mina”?

[19:13]

A mina was a unit of money in the Greek money system. It had the value of 100 “drachmas”. One drachma was what someone was paid for one day’s work during this time. Therefore, it would have taken about four months to earn a mina.

See: Denarius

## 19:28-44

#### Why did Luke write he went up to Jerusalem?

[19:28]

Luke wrote he went up to Jerusalem because Jerusalem was on a mountain.

See Map: Jerusalem

#### Where were Bethpage, and the hill that is called Olivet?

[19:29]

See Map: Bethpage; Mount of Olives (Olivet)

#### Why did Jesus send two of his disciples to go into the village and bring back a colt?

[19:30]

When Jesus asked for a colt upon which he would ride into Jerusalem, it fulfilled a prophecy (see: Zechariah 9:9). Scholars think the “colt” was a young donkey because of the words written by other gospel writers (see: Matthew 21:2-5; John 12:14-15). People though the donkey was a symbol of humility and peace (see: 1 Kings 1:33-37).

See: Fulfill (Fulfillment); Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Gospel; Symbol

#### Why did the disciples cry out, “Blessed is the king who comes in the name of the Lord”?

[19:38]

Jesus spoke about those who would cry out “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord” (see: Luke 13:35). Scholars think these people said that Jesus is the messiah.

See: Psalm 118:26-29

See: Disciple; Bless (Blessing); Messiah (Christ)

#### What is peace in heaven?

[19:38]

Some scholars think the peace in heaven spoken about in verse 38 is the peace between God and people. Other scholars think this was the salvation of God’s people. The peace of Jerusalem in verse 42 is the same kind of peace.

See: Heaven; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins); People of God

#### What did Jesus mean by saying, “the stones would cry out”?

[19:40]

Jesus said that the stones would cry out. Some scholars think Jesus was saying that it was no more possible for the disciples to be silent, than it would be possible for stones to cry out. Other scholars think that if the disciples were to keep silent, then the stones would be made to proclaim God’s mighty acts. That is, God would make the stones cry out to tell people about the things he does.

See: Disciple

#### How was there not “one stone upon another”?

[19:44]

There was not one stone upon another when a Roman army attacked Jerusalem and forced down almost all its walls in about forty years after Jesus died. Some scholars think that when Jesus spoke the words, “One stone upon another”, he was using hyperbole to say the Romans attacked every part of the city and almost nothing was left. The Roman army also destroyed the temple.

See: Hyperbole; Temple

## 19:45-48

#### Why did Jesus say the sellers made the temple a den of robbers?

[19:46]

Jesus said the sellers made the temple a den of robbers because they cheated people by selling animals and exchanging money. When they did this they made much money from people coming to the temple to worship God. Some scholars think Jesus was saying the same things the prophet Jeremiah wrote about when he spoke those words (see: Jeremiah 7:11). They did that because they were greedy. Isaiah prophesied God will make the temple a place for prayer and worship for all people in the future (see: Isaiah 56:7). However, at that time the Jews themselves did not use it for prayer.

See: Temple; Prophet; Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Pray (Prayer)

#### What did Luke mean when he said the leaders of the people wanted to kill Jesus?

[19:47] Scholars think the leaders were looking for a way to kill Jesus that would not upset the people. Many people would be angry if the Jewish leaders killed Jesus.

#### Why did the Jewish leaders want to kill Jesus?

[19:47] The Jewish leaders wanted to kill Jesus. Some scholars think they did this because they thought Jesus was trying to rule the temple. Other scholars think they did not like what Jesus taught about the Law of Moses. Other scholars think they were afraid that Jesus was starting a revolution. That is, he was going to fight against the Roman Empire. They did not think he could defeat the Romans.

See: Temple; Law of Moses

#### Luke 19:1

##### Jesus entered and was passing through Jericho.

"Jesus entered Jericho and was passing through the city"

#### Luke 19:3

##### He was trying to see

"Zacchaeus was trying to see"

##### because he was small in height

"because he was short"

#### Luke 19:4

##### a sycamore tree

"a sycamore fig tree" or "a fig tree" or "a fruit tree"

#### Luke 19:5

##### the place

"the tree" or "where Zacchaeus was"

#### Luke 19:6

##### So he hurried

"So Zacchaeus hurried"

#### Luke 19:7

##### He has gone in to visit a man who is a sinner

"Jesus has gone into the house of a sinner to visit him"

#### Luke 19:8

##### the Lord

This refers to Jesus.

##### I will restore four times the amount

"I will return to them four times as much as I took from them"

#### Luke 19:9

##### salvation has come to this house

"God is saving this household" or "God is saving people in this home"

##### he too

"this man too" or "Zacchaeus also"

##### is a son of Abraham

Possible meanings are "is a descendant of Abraham" and "has faith as Abraham did."

#### Luke 19:10

##### the Son of Man came

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

##### the people who are lost

"the people who have wandered away from God" or "those who by sinning have wandered away from God"

#### Luke 19:11

##### that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately

The Jews believed that the Messiah would establish God's kingdom as soon as he came to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "that Jesus would immediately begin to rule over God's kingdom"

#### Luke 19:12

##### A certain nobleman

"A certain man who was a member of the ruling class" or "A certain man from an important family"

##### to receive for himself a kingdom

A great king would make the nobleman a lesser king and give him the authority to rule over a country.

#### Luke 19:13

##### He called

"The nobleman called" or "Before he left, he called"

##### gave them ten minas

"gave each of them one mina"

##### ten minas

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages. Alternate translation: "ten valuable coins" or "a large amount of money"

##### Conduct business

"Trade with this money" or "Use this money in order to earn more money"

#### Luke 19:14

##### his citizens

"the people of his country"

##### a delegation

"a group of people to represent them" or "several messengers"

#### Luke 19:15

##### having received the kingdom

"after he had become king"

##### to be called to him

"to come to him"

##### what profit they had made

"how much money they had earned"

#### Luke 19:16

##### The first came before him

"The first servant came before the nobleman"

##### your mina has made ten minas more

"I used your mina and made a profit of ten more minas"

#### Luke 19:17

##### Well done

"You have done well." Your language may have a phrase that an employer would use to show approval, such as "Good job."

#### Luke 19:19

##### You take charge over five cities

"You will have authority over five cities"

#### Luke 19:20

##### Another came

"Another servant came"

##### which I kept safely in a cloth

"which I wrapped in a cloth and stored away"

#### Luke 19:21

##### a demanding person

"a stern man" or "a man who expects a lot from his servants"

##### You take up what you did not put in

This was probably a proverb that describes someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: "You take out what you did not put in" or "You take out what other people put in"

##### you reap what you did not sow

"you gather the fruit of what other people sowed"

#### Luke 19:22

##### By your own words

"Based on what you have said"

##### You knew that I am a demanding person

The nobleman was repeating what the servant had said about him. Alternate translation: "You say that I am a demanding person"

#### Luke 19:23

##### why did you not put my money ... interest?

The nobleman uses a question to rebuke the wicked servant. Alternate translation: "you should have put my money ... interest."

##### put my money in the bank

"lent my money to a bank." Cultures that do not have banks might translate it as "let someone borrow my money."

##### bank

A bank is a business that safely holds money for people. A bank lends that money to others for a profit. It also pays an extra amount, called interest, to the people who keep their money in the bank.

##### I would have collected it with interest

"I could have collected that amount plus the interest it would have earned" or "I would have gained a profit from it"

#### Luke 19:24

##### them that stood by

"the people who were standing near them"

#### Luke 19:25

##### he has ten minas

"he already has ten minas"

#### Luke 19:26

##### I say to you

It can be stated clearly that the nobleman is speaking. Alternate translation: "And the nobleman replied, 'I say to you" or "But the nobleman said, 'I tell you this"

##### everyone who has will be given more

"everyone who uses well what he has will be given more" or "I will give more to everyone who uses well what he has"

##### from him that has not

"from the person who does not use well what he has"

##### even that which he has will be taken away

"I will take away from him even what he has"

#### Luke 19:27

##### these enemies of mine

Since the enemies were not right there, some languages would say "those enemies of mine."

#### Luke 19:28

##### When he had said these things

"When Jesus had said these things"

#### Luke 19:29

##### It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### Bethphage

Bethphage is a village on the Mount of Olives, which is across the Kidron Valley from Jerusalem.

##### the mountain that is called Olives

"the hill that is called the Mount of Olives" or "the hill that is called 'Olive Tree Mountain'"

#### Luke 19:30

##### a colt

"a young donkey" or "a young riding animal"

##### that has never been ridden

"that no one has ever ridden"

#### Luke 19:31

##### If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' say

"If any one asks you why you are untying it, say"

#### Luke 19:32

##### Those who were sent

"The disciples that Jesus sent"

#### Luke 19:33

##### the owners

"the owners of the colt"

#### Luke 19:35

##### threw their cloaks upon the colt

"put their robes on the young donkey." Cloaks are outer robes.

##### set Jesus on it

"helped Jesus get up on the colt to ride it"

#### Luke 19:36

##### they spread their cloaks

"people spread their cloaks." This is a sign of giving honor to someone.

#### Luke 19:37

##### As he was now approaching the place where the Mount of Olives descends

"As Jesus was going near the place where the road goes down from the Mount of Olives"

##### all the mighty works which they had seen

"all the great things they had seen Jesus do"

#### Luke 19:38

##### in the name of the Lord

Here "name" refers to power and authority, and "Lord" refers to God.

##### Peace in heaven

"May there be peace in heaven"

##### glory in the highest

"may there be glory in the highest" or "Let everyone give glory to God in the highest heaven"

#### Luke 19:39

##### in the multitude

"in the large crowd"

##### rebuke your disciples

"tell your disciples to stop doing these things"

#### Luke 19:40

##### if these were silent

"I will not rebuke them, for if these people were to be quiet"

##### the stones would cry out

"the stones would call out praises"

#### Luke 19:41

##### the city

This refers to Jerusalem.

##### he wept over it

"he cried about the people of Jerusalem"

#### Luke 19:42

##### If only you had known ... bring you peace

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people of Jerusalem had missed the opportunity to be at peace with God.

##### now they are hidden from your eyes

"now you cannot see them"

#### Luke 19:43

##### For the days will come upon you when your enemies will build

This indicates that they will experience difficult times. "For soon these things will happen to you: Your enemies will build" or "For soon you will endure troublesome times. Your enemies will build"

##### a barricade around you

This refers to a wall to keep the people from getting out of the city.

#### Luke 19:44

##### They will strike you down to the ground, and your children with you

Jesus speaks of the people who live in the city as if they are the city's children. Alternate translation: "They will completely destroy you, and they will kill all who live in you" or "They will completely destroy your city, and they will kill all of you"

##### They will not leave one stone upon another

"They will not leave any of the stones in place." The enemies will completely destroy the city, which is built of stones.

##### the time of your visitation

"the time when God visited you" or "the time during which God was with you"

##### visitation

This is a visit by an overseer to make sure that things are going well with those over whom he is in charge. It is not a casual social visit.

#### Luke 19:45

##### Jesus entered the temple

You may need to make explicit that he first entered Jerusalem, where the temple was located. Alternate translation: "Jesus entered Jerusalem and then went into the temple courtyard"

##### entered the temple

Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building. Here the word "temple" refers to the courtyard at the temple. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard"

##### began to cast out

"began to throw out" or "began to force out"

#### Luke 19:46

##### It is written

"The scriptures say" or "A prophet wrote these words in the scriptures"

##### My house

The word "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.

##### a house of prayer

"a place where people pray to me"

##### a den of robbers

"a place where thieves hide"

#### Luke 19:47

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

Chapter 20

1It came about one day as Jesus was teaching the people in the temple and preaching the gospel that the chief priests and the scribes came to him with the elders.2They spoke, saying to him, "Tell us by what authority you do these things, or who it is who gave you this authority."

3He answered and said to them, "I will also ask you a question, and you tell me.4The baptism of John: Was it from heaven or from men?"

5They reasoned with themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Then why did you not believe him?'6But if we say, 'From men,' all the people will stone us, for they are persuaded that John was a prophet."7So they answered that they did not know where it came from.

8Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

9He told the people this parable: "A man planted a vineyard, rented it out to vine growers, and went into another country for a long time.10At the appointed time he sent a servant to the vine growers, that they should give him of the fruit of the vineyard. But the vine growers beat him, and sent him away empty-handed.11He then sent yet another servant and they also beat him, treated him shamefully, and sent him away empty-handed.12He also sent yet a third and they also wounded him, and threw him out.13So the lord of the vineyard said, 'What will I do? I will send my beloved son. Maybe they will respect him.'

14"But when the vine growers saw him, they discussed among themselves, saying, 'This is the heir. Let us kill him, that the inheritance may be ours.'15They threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?16He will come and destroy these vine growers, and will give the vineyard to others."

When they heard it, they said, "May it never be!"

17But Jesus looked at them, and said, "What is the meaning of that which is written:'The stone that the builders rejectedhas become the cornerstone'?18Everyone who falls on that stone will be broken to pieces, and the one on whom it falls will be crushed."

19So the scribes and the chief priests sought to lay hands on him in that very hour, for they knew that he had spoken this parable against them. But they were afraid of the people.20Watching him carefully, they sent out spies who pretended to be righteous, that they might find fault with his speech, so as to deliver him up to the rule and to the authority of the governor.21They asked him, saying, "Teacher, we know that you say and teach rightly, and are not partial to anyone, but you teach the truth about the way of God.22Is it lawful for us to pay taxes to Caesar, or not?"

23But Jesus understood their craftiness, and said to them,24"Show me a denarius. Whose image and name is on it?"

They said, "Caesar's."

25He said to them, "Then give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."26They were not able to find fault with what he had said in front of the people, but marveling at his answer, they were silent.

27When some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection,28they asked him, saying, "Teacher, Moses wrote to us that if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother.29There were seven brothers and the first took a wife, and died childless,30and the second as well.31The third took her, and in the same way the seven also left no children and died.32Afterward the woman also died.33In the resurrection, then, whose wife will she be? For the seven had her as their wife."

34Jesus said to them, "The sons of this age marry and are given in marriage.35But those who are regarded as worthy in that age to receive the resurrection from the dead will neither marry nor be given in marriage.36Neither can they die anymore, for they are equal to the angels and are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection.37But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob.38Now he is not the God of the dead, but of the living, because all live to him."

39Some of the scribes answered, "Teacher, you have answered well."40For they did not dare ask him any more questions.

41Jesus said to them, "How do they say that the Christ is David's son?42For David himself says in the Book of Psalms,The Lord said to my Lord,'Sit at my right hand,43until I make your enemiesyour footstool.'44David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,' so how is he David's son?"

45In the hearing of all the people he said to his disciples,46"Beware of the scribes, who desire to walk in long robes and love special greetings in the marketplaces and chief seats in the synagogues and places of honor at feasts.47They also devour widows' houses, and for a show they make long prayers. Men like this will receive greater condemnation."

### Luke 20

## 20:1-8

#### Why did the Jewish leaders ask Jesus who gave him permission to do the things he did?

[20:2]

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus who gave him permission to do the things he did. Some scholars think the Jewish leaders were asking Jesus whether a person or God gave him permission to do these things. Other scholars think the Jewish leaders were asking Jesus to name the Jewish teacher who taught him. In ancient Israel, a teacher learned from another teacher.

See: Rabbi

#### What were “these things”?

[20:8]

The Jewish teachers asked “these things”.

Some scholars think they asked about the things Jesus taught.

Some scholars think that they asked about when Jesus made people to leave the temple because they were selling things.

Some scholars think they asked about Jesus riding into Jerusalem on a colt.

Some scholars think they asked about Jesus healing people in the temple (see: Matthew 21:14)

See: Temple

#### Why did Jesus not answer the Jewish leaders?

[20:8]

Jesus did not answer the Jewish leaders. Some scholars think that Jesus did not answer the question from the Jewish leaders because they would not answer his question to them. The Jewish leaders knew the answer to Jesus’ question.

## 20:9-19

#### What was a parable?

[20:9]

See: Parable

#### Why did Jesus speak about the vine growers?

[20:10]

Jesus spoke about the vine growers. Scholars think Jesus told this parable to say that the Jewish leaders were just like the vine growers in the parable. When God sent prophets and apostles to the people of Israel, the prophets were killed, and they would soon be killing the apostles (see: Luke 11:47-51; Matthew 23:37-39).

See: Parable; Prophet; Apostle

#### What was the “stone” about which Jesus spoke?

[20:17]

When Jesus spoke about the “stone” rejected by the builders, he was saying what was written in Psalm 118:22-23. This was a metaphor. Jesus was speaking about himself. That is, the Jewish leaders rejected Jesus.

See: Metaphor

#### What was the “cornerstone” about which Jesus spoke?

[20:17]

A “cornerstone” was spoken about in two ways in the days of Jesus. It was used to describe the large stone set in the ground that established the corner from which the foundation of a building was measured. It was also used to describe the stone at the top part of an arch. This stone held the arch together. Jesus used the word “cornerstone” as a metaphor. Jesus was speaking about himself. That is, Jesus himself is the foundation upon which the church, that is the body of Christ, is built. He holds all things together.

See: Metaphor; Church; Body of Christ

#### How will people be broken or crushed by the stone about which Jesus spoke?

[20:18]

When Jesus spoke about people falling on the stone, he was speaking about the people who rejected Jesus. When they rejected him, they are forever broken. This was a metaphor. They cannot be at peace with God. When Jesus spoke about the stone crushing people, he meant that God will judge people who reject Jesus. They will be crushed, that is, they will live forever in hell.

See: Isaiah 8:14-15

See: Hell; Day of Judgment; Punish (Punishment)

## 20:20-26

#### How did the Jewish leaders try to trick Jesus?

[20:20]

When the Jewish leaders asked a question about paying taxes, they tried to trick Jesus. They wanted Jesus to say something that made people angry. If Jesus said that people needed to pay taxes, the Jewish people would be angry and stop following him. If Jesus said that people should not pay taxes, then the Romans would be angry with him.

See: Tax (Tax Collector, Toll)

#### What were the things that belonged to Caesar?

[20:25]

Jesus spoke about things that belonged to Caesar. Some scholars think that because the name and face on the coin showed that it belonged to Caesar, then Caesar had the right to collect taxes from the people. Other scholars think Jesus was speaking very specifically about giving to Caesar what was due to him. That is, taxes and honor.

See: Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar); Tax (Tax Collector, Toll)

#### What are the things that belong to God?

[20:25]

Jesus spoke about things that belong to God. Scholars think that when Jesus spoke about the things that belong to God he was speaking about how people must worship, love, and obey God.

## 20:27-40

#### Who were the Sadducees?

[20:27]

See: Sadducees

#### What is the “resurrection”?

[20:27]

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### What did Jesus mean by saying that people who are resurrected will not “die anymore”?

[20:36]

The people who follow Jesus and are resurrected will never die again. That is, they will live together in God in heaven.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection); Heaven

#### Why did Jesus say, “they are equal to angels”?

[20:36]

Jesus said that those who are resurrected are “equal to angels”. He wanted people to know that they will never die. Angels do not die.

**Advice to Translators**: People who are resurrected do not become angels, rather they are like the angels in that they do not die. The translation must be clear to make that distinction.

See: Angel

#### Why did Jesus use the words “sons of God” to describe those who are resurrected?

[20:36]

People who believe in Jesus are “sons of God.” They are not sons of God in the same way Jesus is the Son of God.

See: Family of God; Son of God

#### Why did Jesus talk about Moses and the bush?

[20:37]

Jesus talked about Moses and the burning bush. Scholars think that because God revealed himself as the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, these men are still alive in heaven. Jesus used the story of Moses and the bush so that people would know that there is a resurrection of the dead.

See: Exodus 3:6

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

## 20:41-44

#### Why did the ancient Jews believe the messiah is the Son of David?

[20:41]

The ancient Jews believed the messiah is the Son of David because it was written about in the Old Testament (see: Jeremiah 30:9; Ezekiel 34:23-24; 37:24-25; Hosea 3:5). Jesus also believed this.

See: Matthew 22:41-42; Mark 12:35

See: Messiah (Christ); Son of David; Old Testament (Law and Prophets)

#### What was meant by the words, “The Lord said to my Lord”?

[20:42]

The Hebrew used two words for “Lord” in Psalm 110:1. The first use of the word is also the name Yahweh, which is the name of the God of Israel. The second use of the word “Lord” is translated as Lord and master.

See: Yahweh (I am); Lord

#### How was Jesus both David’s Lord and his son?

[20:41, 20:42]

Jesus was David’s “Lord” because Jesus is God. However, Jesus was also David’s son because Jesus was a descendant of David.

See: Lord; Jesus is God; Son of David; Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs)

## 20:45-47

#### Who were the scribes?

[20:46]

See: Scribe

#### How did the scribes “devour widows’ houses”?

[20:47]

The scribes devour widows’ houses. Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about widows who were wealthy and the scribes were taking a very large donations from those widows. Other scholars think the scribes took the things the widows owned. Other scholars think the scribes, in helping widows, took more from the widows than what they should have taken for helping them.

See: Scribe

#### Why will the scribes “receive greater condemnation”?

[20:47]

The scribes will receive greater condemnation. Scholars think that God will punish the scribes more severely than other people who will be judged and punished.

See: Scribe; Condemn (Condemnation); Judge (Judgment); Punish (Punishment)

#### Luke 20:1

##### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

##### in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

#### Luke 20:4

##### Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus asks this question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. Alternate translation: "Do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it"

##### from heaven

Jewish people often used the word "heaven" to refer to God.

#### Luke 20:5

##### They reasoned

"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

##### with themselves

"among themselves" or "with each other"

##### If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say

"If we say that John's authority is from heaven, Jesus will say"

#### Luke 20:6

##### if we say, 'From men,'

"if we say that John's authority is from men,"

##### will stone us

"will kill us by throwing stones at us"

#### Luke 20:7

##### they answered that they did not know where it came from.

"they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

##### where it came from

"where John's baptism came from" or "where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

#### Luke 20:8

##### Neither will I tell you

"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

#### Luke 20:9

##### rented it out to vine growers

"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

##### vine growers

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

#### Luke 20:10

##### At the appointed time

"When the time came" or "At harvest time"

##### of the fruit of the vineyard

"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard"

##### sent him away empty-handed

"sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without anything"

#### Luke 20:11

##### beat him

"beat that servant"

##### treated him shamefully

"humiliated him"

#### Luke 20:12

##### yet a third

"even a third servant"

##### wounded him

"injured that servant"

##### threw him out

"threw him out of the vineyard"

#### Luke 20:13

##### What will I do?

The vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do. Alternate translation: “This is what I will do:”

#### Luke 20:14

##### when the vine growers saw him

"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

##### Let us kill him

They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the son.

#### Luke 20:15

##### What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?

Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do. Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

#### Luke 20:16

##### When they heard it

"When the people heard what Jesus said"

##### May it never be

"May it never happen"

#### Luke 20:17

##### But Jesus looked at them

"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

##### What is the meaning of that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone'?

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

##### that which is written

"this scripture." Jesus quoted a scripture that prophesied about the Messiah.

##### The stone that the builders rejected

"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

##### the cornerstone

"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

#### Luke 20:18

##### will be broken to pieces

"will break up into pieces"

##### and the one on whom it falls will be crushed

"and that stone will crush whomever it falls on"

#### Luke 20:19

##### sought to lay hands on him

"looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

##### they were afraid of the people

This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him.

#### Luke 20:20

##### that they might find fault with his speech

"so that the spies might accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

##### so as to deliver him up to the rule and to the authority of the governor

"so that they could hand him over to the governor to judge him"

#### Luke 20:21

##### They asked him

"The spies asked Jesus"

##### Teacher, we know ... way of God

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

##### are not partial to anyone

Possible meanings are "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or "you do not favor one person over another"

#### Luke 20:22

##### Is it lawful ... or not?

They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

##### Is it lawful

They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law. Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

##### to Caesar

Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government. Alternate translation: "to the Roman Emperor"

#### Luke 20:23

##### But Jesus understood their craftiness

"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him"

#### Luke 20:24

##### a denarius

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

##### Whose image and name is on it?

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose picture and name do you see on it?"

#### Luke 20:25

##### and to God the things that are God's

"and give to God the things that belong to God"

#### Luke 20:26

##### They were not able to find fault with what he had said

"The spies could not find anything wrong with what Jesus said"

##### but marveling at his answer, they were silent

"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

#### Luke 20:27

##### When some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection

The Sadducees did not believe that people will rise from the dead. Alternate translation: "When some of the Sadducees, people who say that there is no resurrection, came to him"

#### Luke 20:28

##### if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless

"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children" or "if a man's brother has a wife and no children and that brother dies"

##### the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

##### and raise up children for his brother

"and have children for his brother" or "and produce children for his brother"

#### Luke 20:29

##### There were seven brothers

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that the Saducees made up to test Jesus.

##### the first

"the first brother"

##### died childless

"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

#### Luke 20:30

##### the second as well

The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: "the second brother took her as his wife, and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married that woman, and he also died without having any children"

#### Luke 20:31

##### and in the same way the seven also left no children and died

"and in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

#### Luke 20:33

##### In the resurrection

"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again"

#### Luke 20:34

##### The sons of this age

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time." This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

##### marry and are given in marriage

In that culture, they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. Alternate translation: "marry" or "get married"

#### Luke 20:35

##### those who are regarded as worthy in that age

"the people in that time whom God will consider to be worthy"

##### to receive the resurrection from the dead

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death" or "to become alive again"

#### Luke 20:36

##### Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

##### are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has raised them from the dead"

#### Luke 20:37

##### But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed, in the place concerning the bush

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees did not expect Moses to have written that the dead are raised. Alternate translation: "But even Moses, in the scripture concerning the bush, showed that the dead are raised"

##### that the dead are raised

"that God raises people from the dead" or "that God causes the dead to live again"

##### in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord the God of Abraham

"in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being the God of Abraham"

##### the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

#### Luke 20:38

##### Now

This word marks a switch in Jesus's teaching. He was telling about Moses. Now he explains why what Moses said was important.

##### he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

"the Lord is not the God of dead people; he is the God of living people". Since these living people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually.

##### because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because they live in God's presence"

#### Luke 20:39

##### Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

#### Luke 20:40

##### they did not dare ask him any more questions

"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or "they did not risk asking him any more questions." Perhaps they realized that they did not know as much as Jesus did.

#### Luke 20:41

##### How do they say ... son?

"Why do people say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I will talk about them saying ... son."

##### David's son

"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom.

#### Luke 20:42

##### The Lord said to my Lord

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says "Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying "Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord"

##### my Lord

David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

##### Sit at my right hand

Sitting at the right hand of God is symbolic of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

#### Luke 20:43

##### until I make your enemies your footstool

God speaks of the Messiah's enemies as if they were furniture on which the Messiah would rest his feet. God would conquer the enemies. Alternate translation: "until I make your enemies like a footstool for you"

#### Luke 20:44

##### David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'

David recognized that the Christ was greater than David.

##### so how is he David's son?

"so how can the Christ be David's son?" or "This shows that the Christ is not merely a son of David"

#### Luke 20:46

##### Beware of

"Be on guard against"

##### who desire to walk in long robes

Long robes would show that they were important. Alternate translation: "who like to walk around wearing their important robes"

#### Luke 20:47

##### They also devour widows' houses

"They also eat up widows' houses." Jesus speaks of the scribes as if they were hungry animals. Alternate translation: "They also take widows' houses from them"

##### for a show they make long prayers

"they make long prayers so that people will see them"

##### Men like this will receive greater condemnation

"They will receive a more severe judgment" or "God will certainly punish them more severely"

Chapter 21

1Jesus looked up and saw the rich men who were putting their gifts into the treasury.2He saw a certain poor widow putting in two mites.3So he said, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow put in more than all of them.4All of these gave gifts out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all she had to live on."

5As some spoke of the temple, how it was decorated with beautiful stones and offerings, he said,6"As for these things that you see, the days will come when not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down."7So they asked him, saying, "Teacher, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when these things are about to happen?"8Jesus answered, "Be careful that you are not deceived. For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,' and, 'The time is near.' Do not go after them.9When you hear of wars and riots, do not be terrified, for these things must happen first, but the end will not happen immediately."

10Then he said to them, "Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom.11There will be great earthquakes, and in various places famines and plagues. There will be terrifying events and great signs from heaven.12But before all of these things, they will lay their hands on you and will persecute you, delivering you over to the synagogues and prisons, bringing you before kings and governors because of my name.13It will lead to an opportunity for your testimony.14Therefore resolve in your hearts not to prepare your defense ahead of time,15for I will give you words and wisdom that all your adversaries will not be able to resist or contradict.16But you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends, and they will put some of you to death.17You will be hated by everyone because of my name.18But not a hair from your head will perish.19In your endurance you will gain your lives.

20"When you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then recognize that its desolation is near.21Then let those in Judea flee to the mountains, let those who are in the city leave it, and those who are out in the country must not enter the city.22For these are days of vengeance, so that all the things that are written will be fulfilled.23Woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing in those days! For there will be great distress upon the land, and wrath to this people.24They will fall by the edge of the sword, and they will be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

25"There will be signs in the sun, in the moon, and in the stars, and on the earth. The nations will be in distress, anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves.26There will be men fainting from fear and from expectation of the things which are coming upon the world. For the powers of the heavens will be shaken.27Then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.28But when these things begin to happen, stand up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is coming near."

29Jesus told them a parable, "Look at the fig tree, and all the trees.30When they sprout buds, you see for yourselves and know that summer is already near.31So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that the kingdom of God is near.32Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place.33Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.

34"But pay attention to yourselves, so that your hearts are not burdened with excessive drinking and drunkenness and the worries of life, and that day does not close on you suddenly35like a trap. For it will come upon everyone living on the face of the whole earth.36But be alert at all times, praying that you may be strong enough to escape all these things that will take place, and to stand before the Son of Man."

37So during the days he was teaching in the temple, and at night he went out and stayed on the mountain that is called Olives.38All of the people came early in the morning to hear him in the temple.

### Luke 21

## 21:1-4

#### What were mites?

[21:2]

Mites were a type of coin. They were tiny, copper coins that had very little value (see: Mark 12:42). In ancient times, a person would earn about 100 mites in a day.

See: Denarius

#### Why did Jesus say the widow gave more than other people?

[21:3]

Jesus said the widow gave more than other people. She did not give as much money as other people. However, Jesus said this because she gave everything she had. However, the rich only gave a small part of what they had.

## 21:5-38

#### Why did Jesus say, “not one stone will be left on another”?

[21:6]

Jesus said “not one stone will be left on another.” This was a metaphor. Jesus was speaking about the Romans destroying the temple and many of the walls in Jerusalem. This happened about forty years after Jesus died.

See: Metaphor; Temple

#### What were the things which were about to happen?

[21:7]

Certain things were about to happen. Scholars think the disciples were asking when the temple would be destroyed.

See: Matthew 24:3

See: Disciple; Temple

#### Why did Jesus say, “the end will not happen immediately”?

[21:9]

Jesus said, “the end will not happen immediately”. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about the Romans destroying the temple in Jerusalem, but he was also thinking about when he returns.

See: Temple; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### What are the “terrifying events” and the “great signs from heaven”?

[21:11]

Jesus spoke about “terrifying events” and “great signs from heaven.” Scholars think Jesus was speaking about things that happen in the sky. People have never seen these things before and it caused them to fear greatly. Perhaps they will affect the whole universe. They think Jesus was speaking about comets and meteors, such as have never been seen before.

See: Sign; Heaven

#### Why did Jesus say, “they will lay their hands on you”?

[21:12]

Jesus told the disciples “they will lay their hands on you.” He wanted them to know that some of them will be arrested, imprisoned, and tortured.

See: Disciple; Laying on of Hands ; Persecute (Persecution).

#### How will Jesus give “words and wisdom” to the disciples?

[21:15]

When Jesus told the disciples he would give them “words and wisdom,” he wanted them to know that the Holy Spirit would help the disciples know how to live in a way that honors God.

See: Disciple; Holy Spirit; Reveal (Revelation)

#### What did it mean to be “given over”?

[21:16]

Someone who is “given over” or “delivered up” is betrayed. People help the leaders to arrest them so they can be punished.

See: Punish (Punishment); Persecute (Persecution)

#### Why did Jesus say, “not a hair of your head will perish”?

[21:18]

Jesus said, “not a hair of your head will perish.” Some scholars think Jesus wanted the disciples to know that people could not harm the disciples without God giving them permission to do this. However, more scholars think Jesus was speaking about God protecting the disciples. They will live forever with God in heaven forever. God will not punish them, even if people punish them on earth.

See: Disciple; Punish (Punishment); Heaven; Eternal Life

#### Why did Jesus say, “In your endurance you will gain your lives”?

[21:19]

Jesus said, “In your endurance you will gain your lives” or “souls”. Scholars think Jesus wanted people to keep trusting in God when they were persecuted.

See: Persecute (Persecution); Soul

#### Why did Jesus say woe to those who are pregnant or nursing in those days?

[21:23]

Jesus said, “woe”(οὐαί/g3759) to those who are pregnant or nursing in those days. The things Jesus spoke were going to happen suddenly. This will make it more difficult for a pregnant or nursing mother.

See: Woe; Last Days

#### What was “the times of the Gentiles”?

[21:24]

The words “time of the Gentiles” refer to a certain period of time when the Gentiles will do something.” Some scholars think it is a certain period of time when God will allow the Gentiles to destroy Jerusalem. Other scholars believe it is a certain period of time when Gentiles will be saved (see: Romans 11:25).

See: Gentile; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

#### What were the signs in the sun, moon, and the stars?

[21:25]

Jesus spoke about the signs in the sun, moon, and the stars. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about changes in the sun, moon, and stars (see: Matthew 24:29; Mark 13:24). These things looked different than they have always looked.

See: Isaiah 34:4; Joel 2:30-31

See: Sign; Last Days

#### What was a parable?

[21:29]

See: Parable

#### What was a fig tree?

[21:29]

See: Luke 13:6

#### What was meant by the words, “the kingdom of God is near”?

[21:31]

Jesus said that the kingdom of God is near. Some scholars think Jesus was saying that the “kingdom of God” would begin soon. Other scholars think Jesus was saying the “kingdom of God” had already begun because God began ruling Christians in some way that he did not before.

See: Kingdom of God

#### What was “this generation”?

[21:32]

Jesus spoke about this “generation.”

Some scholars think a future generation will see Jesus return.

Some scholars think the generation was the generation who saw Jesus and the temple in Jerusalem destroyed about forty years after Jesus died.

Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about the Jewish people. There will still be Jews when Jesus returns.

Some scholars think Jesus was speaking about evil people. There will always be evil people until Jesus returns (see: Luke 11:29-32, 50-51).

See: Generation; Jesus' Return to Earth; Temple

#### Why did Jesus command people to be alert and pray at all times?

[21:36]

Jesus wanted people to be alert and pray at all times. Scholars think that Jesus wanted Christians to be ready for him to return at any moment. That is, they must not become tired of waiting and then start to sin again.

See: Pray (Prayer); Sin

#### Who is the “Son of Man”?

[21:36]

See: Son of Man

#### Luke 21:1

##### gifts

"gifts of money"

##### the treasury

The "treasury" means the boxes in the temple courtyard where people put money as a gift to God. Alternate translation: "the temple treasury" or "the collection box at the temple"

#### Luke 21:2

##### two mites

"two small coins" or "two tiny copper coins" or "two pennies." These were the least valuable of the coins people used then.

#### Luke 21:3

##### Truly I say to you

This means that what Jesus was about to say was very important.

##### I say to you

Jesus was talking to his disciples.

##### this poor widow put in more than all of them

God considers her gift, a small amount of money, more significant than the large amounts of money the men gave. Alternate translation: "the small gift of this widow is more valuable than the larger gifts of the rich men"

#### Luke 21:4

##### gave gifts out of their abundance

"have a lot of money but only gave a small portion of it"

##### out of her poverty

"who has very little money"

#### Luke 21:5

##### offerings

"things people had given to God"

#### Luke 21:6

##### these things that you see

This refers to the beautiful temple and its decorations.

##### the days will come when

"there will be a time when" or "someday"

##### not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

"every stone will be removed from its place and torn down" or "not one stone will be left on another. Enemies will tear down every stone." The temple was made of stones, but enemies would come and destroy it.

#### Luke 21:7

##### they asked him

"the disciples asked Jesus" or "Jesus's disciples asked him"

##### these things

This refers to what Jesus has just said about enemies destroying the temple.

#### Luke 21:8

##### that you are not deceived

"that you do not believe lies" or "that no one deceives you"

##### many will come in my name

"many will come claiming to be me" or "many will come claiming to have my authority"

##### I am he

"I am the Christ" or "I am the Messiah"

##### Do not go after them

"Do not believe them" or "Do not become their disciples"

#### Luke 21:9

##### wars and riots

Here "wars" probably refers to fighting between countries, and "riots" probably refers to people fighting against their own leaders or against others in their country. Alternate translation: "wars and rebellions" or "wars and revolutions"

##### do not be terrified

"do not let these things terrify you" or "do not be afraid"

##### the end will not happen immediately

"the end will not happen immediately after those things happen" or "the end will not happen immediately after the wars and riots"

##### the end

Possible meanings are "the end of the age" or "the end of the world"

#### Luke 21:10

##### Nation will rise against nation

"The people of one nation will attack the people of another nation" or "The people of some nations will attack the people of other nations"

##### Nation

This refers to ethnic groups of people rather than to countries.

##### and kingdom against kingdom

"and the people of one kingdom will attack the people of another kingdom"" or "and the people of some kingdoms will attack the people of other kingdoms"

#### Luke 21:11

##### and in various places famines and plagues

"and there will be famines and plagues in many places" or "and there will be times of hunger and diseases in different places"

##### terrifying events

"events that terrify people" or "events that cause people to be very afraid"

#### Luke 21:12

##### they will lay their hands on you

"people will arrest you"

##### delivering you over to the synagogues

"giving you over to the leaders of the synagogues"

##### because of my name

"because of me" or "because you follow me"

#### Luke 21:13

##### for your testimony

"for you to tell them your testimony about me" or "for you to witness about me"

#### Luke 21:14

##### resolve in your hearts

"make up your mind" or "decide firmly"

##### not to prepare your defense ahead of time

"not to figure out ahead of time what you will say in order to defend yourself against their accusations"

#### Luke 21:15

##### I will give you words and wisdom

"I will give you wise words" or "I will tell you what wise things to say"

##### contradict

show to be false

#### Luke 21:16

##### you will be given over also by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends

"even your parents, brothers, relatives, and friends will give you over to the authorities"

##### they will put some of you to death

"they will kill some of you." Possible meanings are "the authorities will kill some of you" or "those who deliver you up will kill some of you." The first meaning is more likely.

#### Luke 21:17

##### You will be hated by everyone

"Everyone will hate you"

##### because of my name

"my name" here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you follow me"

#### Luke 21:18

##### But not a hair from your head will perish

Jesus speaks of one of the smallest parts of a person. He is emphasizing that the whole person will not perish. Jesus had already said that some of them would be put to death, so some understand this to mean that they would not be harmed spiritually. Alternate translation: "But even every hair on your head will be safe" or "But these things cannot really harm you"

#### Luke 21:19

##### In your endurance

"By holding firm." This can be stated in the opposite way. Alternate translation: "If you do not quit"

##### you will gain your lives

"you will save yourselves"

#### Luke 21:20

##### Jerusalem surrounded by armies

"armies surrounding Jerusalem"

##### that its desolation is near

"that Jerusalem will soon be destroyed" or "that they will soon destroy it"

#### Luke 21:21

##### flee

run away from danger

##### in the country

This refers to the rural areas outside Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "outside the city"

#### Luke 21:22

##### these are days of vengeance

"these are days of punishment" or "this will be the time when God will punish this city"

##### all the things that are written will be fulfilled

"all the things that the prophets wrote in the scriptures will happen"

#### Luke 21:23

##### to those who are nursing

"to mothers who are nursing their babies"

##### there will be great distress upon the land

Possible meanings are "the people of the land will be suffer terribly" or "there will be terrible disasters in the land."

##### and wrath to this people

"and there will be wrath to the people at that time" or "and this people will experience God's anger" or "and God will be very angry and will punish this people"

#### Luke 21:24

##### They will fall by the edge of the sword

"They will be killed by the edge of the sword" or "Enemy soldiers will kill them"

##### they will be led captive into all the nations

"their enemies will capture them and take them to many other countries"

##### Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles

Jesus speaks about what will happen to Jerusalem as if the people of other nations will walk on it and crush it down with their feet. Possible meanings are the Gentile nations will conquer Jerusalem and occupy it or the Gentile nations will destroy the city of Jerusalem.

##### until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled

"until the period of the Gentiles ends"

#### Luke 21:25

##### The nations will be in distress

"The people of the nations will be deeply troubled"

##### anxious because of the roar of the sea and waves

"and the loud noise of the sea and its rough movements will frighten them." This seems to refer to unusual storms or disasters involving the seas.

#### Luke 21:26

##### the things which are coming upon the world

"the things that will happen in the world" or "the things that will happen to the world"

##### the powers of the heavens will be shaken

Possible meanings are "God will shake the sun, moon, and stars so they will not move in their normal ways" or "God will trouble the powerful spirits in the heavens." The first is recommended.

#### Luke 21:27

##### the Son of Man coming

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son Man, coming"

##### with power and great glory

Here "power" probably refers to his authority to judge the world. Here "glory" may refer to a bright light. God sometimes shows his greatness with a very bright light. Alternate translation: "powerfully and gloriously" or "and he will be powerful and very glorious"

#### Luke 21:28

##### stand up

Sometimes when people are afraid, they crouch down in order to avoid being seen or hurt. When they are no longer afraid, they get up. Alternate translation: "stand up with confidence"

##### lift up your heads

"look up"

##### because your redemption is coming near

"because your salvation is coming near" or "because God will soon redeem you" or "because God will soon rescue you"

#### Luke 21:30

##### When they sprout buds

"When new leaves start to grow"

##### summer is already near

"summer is about to start" or "the dry, hot season is about to start" or "the first figs will become ripe soon"

#### Luke 21:31

##### So also, when you see these things happening

The words "these things" refer to the events that Jesus spoke about in 21:25-26.

##### the kingdom of God is near

"God will soon establish his kingdom"or "God will soon rule as king"

#### Luke 21:32

##### this generation

Possible meanings are the generation that will see the first of the signs Jesus speaks of or the generation Jesus is speaking to. The first is more likely.

##### will not pass away until

"will still be alive when"

#### Luke 21:33

##### Heaven and earth will pass away

"Heaven and earth will cease to exist." The word "heaven" here refers to the sky and the universe beyond it.

##### my words will never pass away

"my words will never cease to exist" or "my words will never fail." Jesus uses "words" here to refer to everything he says.

##### will never pass away

"will remain forever"

#### Luke 21:34

##### so that your hearts are not burdened

The "heart" here refers to the mind and thoughts of the person. Alternate translation: "so that you are not burdened"

##### are not burdened with excessive drinking and drunkenness

"are not distracted by excessive drinking and drunkenness" or "are not busy with drinking too much wine and becoming drunk"

##### the worries of life

"the things you worry about as you live every day"

##### that day does not close on you suddenly

"that day does not happen when you are not expecting it" or "that day does not surprise you"

##### that day

"the day when the Son of Man comes"

#### Luke 21:35

##### like a trap

"as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal”

##### it will come upon everyone

"it will affect everyone" or "the events of that day will affect everyone"

##### on the face of the whole earth

"on the surface of the whole earth" or "on the entire earth"

#### Luke 21:36

##### be alert

"be watchful" or "be aware of what is happening"

##### strong enough to escape all these things

Possible meanings are "strong enough to endure these things" or "able to avoid these things."

##### these things that will take place

"these things that will happen." Jesus has just told them about terrible things that will happen, such as persecution, war, and captivity.

##### to stand before the Son of Man

"to stand with confidence before the Son of Man." This probably refers to when the Son of Man judges everyone. A person who is not ready will be afraid of the Son of Man and will not stand with confidence.

#### Luke 21:37

##### during the days he was teaching

"during the daytime Jesus would teach" or "he would teach each day"

##### in the temple

"at the temple" or "in the temple courtyard"

##### at night he went out

"at night he would go out of the city"

#### Luke 21:38

##### came early in the morning

"would come early each morning"

##### to hear him in the temple

"to hear him teach in the temple courtyard"

Chapter 22

1Now the Festival of Unleavened Bread was approaching, which is called the Passover.2The chief priests and the scribes were seeking how they could put Jesus to death, for they were afraid of the people.

3Then Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot, who was one of the twelve.4Judas went to the chief priests and captains and discussed with them how he would betray Jesus to them.5They were glad and agreed to give him money.6He consented and looked for an opportunity to give him over to them away from the crowd.

7Then came the day of unleavened bread, on which the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed.8So Jesus sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and prepare for us the Passover meal, so that we may eat it."

9They said to him, "Where do you want us to make preparations?"

10He answered them, "Look, when you have entered the city, a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him into the house that he goes into.11Then say to the master of the house, 'The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'12He will show you a large furnished upper room. Make the preparations there."13So they went, and found everything as he had said to them. Then they prepared the Passover meal.

14When the hour came, he sat down with the apostles.15Then he said to them, "I have greatly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer.16For I say to you, I will not eat it again until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God."17Then Jesus took a cup, and when he had given thanks, he said, "Take this, and share it among yourselves.18For I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine again until the kingdom of God comes."19Then he took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and gave to them, saying, "This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me."20He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.21But pay attention. The hand of the one who betrays me is with me at the table.22For the Son of Man indeed goes as it has been determined. But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed!"23They began to discuss among themselves which one of them it might be who would do this.

24Then there arose also a quarrel among them about which of them was considered to be greatest.25He said to them, "The kings of the Gentiles are lords over them, and the ones who have authority over them are called doers of good deeds.26But it must not be like this with you. Instead, let the greatest among you become like the youngest and the one who leads like the one who serves.27For who is greater, the one who sits at the table, or the one who serves? Is it not the one who sits at the table? Yet I am among you as one who serves.28But you are the ones who have continued with me in my trials.29I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom,30that you may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom, and you will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

31"Simon, Simon, be aware, Satan asked to have you, that he might sift you as wheat.32But I have prayed for you, that your faith may not fail. After you have turned back again, strengthen your brothers."

33Peter said to him, "Lord, I am ready to go with you both to prison and to death."

34Jesus replied, "I tell you, Peter, the rooster will not crow this day before you deny three times that you know me."

35Then Jesus said to them, "When I sent you out without a purse, a bag of provisions, or sandals, did you lack anything?"

They answered, "Nothing."

36Then he said to them, "But now, the one who has a purse, let him take it, and likewise a bag of provisions. The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak and buy one.37For I say to you, what is written about me must be fulfilled, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.' For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled."

38Then they said, "Lord, look! Here are two swords."

He said to them, "It is enough."

39Jesus went, as he often did, to the Mount of Olives, and the disciples followed him.40When they arrived, he said to them, "Pray that you do not enter into temptation."41He went away from them about a stone's throw, and he knelt down and prayed,42saying, "Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done."43Then an angel from heaven appeared to him, strengthening him.44Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground.45When he rose up from his prayer, he came to the disciples and found them sleeping because of their sorrow46and asked them, "Why are you sleeping? Rise and pray, that you may not enter into temptation."

47While he was still speaking, behold, a crowd appeared, with Judas, one of the twelve, leading them. He came near to Jesus to kiss him,48but Jesus said to him, "Judas, are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?"

49When those who were around Jesus saw what was happening, they said, "Lord, should we strike with the sword?"50Then one of them struck the servant of the high priest, and cut off his right ear.

51Jesus said, "That is enough!" He touched his ear, and healed him.52Jesus said to the chief priests, to the captains of the temple, and to elders who came against him, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?53When I was daily with you in the temple, you did not lay your hands on me. But this is your hour, and the authority of darkness."

54Seizing him, they led him away and brought him into the high priest's house. But Peter followed from a distance.55After they had kindled a fire in the middle of the courtyard and had sat down together, Peter sat in the midst of them.56A certain female servant saw him as he sat in the light of the fire and looked straight at him and said, "This man also was with him."

57But Peter denied it, saying, "Woman, I do not know him."

58After a little while someone else saw him, and said, "You are also one of them."

But Peter said, "Man, I am not."

59After about an hour another man insisted and said, "Truly this man also was with him, for he is a Galilean."

60But Peter said, "Man, I do not know what you are saying." Immediately, while he was speaking, a rooster crowed.61Turning, the Lord looked at Peter, and Peter remembered the word of the Lord, when he said to him, "Before a rooster crows today you will deny me three times."62Peter went outside and wept bitterly.

63Then the men holding Jesus in custody mocked and beat him.64They put a cover over him and asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"65They spoke many other things against Jesus, blaspheming him.

66As soon as it was day, the elders of the people gathered together, both chief priests and scribes. They led him into the Council67and said, "If you are the Christ, tell us."

But he said to them, "If I tell you, you will not believe,68and if I ask you, you will not answer.69But from now on, the Son of Man will be seated at the right hand of the power of God."

70They all said, "Then you are the Son of God?"

Jesus said to them, "You say that I am."

71They said, "Why do we still need a witness? For we ourselves have heard from his own mouth."

### Luke 22

## 22:1-6

#### What was the “festival of Unleavened Bread”?

[22:1]

See: Festival of Unleavened Bread; Passover

#### Why did the chief priests and the scribes discuss “how” to put Jesus to death?

[22:2]

The chief priests and scribes wanted to kill Jesus. Scholars think the chief priests and the scribes were talking about how to kill Jesus. They wanted to kill him in a way that was not against the law. They wanted to find something Jesus did that would make the Roman government kill him.

See: High Priest; Scribe

#### Why were the Jewish leaders afraid of the people?

[22:2]

The Jewish leaders were afraid of the people. Some scholars think the Jewish leaders were afraid of the people because the people might be angry if they arrested Jesus for the wrong reasons. Perhaps the people would riot and cause great trouble. A riot would make the Romans angry (see: Acts 19:40).

**Advice to translators**: A riot is when a large group of people get angry and they destroy things.

#### How did Satan enter into Judas Iscariot?

[22:3]

Satan entered into Judas. That is, Satan began to control Judas’ thoughts and Judas began to obey Satan. Satan wanted Judas to betray Jesus (see: John 6:70-71; 13:2,27).

See: Satan (The Devil)

## 22:7-13

#### Why did the Jews have the Passover lamb?

[22:7]

The Jews had the Passover lamb because it reminded them of when they left Egypt. At this time, they killed a lamb and painted its blood onto the two side doorposts and the tops of the door frames of the houses (see: Exodus 12:5-7). God saw the blood on the door and he passed over the house with the blood on the door and did not kill the firstborn in the house (see: Exodus 12:12-13).

See: Passover; Lamb of God; Blood; Firstborn (Birthright)

#### Why did Jesus tell the disciples to look for a man bearing a pitcher of water?

[22:10]

In ancient Israel, only the women carried pitchers of water. Scholars think that when Jesus wanted his disciples to look for a man carrying a pitcher of water because there would only be one man carrying a pitcher of water. Then they would know who they must follow.

## 22:14-23

#### How will the Passover be fulfilled in the kingdom of God?

[22:16]

The Passover will be fulfilled in the kingdom of God. At that time, people will not sin and things will not die. Scholars think there will be a great feast and Christians will celebrate and be with Jesus forever. This is sometimes called the wedding feast of the Lamb.

See: Passover; Kingdom of God; Fulfill (Fulfillment); Sin; Lamb of God

#### What did Jesus mean when he said, “This is my body, which is given for you”?

[22:19]

Jesus said, “This is my body, which is given for you.” He was speaking about dying so that people could be at peace with God.

See: Lord's Supper

#### Why did Jesus say, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood”?

[22:20]

See: Lord's Supper; New Covenant; Blood

#### How was the betrayal of Jesus “determined”?

[22{22]

God “determined”(ὁρίζω/g3724) that Judas would betray Jesus (see: Acts 2:23). That is, God knew that this would happen. However, Jesus said the person who betrayed him will answer to God. That is, even though God knew Jesus would be betrayed, God would punish Judas.

See: Foreknow (Foreknowledge); Predestine (Predestination); Punish (Punishment); Elect (Election); Will of God

## 22:24-30

#### Why did Jesus say, “let the one who is the greatest among you become like the youngest”?

[22:26]

In ancient times, the younger people typically served those who were older. They thought the older people were greater in some way and people should honor them. Jesus did not want his disciples to live as if they were greater than other people, rather he wanted them to serve other people.

#### When will Jesus give the disciples a kingdom?

[22:29]

Jesus will give his disciples a kingdom. That is, they will rule something. Some scholars say Jesus will give the disciples a kingdom after he returns to the earth. Fewer scholars think say Jesus gave them a kingdom when he said this. Jesus was a servant during his time on earth, so the disciples must also lead other people by serving them.

See: Disciple; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### How will the disciples judge the twelve tribes of Israel?

[22:30]

The disciples will judge the twelve tribes of Israel. Some scholars say the disciples will judge the twelve tribes of Israel for accepting or rejecting the gospel. Other scholars say the disciples will rule the twelve tribes of Israel some day. Perhaps this will happen after Jesus returns to the earth.

See: Tribes of Israel; Gospel; Jesus' Return to Earth

## 22:31-34

#### Why did Jesus say “Simon, Simon”?

[22:31]

Jesus said “Simon, Simon” because he wanted Simon to listen closely to what Jesus was going to tell him. Perhaps Jesus addressed Peter as “Simon” to remind him that he needed help because he was about to be tested.

See: Test

#### Why did Jesus say, “that he might sift you as wheat”?

[22:31]

Jesus told Simon that Satan wanted to “sift” him as wheat is sifted. This was a metaphor. Sifting was the violent, shaking action taken to separate grain. It was separated into something people wanted and something people did not want. Jesus was telling Simon that Satan wanted him not to trust in Jesus.

See: Satan (The Devil); Metaphor; Faith (Believe in)

#### Why did Jesus say “the rooster will not crow this day” before Simon denied him three times?

[22:34]

In ancient Israel, the Jewish day started at sundown, that is, in the evening. The rooster generally crows just before sunrise. Jesus wanted Simon to know that he would deny him three times sometime during the night before the sunrise.

## 22:35-38

#### Why did Jesus tell the disciples to buy swords?

[22:36]

Jesus told his disciples to buy swords.

Some scholars think Jesus was warning his disciples that they may need to defend themselves. Traveling on the roads was often dangerous.

Some scholars think Jesus used a metaphor when he spoke about swords. That is, he was warning the disciples that they were going to be persecuted or people were going to try to hurt them.

See: Disciple; Metaphor; Persecute (Persecution)

## 22:39-46

#### Where was the Mount of Olives?

[22:39]

See Map: Mount of Olives

#### What did it mean to “enter into temptation”?

[22:40]

When someone entered into temptation, they sinned when they were tempted. Jesus had already told the disciples that Satan will tempt them.

See: Tempt (Temptation); Satan (The Devil)

#### Why did Jesus say to God the Father, “If you are willing, remove this cup from me”?

[22:42]

Jesus asked God the Father to remove the cup from him if God the Father was willing to do this. The cup was a symbol. Jesus was speaking about the suffering he was about to endure. That is, Jesus was about to be tortured and then killed. Jesus was praying that God would rescue him from the suffering. However, he would do this if it was what God the Father wanted him to do.

See: God the Father; Will of God; Symbol

#### How did the angel from heaven strengthen Jesus?

[22:43]

The angel from heaven strengthened Jesus. Scholars think the angel helped Jesus to endure the pain he was having.

See: Angel; Heaven

#### Why did Luke say that Jesus’ “sweat became like great drops of blood”?

[22:44]

Luke said that Jesus’ “sweat became like great drops of blood”. Some scholars think Luke was saying that Jesus was sweating so much that sweat fell to the ground just as blood does when someone is bleeding. Other scholars think Luke was saying that Jesus’ sweat blood.

#### Why did Jesus say the disciples were “sleeping because of their sorrow”?

[22:45]

Jesus said the disciples were sleeping because they were sad. Some scholars think the disciples were exhausted because of the great “sorrow”(λύπη/g3077) they experienced being with Jesus that day. Other scholars say it was because they saw their Jesus in much pain.

## 22:47-53

#### Why did Jesus ask Judas if he was “betraying the Son of Man with a kiss”?

[22:48]

In ancient Israel, friends often greeted one another with a kiss of some kind. Some scholars think Jesus was sad that Judas was betraying him when he kissed Jesus. That is, Judas told people who Jesus was when he kissed Jesus. Judas was, in fact, handing Jesus over to his enemies, that is, to those who would crucify him.

See: Son of Man

#### What was the “authority of darkness”?

[22:53]

In the Bible, the “authority of darkness” was a symbol of Satan and every evil thing that served him. Jesus wanted people to know that the people who came out at night to arrest him were following Satan.

See: Light and Darkness (Metaphor); Satan (The Devil)

## 22:54-62

#### Why did the crowd take Jesus to the high priest?

[22:54]

The crowd took Jesus to the high priest. They wanted Jesus to answer the Jewish leaders who accused him of doing and saying evil things. The high priest could decide if Jesus was guilty of anything against the Law of Moses.

See: High Priest; Law of Moses

#### Why did Jesus appear before Pilate and Herod?

Jesus appeared before Pilate because Rome controlled Israel (see: Matthew 27: 11-26; John 18:28-40). The Jewish leaders were not able to kill Jesus without getting permission from the Roman government. However, Pilate did not find Jesus guilty of any crime worthy of death. Pilate sent Jesus to Herod because Jesus was from Galilee. Herod ruled over Galilee. The Romans gave him permission to do this.

See: King Herod; Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar)

See Map: Galilee

## 22:63-65

#### Why did the guards mock and beat Jesus?

[22:63]

The guards mocked and beat Jesus. They insulted him while they were striking him with their fists. The Romans often hit people they arrested. Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would sufferer in many ways (see: Isaiah 53).

See: Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Messiah (Christ)

## 22:66-71

#### Who were the elders?

[22:66]

See: Elder

#### Why did the Jewish leaders ask Jesus if he was the “Christ”?

[22:67]

The Jewish leaders asked Jesus if he was the “Christ” because they did not believe he was the Messiah. They believed that if Jesus said that he was the Messiah, they could charge him with blasphemy. Then they would kill Jesus.

See: Messiah (Christ); Blaspheme (Blasphemy)

#### What was the “right hand of the power of God”?

[22:69]

In ancient times, when someone was seated at the “right hand” of the king, he was in the highest place of honor. Jesus wanted the Jewish leaders to know that he would soon be given the highest honor possible.

#### Why did Jesus answer the religious leaders’ question by saying, “You say that I am”?

[22:70]

Jesus said, “You say that I am”. Scholars think Jesus was saying, “I am the Son of God just as your question is asking”.

See: Son of God; Yahweh (I am)

#### Luke 22:1

##### Now

This word is used here to introduce a new event.

##### the Festival of Unleavened Bread

"the festival when they ate unleavened bread" or "the festival when they ate bread that did not have yeast"

##### was approaching

"was about to begin"

#### Luke 22:2

##### were seeking how

"were looking for an opportunity" or "were thinking of ways in which"

##### they could put Jesus to death

The priests and scribes did not have the authority to kill Jesus, but they hoped to get others to kill him. Alternate translation: "they could get the government to kill Jesus"

#### Luke 22:3

##### Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot

What happened might have been similar to demon possession, but Judas was apparently able to control his own actions. Alternate translation: "Satan took control of Judas, the one called Iscariot"

#### Luke 22:4

##### captains

"officers of the temple guards"

##### how he would betray Jesus to them

"how he would help them arrest Jesus"

#### Luke 22:6

##### He consented

"Judas agreed"

#### Luke 22:7

##### the day of unleavened bread

"the day of bread without yeast." This was the day the Jews would take all bread made with yeast out of their homes. Then they would celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

##### the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed

Each family or group of people would kill a lamb and eat it together. Alternate translation: "people had to kill a lamb for their Passover meal"

#### Luke 22:8

##### prepare

This is a general word meaning "make ready." Jesus was not necessarily telling Peter and John to do all the cooking.

##### so that we may eat it

Jesus was including Peter and John when he said "we." Peter and John would be part of the group of the disciples that would eat the meal.

#### Luke 22:9

##### to make preparations

"to make preparations for the meal" or "to prepare the meal"

#### Luke 22:10

##### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention"

##### a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you

"you will see a man carrying a pitcher of water." He would probably be carrying the jar on his shoulder.

##### Follow him into the house

"Follow him, and go into the house"

#### Luke 22:11

##### The Teacher says to you, "Where is the guest room, where I ... with my disciples?"

The quote beginning with "Where is the guest room" is a direct quote of what Jesus, the teacher, wants to say to the master of his house. Alternate translation: "The Teacher asks where the guest room is in which he ... with his disciples" or "The Teacher says to show us the guest room where he ... with us and the rest of his disciples."

##### The Teacher

This refers to Jesus.

##### eat the Passover

"eat the Passover meal"

#### Luke 22:12

##### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues giving instructions to Peter and John.

##### He will show you

"The owner of the house will show you"

##### upper room

"room upstairs"

#### Luke 22:13

##### So they went

"So Peter and John went"

#### Luke 22:14

##### When the hour came

"When it was time to eat the meal"

##### he sat down

"Jesus sat down"

#### Luke 22:16

##### until it is fulfilled

Possible meanings are "until God completes the purpose of the Passover Festival" or "until what the Passover represents happens"

#### Luke 22:17

##### when he had given thanks

"when he had given thanks to God"

##### share it among yourselves

"share the wine in this cup among yourselves" or "each of you drink some of the wine from this cup"

#### Luke 22:18

##### I will not drink of the fruit of the vine

"I will not drink wine." Grapes grow on grapevines. People make wine from fermented grape juice.

##### until the kingdom of God comes

"until God establishes his kingdom" or "until God rules in his kingdom"

#### Luke 22:19

##### he broke it

"he ripped it" or "he tore it." The bread did not have yeast in it, so it was flat.

##### This is my body

Possible meanings are "This bread is my body" and "This bread represents my body."

##### my body, which is given for you

"my body, which I give for you"

#### Luke 22:20

##### This cup

"The wine in this cup" or "This cup of wine"

##### the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you

Here "blood, which is poured out" represents death. Jesus's death establishes the new covenant that God makes with his people. Alternate translation: "the new covenant that God will put into effect because I shed my blood for you"

#### Luke 22:21

##### The hand of the one who betrays me

"The person who betrays me" or "The man who is ready to betray me"

#### Luke 22:22

##### For the Son of Man indeed goes

"For, indeed, the Son of Man will die"

##### the Son of Man indeed goes

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, indeed go"

##### as it has been determined

"as God has determined" or "as God has planned"

##### But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed

"But woe to the man who betrays the Son of Man" or "But how terrible it will be for that man who betrays the Son of Man"

#### Luke 22:24

##### Then there arose also a quarrel among them

"Then the apostles began to argue among themselves"

##### was considered to be greatest

"was the most important" or "the people thought was most important"

#### Luke 22:25

##### are lords over them

"rule forcefully over the Gentiles"

##### are called

The ordinary people probably did not think that those rulers did good to them. Alternate translation: "like to be called" or "call themselves"

#### Luke 22:26

##### it must not be like this with you

"you must not act like that"

##### and the one who leads like the one who serves

"and let the one who leads become like the one who serves"

##### the one who serves

"a servant"

#### Luke 22:27

##### For who is greater ... serves?

"For who is more important ... serves?" Jesus uses this question to encourage his disciples to think. Alternate translation: "I want you to think about who is greater ... serves."

##### the one who sits at the table

"the one who is dining" or "the one who eats at the table"

##### Is it not the one who sits at the table?

"Of course the one who sits at the table is more important than the servant!"

##### Yet I am among you as one who serves

"But I am with you like a servant"

#### Luke 22:28

##### who have continued with me in my trials

"who have stayed with me as I have struggled"

#### Luke 22:29

##### I set you over a kingdom, even as my Father has set me over a kingdom

"Just as my Father has given a kingdom to me, I give a kingdom to you" or "Just as my Father has given me authority to rule as king, I give you authority to rule as kings"

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

#### Luke 22:30

##### you will sit on thrones

Kings sit on thrones. Sitting on a throne is a symbol of ruling. Alternate translation: "you will work as kings" or "you will rule as kings"

#### Luke 22:31

##### Simon, Simon

Jesus said his name twice to show that what he was about to say to him was very important.

##### to have you, that he might sift you

The word "you" refers to all of the apostles.

##### that he might sift you as wheat

This means that Satan wanted to test the disciples to find something wrong. Alternate translation: "that he might test you like someone who passes grain through a sieve"

#### Luke 22:32

##### But I have prayed for you that your faith

The word "you" and "your" in this veres refer specifically to Simon.

##### that your faith may not fail

"that you will continue to have faith" or "that you will continue to trust me"

##### After you have turned back again

"After you start believing in me again" or "After you start serving me again"

##### strengthen your brothers

"encourage your brothers to be strong in their faith" or "help your brothers believe in me"

##### your brothers

"your fellow believers" or "the other disciples"

#### Luke 22:34

##### the rooster will not crow this day, before you deny three times that you know me

"you will deny three times that you know me before the rooster crows this day"

##### rooster

a bird that calls out loudly before the sun comes up

##### this day

The Jewish day begins at sunset. Jesus was speaking after the sun had set. The rooster would crow just before morning. The morning was part of "this day." Alternate translation: "tonight" or "in the morning"

#### Luke 22:35

##### Jesus said to them, "When I sent you ... did you lack anything?" They answered, "Nothing."

The word "you" refers to the apostles. Jesus uses a question so that they would remember how God provided what they needed in the past.

##### a purse

A purse is a bag for holding money. Here the word is used to refer to money.

##### a bag of provisions

"a travelers' bag" or "a bag of food"

##### Nothing

"We did not lack anything" or "We had everything we needed"

#### Luke 22:36

##### and likewise a bag of provisions

"and let him also take a bag of provisions" or "and also a bag of provisions"

##### The one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak

"If anyone does not have a sword, he should sell his cloak"

##### cloak

"coat" or "outer garment"

#### Luke 22:37

##### what is written about me

"what a prophet wrote about me in the scriptures"

##### must be fulfilled

"must happen" or "God will cause to happen"

##### He was counted with the lawless ones

Here Jesus is quoting the scriptures. "People counted him as a member of the group of lawless men"

##### the lawless ones

"those who break the law" or "the criminals"

##### For what is predicted about me is being fulfilled

"For what the prophet predicted about me is about to happen"

#### Luke 22:38

##### It is enough

Possible meanings are "We have enough swords" or "Do not talk anymore about swords"

#### Luke 22:39

##### General Information:

Jesus goes to the Mount of Olives to pray.

#### Luke 22:40

##### that you do not enter into temptation

"that you are not tempted" or "that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin"

#### Luke 22:41

##### about a stone's throw

"about the distance that someone can throw a stone" or "a short distance"

#### Luke 22:42

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### remove this cup from me

Jesus refers to what he will soon experience as if it were a cup of bitter liquid that he would have to drink. Alternate translation: "allow me to not drink from this cup" or "allow me to not experience what is about to happen"

##### Nevertheless not my will, but yours be done

"But do what is according to your will rather than what is according to my will"

#### Luke 22:44

##### Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly

"He was suffering greatly, and so he prayed more intensely"

##### his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground

"his sweat was falling to the ground like large drops of blood"

#### Luke 22:45

##### When he rose up from his prayer, he

"When Jesus got up after praying, he" or "After praying, Jesus got up and he"

##### found them sleeping because of their sorrow

"saw that they were sleeping because they were tired from their sadness"

#### Luke 22:47

##### behold, a crowd appeared

The word "behold" alerts us to an important event.

##### leading them

"leading them to Jesus"

##### to kiss him

"to greet him with a kiss" or "to greet him by kissing him." When men greeted other men who were family or friends, they would kiss them on one cheek or both cheeks. If your readers would find it embarrassing to say that a man would kiss another man, you could translate it in a more general way: "to give him a friendly greeting."

#### Luke 22:48

##### are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke Judas for betraying him with a kiss. Normally a kiss is a sign of love. Alternate translation: "it is a kiss you are using to betray the Son of Man!"

##### the Son of Man with a kiss

Jesus uses this term to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "me, the Son of Man, with a kiss"

#### Luke 22:49

##### those who were around Jesus

This refers to Jesus's disciples.

##### what was happening

This refers to the priests and soldiers coming to arrest Jesus.

##### should we strike with the sword

"should we fight against them with swords"

#### Luke 22:50

##### one of them struck the servant of the high priest

"one of the disciples struck the servant of the high priest with a sword"

#### Luke 22:51

##### That is enough

"Do not do any more of that"

##### touched his ear

"touched the servant where his ear had been cut off"

#### Luke 22:52

##### Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?

"Do you come out with swords and clubs because you think I am a robber?" or "You know that I am not a robber, yet you come out to me bringing swords and clubs."

#### Luke 22:53

##### in the temple

"in the temple courts" or "at the temple"

##### you did not lay your hands on me

"you did not arrest me"

##### this is your hour

"this is your time to do what you want"

##### and the authority of darkness

"Darkness" represents evil. Alternate translation: "and darkness has authority" or "and darkness reigns"

#### Luke 22:54

##### led him away

"led Jesus away from the garden"

#### Luke 22:55

##### they had kindled a fire

"some people had made a fire." The fire was to keep the people warm during the cool night. Alternate translation: "some people started a fire to keep warm"

##### the middle of the courtyard

This was the courtyard at the high priest's house. It had walls around it, but no roof.

##### in the midst of them

"together with them"

#### Luke 22:56

##### This man also was with him

The woman was telling the people about Peter being with Jesus. She probably did not know Peter's name.

#### Luke 22:57

##### But Peter denied it

"But Peter said that it was not true"

##### Woman, I do not know him

Peter did not know the woman's name. He was not insulting her by calling her "woman." If people would think he was insulting her, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a woman he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

#### Luke 22:58

##### You are also one of them

"You are also one of those who were with Jesus"

##### Man, I am not

Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

#### Luke 22:59

##### insisted and said

"said insistently" or "said loudly"

##### Truly this man

Here "this man" refers to Peter. The speaker probably did not know Peter's name.

##### he is a Galilean

The man could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he spoke.

#### Luke 22:60

##### I do not know what you are saying

"I do not know what you are talking about." This expression means that Peter completely disagrees with the man. Alternate translation: "what you said is not true at all"

#### Luke 22:61

##### Turning, the Lord looked at Peter

"The Lord turned and looked at Peter"

##### the word of the Lord

"what the Lord had said"

##### deny me three times

"deny three times that you know me"

#### Luke 22:62

##### Peter went outside

"Peter went out of the courtyard"

#### Luke 22:64

##### They put a cover over him

"They covered his eyes so that he could not see"

##### Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?

The guards believed that a prophet would know who hit him even if he could not see. But they did not believe that Jesus was a real prophet. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are a prophet. Tell us who hit you!" or "Hey prophet, who hit you?"

#### Luke 22:66

##### As soon as it was day

"At dawn"

##### They led him into the Council

"The elders had Jesus brought before the Council" or "They led Jesus into the Council meeting"

#### Luke 22:68

##### if I ask you, you will not answer

This was a way for Jesus to rebuke them without giving them a reason to convict him. These words, along with "If I tell you, you will not believe" (verse 67), show that Jesus did not believe that the council really wanted to know the truth.

#### Luke 22:69

##### will be seated at the right hand of the power of God

Sitting at the right hand of God is symbolic of having great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "will be seated in the place of honor beside the power of God"

##### the power of God

"the all-powerful God." Here "power" refers to God's supreme authority.

#### Luke 22:70

##### Then you are the Son of God?

"So when you said that, did you mean that you are the Son of God?"

##### Son of God

It is best to translate “Son” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human son.

##### You say that I am

"Yes, it is just like you say"

#### Luke 22:71

##### Why do we still need a witness?

"We have no further need for witnesses!"

##### have heard from his own mouth

"have heard him say it"

Chapter 23

1The whole company of them rose up and brought Jesus before Pilate.2They began to accuse him, saying, "We found this man misleading our nation, forbidding to give tribute to Caesar, and saying that he himself is Christ, a king."

3Pilate asked him, saying, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

Jesus answered him and said, "You say so."

4Pilate said to the chief priests and the multitudes, "I find no guilt in this man."

5But they were insisting, saying, "He stirs up the people, teaching throughout all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place."6So when Pilate heard this, he asked whether the man was a Galilean.7When he learned that he was under Herod's authority, he sent Jesus to Herod, who himself also was at Jerusalem in those days.

8When Herod saw Jesus, he was very glad, because he had wanted to see him for a long time. He had heard about him and he hoped to see some sign done by him.9Herod questioned Jesus in many words, but Jesus answered him nothing.10The chief priests and the scribes stood, vigorously accusing him.11Herod with his soldiers showed Jesus contempt and they mocked him. Then they dressed him in splendid clothes and sent him back to Pilate.12For Herod and Pilate had become friends with each other that very day, for before this they had been enemies with each other.

13Pilate then called together the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people14and said to them, "You brought to me this man like a man who is misleading the people. And see, I, having questioned him before you, find no guilt in this man concerning those things of which you accuse him.15No, nor does Herod, for he sent him back to us, and see, nothing worthy of death has been done by him.16I will therefore punish him and release him."17[1](#footnote-target-1)18But they cried out all together, saying, "Away with this man, and release to us Barabbas!"19Barabbas was a man who had been put into prison for a certain rebellion in the city and for murder.20Pilate addressed them again, desiring to release Jesus.21But they shouted, saying, "Crucify him, crucify him."22He said to them a third time, "Why, what evil has this man done? I have found no guilt deserving death in him. Therefore after punishing him, I will release him."23But they were insistent with loud voices, demanding for him to be crucified. Their voices convinced Pilate.24So Pilate decided to grant their demand.25He released the one they asked for who had been put in prison for rebellion and murder. But he delivered up Jesus to their will.

26As they led him away, they seized one Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country, and they laid the cross on him to carry, following Jesus.

27A great crowd of the people, and of women who grieved and mourned for him, were following him.28But turning to them, Jesus said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, do not weep for me, but weep for yourselves and for your children.29For see, the days are coming in which they will say, 'Blessed are the barren and the wombs that did not bear, and the breasts that did not nurse.'30Then they will begin to say to the mountains,'Fall on us,' and to the hills, 'Cover us.'31For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?"

32Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death.

33When they came to the place that is called "The Skull," there they crucified him and the criminals—one on his right and one on his left.34Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing." Then they cast lots, dividing up his garments.

35The people stood watching while the rulers also were mocking him, saying, "He saved others. Let him save himself, if he is the Christ of God, the chosen one."

36The soldiers also ridiculed him, approaching him, offering him vinegar,37and saying, "If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself."38There was also a sign over him, "This is the King of the Jews."

39One of the criminals who was hanging there insulted him by saying, "Are you not the Christ? Save yourself and us."

40But the other rebuked him, saying, "Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation?41We indeed are here justly, for we are receiving what we deserve for our deeds. But this man did nothing wrong."42Then he said, "Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom."

43Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today you will be with me in paradise."

44It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour45as the sun turned dark. Then the curtain of the temple was split in two.46Crying with a loud voice, Jesus said, "Father, into your hands I commit my spirit." Having said this, he died.

47When the centurion saw what was done, he glorified God, saying, "Surely this was a righteous man."48When all the multitudes who came together to witness this sight saw the things that were done, they returned beating their breasts.49But all those who knew him, and the women who followed him from Galilee, stood at a distance, watching these things.

50Behold, there was a man named Joseph, who was a member of the Council. He was a good and righteous man.51This man had not agreed with their plan and action. He was from Arimathea, a city of the Jews, and he was looking for the kingdom of God.52This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus.53He took it down, wrapped it in fine linen, and placed it in a tomb that was cut in stone, where no one had ever been laid.54It was the Day of the Preparation, and the Sabbath was about to begin.55The women who had come with Jesus out of Galilee followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid.56They returned and prepared spices and ointments.

Then on the Sabbath they rested according to the commandment.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)The best ancient copies do not have Luke 23:17,Now Pilate was obligated to release to the Jews one prisoner at the feast .

### Luke 23

## 23:1-7

#### Who was Pilate?

[23:1]

Pilate was the Roman ruler of Judah. While he was in Jerusalem for the holiday, his home was at Caesarea.

See Map: Jerusalem; Caesarea

#### Why did the religious leaders take Jesus to Pilate?

[23:1]

The Jewish leaders took Jesus to Pilate. This was because they needed the Roman ruler’s permission to kill someone.

#### What did the leaders mean when they accused Jesus of perverting the nation?

[23:2]

The leaders accused Jesus of perverting the nation. Some scholars think they believed Jesus caused people to fight against their Roman rulers. Other scholars think these leaders believed Jesus caused the Jewish people to riot and fight against the Jewish leaders.

#### Who was Herod Antipas?

[23:7]

See: King Herod

#### Why was Jesus taken to Herod?

[23:7]

Jesus was taken to Herod. Some scholars think Pilate sent Jesus to Herod so Herod would have something to report to Pilate about Jesus. Other scholars think Herod asked to meet Jesus so Pilate sent Jesus to Herod. Other scholars think Pilate sent Jesus to Herod so that Herod could determine whether the things said about Jesus were true.

See: King Herod

## 23:8-12

#### Why did Jesus not answer Herod’s questions?

[23:9]

Jesus did not answer Herod’s questions. Some scholars think this was because he knew that he was going to die. He knew that he needed to die so that people could be at peace with God. Other scholars think Jesus did not answer Herod’s questions because he knew Herod wanted to do something evil.

**Advice to Translators**: Jesus did not answer Herod’s questions. This does not mean that Jesus was guilty.

See: King Herod; Atone (Atonement)

#### Why did the soldiers dress Jesus in elegant clothes?

[23:11]

The soldiers dressed Jesus in the type of robe that only kings wore. They did this to mock Jesus. They did not think he was a king. They wanted other people to think this also.

See: Irony

## 23:13-24

#### Did Luke write the words in verse 17?

[23:17]

Some ancient copies of Luke have the words in verse 17. More and older ancient copies of Luke do not have these words. Scholars do not think Luke wrote these words. However, Matthew and Mark wrote these words (see: Matthew 27:15; Mark 15:6).

See: Differences in the Ancient Copies of the Bible

#### Who was Barabbas?

[23:18]

Barabbas was a criminal who was in prison. Luke said that Barabbas had been involved with a rebellion. Scholars think he was also a violent person who fought against the Roman empire. They think the Jewish people asked for Barabbas to be freed because Barabbas was a hero to some of them. He was a hero because he tried to free Israel from Roman rule.

See: Rebel (Rebellion)

## 23:26-31

#### Where was Cyrene?

[23:26]

See Map: Cyrene

#### How did soldiers make Simon carry Jesus’ cross?

[23:26]

The soldiers grabbed Simon from the crowd and forced him to carry Jesus’ cross. Some scholars think the soldiers had Simon carry one piece of the cross while Jesus carried the other piece. Other scholars think Simon was made to carry one piece and the other piece was at the place where Jesus was going to be crucified. Other scholars think Simon carried one end of the cross while Jesus carried the other end.

See: Cross; Crucify (Crucifixion)

#### Who were the “daughters of Jerusalem”?

[23:28]

The “daughters of Jerusalem” were the women living in Jerusalem.

#### Why did Jesus tell the women not to weep for him?

[23:28]

Jesus told the women not to weep for him because God wanted Jesus to suffer and die. This was God’s will. However, they needed to weep because the people of Jerusalem would soon experience great suffering. Scholars think Jesus was speaking about when the Romans destroyed Jerusalem and the temple. This happened about forty years after Jesus died.

See: Will of God; Temple

#### Why will people “say to the mountains, ‘fall on us’ and the hills, ‘cover us’”?

[23:30]

Luke wrote about people speaking to the mountains and hills. This was a metaphor. Scholars think that they were going to greatly suffer and because of this they would want to die quickly.

See: Metaphor

#### Why did Jesus talk about a green tree and a dry tree?

[23:31]

Jesus talked about a green tree and a dry tree because he warned the Jewish people they will suffer. The green tree was a metaphor for Jesus. When Jesus talked about the green tree, he wanted people to know that he was going to greatly suffer, but he did not do anything wrong. When Jesus talked about the the dry tree, he was speaking about people who did the wrong things. These people will suffer more than Jesus.

See: Metaphor

## 23:32-38

#### Why was the place they took Jesus to called “The Skull”?

[23:33]

Scholars think the place they took Jesus was called “the skull” because it was a hill that looked like a skull. Other scholars think the place was called the skull because the Romans had executed many people there. It was not because there were human skulls lying on the ground.

#### What was crucifixion?

[23:33]

See: Crucify (Crucifixion)

#### What did it mean to “cast lots”?

[23:34]

See: Cast Lots

#### Why did the soldiers offer Jesus vinegar to drink?

[23:36]

Scholars think different things about why the soldiers offered Jesus vinegar to drink.

Some scholars think this was to fulfill a prophecy in the Old Testament (see: Psalm 69:21). The soldiers did something evil.

Some scholars think that offering Jesus vinegar to drink was an act of compassion because the drink was thought to satisfy thirst better than water.

Some scholars think the soldiers offered Jesus vinegar to drink in order to mock him. That is, only the common people drank vinegar, or sour wine. A king would never be offered vinegar or sour wine to drink.

See: Fulfill (Fulfillment); Prophecy (Prophesy) ; Old Testament (Law and Prophets)

#### Why did they put a sign over Jesus?

[23:38]

Scholars think the soldiers put a sign over Jesus so people would know why he was crucified. Some scholars say Pilate wanted to mock Jesus with the sign. Other scholars think Pilate wanted to mock the Jewish leaders because they put their own king to death.

See: John 19:19-22

See: Crucify (Crucifixion)

## 23:39-43

#### Why did the criminal ask Jesus to remember him?

[23:42]

The criminal asked Jesus to remember him because the criminal wanted to enter the kingdom of God. That is, he wanted Jesus to remember him when he returned to rule as the Messiah.

See: Kingdom of God; Messiah (Christ)

#### What was “paradise”?

[23:43]

“Paradise” is another name for “heaven.”

See: Heaven

## 23:44-49

#### What was the sixth hour?

[23:44]

The sixth hour was midday. The ancient Jews divided a day into twelve parts. The hours varied in length according to the time of the year so that midday was always the sixth hour. It was about noon.

#### What did it mean that the sun’s light failed?

[23:44]

Luke wrote about the sun’s light fading. Some scholars think God used a strong wind that caused large amounts of dust to blow up and block the light of the sun. Other scholars think God used a miracle to blocked the light of the sun.

See: Miracle

#### What was the curtain of the temple?

[23:45]

Scholars think the curtain of the temple was an inner curtain that separated the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place. It was very thick. Nothing could tear this curtain except God.

See: Temple; Holy Place; Most Holy Place (Holy of Holies)

#### Why was the curtain of the temple split in two?

[23:45]

Scholars think different things about why the curtain of the temple split in two.

Some scholars think this happened so people would know that God who tore the curtain.

Some scholars think this was a metaphor. When Jesus died, people could now go to God without needing a priest.

Some scholars think this was a metaphor. God stopped living in the temple in some way.

Some scholars think this was a warning of the coming destruction of the temple.

See: Temple; Metaphor

#### What did it mean that Jesus committed his spirit to God the Father?

[23:46]

When Jesus said that he committed his spirit to God the Father, it meant that he completely trusted God.

See: Psalm 31:5

See: Spirit (Spiritual); God the Father

#### Why did the people beat their breasts when they left?

[23:48]

Scholars think different things about why the people beat their breasts when they left.

They were greatly saddened because of the way Jesus died.

They felt guilt because Jesus died and they beat their breasts as a sign of repentance because of their part in his death.

They knew something terrible happened because darkness came.

See: Sign; Repent (Repentance)

## 23:50-56

#### Who was Joseph?

[23:50]

This Joseph was a Jewish leader. Joseph was a popular name in ancient Israel.

#### Where was Arimathea?

[23:51]

See Map: Arimathea

#### What did it mean that Joseph was looking for the kingdom of God?

[23:51]

Joseph was looking for the kingdom of God. He was expecting the coming of the kingdom of God. Some scholars think Joseph may have believed that Jesus was the Messiah.

See: Kingdom of God; Messiah (Christ)

#### What was the Day of Preparation?

[23:54]

The Day of Preparation was the time to prepare for the Sabbath. It began on Thursday evening and lasted until Friday evening. People cleaned houses, bought supplies, and cooked food so that they did no work on the Sabbath.

See: Sabbath

#### Why did the women prepare spices and ointments?

[23:56]

The women prepared spices and ointments to put on the body of Jesus. The spices and ointments helped to hide the smell of a decaying body. It was also a sign of honor to anoint a body with spices and ointments, and was thought to preserve the body.

See: Sign; Anoint (Anointing)

#### Luke 23:1

##### The whole company of them

"All of the Jewish leaders" or "All the members of the Council"

##### rose up

This means that they began to act decisively.

##### before Pilate

"to Pilate" or "to be judged by Pilate"

#### Luke 23:2

##### misleading our nation

"causing our people to do things that are not right" or "causing trouble by telling lies to our people"

##### forbidding to give tribute to Caesar

"telling them not to pay taxes to the emperor"

#### Luke 23:3

##### You say so

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus indicates that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "It is as you said" or 2) Jesus refuses to answer. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so"

#### Luke 23:4

##### multitudes

large groups of people

##### I find no guilt in this man

"I do not find this man guilty of anything"

#### Luke 23:5

##### stirs up the people

"causes trouble among the people"

##### all Judea, beginning from Galilee even to this place

"all Judea. He began causing trouble in Galilee and now is causing trouble here"

#### Luke 23:6

##### heard this

"heard that Jesus began his teaching in Galilee"

##### he asked whether the man was a Galilean

"he asked if Jesus was from Galilee"

#### Luke 23:7

##### he was under Herod's authority

"Jesus was under the authority of Herod, the ruler of Galilee"

#### Luke 23:8

##### to see some sign done by him

"to see Jesus do some kind of sign"

##### sign

a miracle that would show that Jesus was more than a mere man

#### Luke 23:9

##### Herod questioned Jesus in many words

"Herod asked Jesus a lot of questions"

##### answered him nothing

"did not reply" or "did not give Herod an answer"

#### Luke 23:10

##### vigorously accusing him

They were showing great anger and using strong words and accusing him of many things.

#### Luke 23:11

##### dressed him in splendid clothes

"put beautiful clothes on him." They did this to mock Jesus and make fun of him.

#### Luke 23:14

##### like a man who

"saying that he"

##### is misleading the people

"is urging the people to act badly" or "is trying to get the people to rebel"

##### I, having questioned him before you,

"I have questioned him in your presence and I" or "I have questioned him with you here as witnesses, and I"

##### find no guilt in this man

"do not think that he is guilty"

#### Luke 23:15

##### No, nor does Herod

"Nor does Herod find guilt in this man" or "Herod also does not think that this man is guilty"

##### nor does Herod, for he sent him back to us

"nor does Herod. We know this because Herod sent him back to us." The word "us" refers to Pilate, the priests, and the scribes, but not those who were listening to Pilate.

##### nothing worthy of death has been done by him

"he has not done anything to deserve a death sentence"

#### Luke 23:16

##### I will therefore punish him and release him

"So I will punish him and then set him free"

#### Luke 23:18

##### they cried out all together

"the people in the crowd shouted"

##### Away with this man, and release to us Barabbas"

"Take this man away! Set Barabbas free for us"

#### Luke 23:19

##### who had been put into prison

"who was in prison" or "whom the Romans had put in prison"

##### for a certain rebellion in the city and for murder

"because he and others in the city had rebelled against the government and committed murder" or "because he was involved in a rebellion in the city and murder"

#### Luke 23:20

##### addressed them again

"spoke to them again" or "spoke again to the religious rulers and the crowd"

##### desiring to release Jesus

"because he wanted to set Jesus free"

#### Luke 23:22

##### Why, what evil has this man done?

"But what crime has this man committed?"

#### Luke 23:23

##### they were insistent with loud voices

"the crowd insisted and shouted"

##### for him to be crucified

"that Pilate have his soldiers crucify Jesus"

##### Their voices convinced Pilate

"Their shouting convinced Pilate"or "They kept shouting until they convinced Pilate"

#### Luke 23:24

##### to grant their demand

"to do what the crowd demanded"

#### Luke 23:25

##### he delivered up Jesus to their will

"he surrendered Jesus to what they wanted" or "he handed Jesus over so that what they wanted would happen to him"

#### Luke 23:26

##### As they led him away

"While the soldiers led Jesus away from where Pilate was"

##### they seized

The Roman soldiers had the authority to make people carry their loads. Do not translate this in a way that indicates that Simon was arrested for doing anything wrong.

##### one Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country

"a man named Simon, from the city of Cyrene, who was coming into Jerusalem from the countryside"

##### they laid the cross on him to carry, following Jesus

"they put the cross on his shoulders for him to carry and follow behind Jesus"

#### Luke 23:27

##### A great crowd

"A large crowd"

##### mourned for him

"mourned for Jesus"

##### were following him

This simply means they were walking along behind Jesus. It does not mean that they were all his disciples.

#### Luke 23:28

##### Daughters of Jerusalem

The "daughters" of a city are the women of the city. Alternate translation: "You women of Jerusalem"

#### Luke 23:29

##### the days are coming in which they will say

"there will soon be a time when people will say"

##### the barren

"the barren women" or "the women who could not have children"

##### the wombs that did not bear ... the breasts that did not nurse

These clauses more fully describe "the barren." Alternate translation: "the women who have never given birth to children or nursed babies"

#### Luke 23:30

##### Then they will begin to say

"In those days people will begin to say"

##### and to the hills

"and they will say to the hills"

#### Luke 23:31

##### For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?

Dry trees burn more quickly than green trees. Jesus uses this question to help the crowd understand that others would suffer even worse than he was suffering. Alternate translation: "Since they do these things while the tree is green, you can be sure that it will be worse when the tree is dry."

#### Luke 23:32

##### Other men, two criminals, were led away with him to be put to death

"The soldiers led away with Jesus two criminals to execute them also." Luke called the other two men criminals, but he did not call Jesus a criminal because Jesus was innocent.

#### Luke 23:34

##### Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### for they do not know what they are doing

"because they do not understand what they are doing." The Roman soldiers did not understand that they were crucifying the Son of God.

##### they cast lots

The soldiers participated in a type of gambling. Alternate translation: "they tossed stones" or "they threw dice"

##### cast lots, dividing up his garments

"cast lots to decide who among them would take home each piece of Jesus's clothing"

#### Luke 23:35

##### Let him save himself

"He should be able to save himself." They said this to mock Jesus. They did not believe he could save himself.

##### the chosen one

"the one that God has chosen"

#### Luke 23:36

##### offering him vinegar

"offering Jesus vinegar to drink." Vinegar is a cheap drink that common people drink. The soldiers were mocking Jesus by giving a cheap drink to someone who claims to be a king.

#### Luke 23:38

##### a sign over him

"a notice above him on which was written." This was a notice attached to the top of the cross.

#### Luke 23:39

##### Are you not the Christ? Save yourself

The criminal uses a question to mock Jesus. Alternate translation: "You claim to be the Christ. So save yourself" or "If you really are the Christ, save yourself"

#### Luke 23:40

##### the other rebuked him

"the other criminal rebuked him"

##### Do you not fear God, since you are under the same sentence of condemnation?

The criminal uses a question to scold the other criminal. Alternate translation: "You should fear God, because you are under the same sentence of condemnation."

##### you are under the same sentence of condemnation

"the government has condemned you to be punished in the same way"

#### Luke 23:41

##### We indeed ... for we ... we deserve

These usages of "we" refer only to the two criminals. They do not refer to Jesus or the other people.

##### We indeed are here justly

"Truly we deserve this punishment"

#### Luke 23:42

##### remember me

"think about me and treat me well"

##### when you come into your kingdom

To "come into" one's kingdom means to begin to rule. Alternate translation: "when you begin to rule as king"

#### Luke 23:43

##### Truly I say to you, today

"Truly" adds emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: "I want you to know that today"

##### paradise

This is the place that righteous people go to when they die. Alternate translation: "the place where the righteous people live" or "the place where people live well"

#### Luke 23:44

##### about the sixth hour ... until the ninth hour

"about noon ... until 3 p.m." This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

##### darkness came over the whole land

"the entire land became dark"

#### Luke 23:45

##### as the sun turned dark

This does not refer to sundown. Rather, the light of the sun became dark during the middle of the day.

##### the curtain of the temple was split in two

"the curtain that was hanging inside the temple tore into two pieces." This was the thick curtain that separated the most holy place from the rest of the temple.

#### Luke 23:46

##### Crying with a loud voice, Jesus said

"When that happened, Jesus shouted loudly, saying"

##### into your hands I commit my spirit

"The phrase "into your hands" refers to God's care. Alternate translation: "I entrust my spirit to your care"

##### Having said this

"After Jesus said this"

#### Luke 23:47

##### the centurion

This was a Roman officer who was in charge of the other Roman soldiers. He supervised the crucifixion.

##### what was done

"what happened"

#### Luke 23:48

##### all the multitudes

"all the crowd"

##### to witness this sight

"to see this event" or "to observe what was happening"

##### they returned beating their breasts

Beating one's breast is a symbol of sorrow and regret. Alternate translation: "they returned to their homes, beating their chests in sorrow"

#### Luke 23:50

##### Behold, there was a man named Joseph

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Alternate translation: "Now there was a man whose name was Joseph"

##### the Council

"the Jewish Council"

#### Luke 23:51

##### he was looking for the kingdom of God

he was waiting for the kingdom of God

#### Luke 23:52

##### This man, approaching Pilate, asked for the body of Jesus

"This man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus"

#### Luke 23:53

##### He took it down

"Joseph took Jesus's body down from the cross"

##### wrapped it in fine linen

"wrapped the body in a fine linen cloth." This was the normal burial custom at that time.

##### a tomb that was cut in stone

"a tomb which someone had cut out of a rock cliff"

##### where no one had ever been laid

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: "No one had ever put a body in that tomb before"

#### Luke 23:54

##### the Day of the Preparation

"the day for getting ready for the Sabbath"

#### Luke 23:55

##### who had come with Jesus out of Galilee

"who had come with Jesus from the region of Galilee"

##### followed and saw the tomb and how his body was laid

"followed Joseph and saw the tomb and how he laid Jesus's body inside it"

#### Luke 23:56

##### prepared spices and ointments

"prepared spices and ointments for Jesus's body"

##### they rested according to the commandment

"they did no work as the Jewish law required." They did not put the spice on his body yet because they were not allowed to work on the Sabbath.

Chapter 24

1Very early on the first day of the week, they came to the tomb, bringing the spices which they had prepared.2They found the stone rolled away from the tomb.3They entered in, but did not find the body of the Lord Jesus.4It happened that, while they were confused about this, suddenly, two men stood by them in bright shining garments.5As the women were terrified and bowed down their faces to the earth, they said to the women, "Why do you seek the living among the dead?6He is not here, but has been raised! Remember how he spoke to you when he was still in Galilee,7saying that the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified, and on the third day rise again."8The women remembered his words9and returned from the tomb and told all these things to the eleven and all the rest.10Now Mary Magdalene, Joanna, Mary the mother of James, and the other women with them reported these things to the apostles.11But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles, and they did not believe the women.12Yet Peter rose up and ran to the tomb, and, stooping and looking in, he saw the linen cloths by themselves. Peter then departed to his home, wondering what had happened.

13Behold, two of them were going that very day to a village named Emmaus, which was sixty stadia from Jerusalem.14They discussed with each other about all the things that had happened.15It happened that, while they discussed and questioned together, Jesus himself approached and went with them.16But their eyes were prevented from recognizing him.17Jesus said to them, "What are these matters you two are discussing as you walk?" They stood there looking sad.

18One of them, named Cleopas, answered him, "Are you the only person in Jerusalem who does not know the things which have happened there these days?"

19Jesus said to them, "What things?"

They answered him, "The things concerning Jesus the Nazarene, who was a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people,20and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered him up to be condemned to death and crucified him.21But we hoped that he was the one who was going to redeem Israel. Yes, and what is more, it is now the third day since all these things happened.22But also, some women of our company amazed us, having been at the tomb early in the morning.23When they did not find his body, they came, saying that they had also seen a vision of angels who said that he was alive.24Some men who were with us went to the tomb, and found it just as the women had said. But they did not see him."

25Jesus said to them, "O foolish men and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken!26Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things, and to enter into his glory?"27Then beginning from Moses and through all the prophets, Jesus interpreted to them the things concerning himself in all the scriptures.

28As they approached the village to which they were going, Jesus acted as though he were going further.29But they compelled him, saying, "Stay with us, for it is toward evening and the day is almost over." So Jesus went in to stay with them.30It happened that, when he had sat down with them to eat, he took the bread, blessed it, and breaking it, he gave it to them.31Then their eyes were opened, and they knew him, and he vanished out of their sight.32They said one to another, "Was not our heart burning within us, while he spoke to us on the way, while he opened to us the scriptures?"33They rose up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem. They found the eleven gathered together and those who were with them,34saying, "The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon."35So they told the things that happened on the way, and how Jesus was recognized by them in the breaking of the bread.

36As they spoke these things, Jesus himself stood in the midst of them, and said to them, "Peace be to you."37But they were terrified and filled with fear and thought that they were seeing a spirit.38Jesus said to them, "Why are you troubled? Why do questions arise in your heart?39See my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having."40When he had said this, he showed them his hands and his feet.41They still could not believe it because of joy, and they were amazed. Jesus said to them, "Do you have anything to eat?"42They gave him a piece of a broiled fish,43and he took it and ate it before them.

44He said to them, "These are my words that I spoke to you when I was with you, that all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled."45Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures.46He said to them, "Thus it is written, that the Christ should suffer and rise again from the dead on the third day.47Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem.48You are witnesses of these things.49See, I am sending you what my Father promised. But remain in the city until you are clothed with power from on high."

50Then Jesus led them out until they were near Bethany. He lifted up his hands and blessed them.51It happened that, while he was blessing them, he left them and was carried up into heaven.52So they worshiped him and returned to Jerusalem with great joy.53They were continually in the temple, blessing God.

### Luke 24

## 24:1-12

#### When was the first day of the week?

[24:1]

The first day of the week was after the sabbath. The sabbath was Saturday for Jews and some Christians. The first day of the week was Sunday. The women went to the tomb likely brought the spices at sunrise on the first day of the week.

#### Why was there a stone?

[24:2]

The stone covered the entry point of the tomb. The stone kept grave robbers out of the tomb and it also kept animals from entering the tomb.The stone was too large for women to move.

#### Who were the two men?

[24:4]

Scholars think that the two men who suddenly stood by the women were angels.

See: Angel

#### Why did the angels asking the women, “Why do you seek the living among the dead”?

[24:5]

When the angels asked the women a question, they knew that Jesus was alive. Therefore, the women were not going to find Jesus in the tomb.

#### Who were the “sinful men” into whose hands Jesus was delivered?

[24:7]

Scholars think the “sinful men” spoke about Judas and the crowd of men he brought to arrest Jesus. Jesus himself said he was to be delivered into the hands of Gentiles (see: Luke 18:32). Gentiles were considered to be sinful people.

See: Gentile; Sin

#### How many days was Jesus dead and in the tomb?

[24:7]

Jesus was dead and in the tomb three days. The first day was Friday, the second day was Saturday, and the third day was Sunday. The Jewish day began and ended when the sun went down.

#### What was “idle talk”?

[24:11]

Scholars think that “idle talk” was talk that was impossible to believe. That is, people who heard it did not understand it.

#### Why did Peter run to the tomb?

[24:12]

Some scholars think Peter ran to the tomb to see if the women were telling the truth about Jesus.

See: John 20:1-10

## 24:13-35

#### Where was Emmaus?

[24:13]

See Map: Emmaus

#### What was a “stadia”?

[24:13]

A stadia was about 190 meters.

#### What did it mean that two followers of Jesus were prevented from recognizing Jesus?

[24:16]

Scholars give several reasons why the two followers of Jesus were prevented from recognizing him.

They were not expecting to see Jesus alive again.

God did something so that the two men did not know it was Jesus.

The Holy Spirit waited until the right time for them to know that it was Jesus. This was when they sat close to Jesus to eat a meal.

#### Who was Cleopas?

[24:18]

Scholars do not know who Cleopas was. Some scholars say Cleopas as an uncle of Jesus. He was Joseph’s brother.

#### What was a Nazarene?

[24:19]

A Nazarene was a person who came from or lived in a town called Nazareth.

See Map: Nazareth

#### What were the scriptures to which Jesus referred?

[24:27]

The scriptures to which Jesus referred were the places in the Old Testament that told about the messiah before the messiah came.

See: Old Testament (Law and Prophets); Messiah (Christ)

#### What did it mean that Jesus “acted as though he were going further”?

[24:28]

Jesus “acted as though he were going further”. That is, it seemed that he was going to travel beyond the village. Scholars think Jesus would have continued on past the village if the two people had not asked him to stay with them.

#### How were the eyes of the two followers of Jesus opened?

[24:31]

Luke wrote that the eyes of the two people were opened. This was a metaphor. These people were able to recognize Jesus. Scholars think this happened when Jesus broke the bread and handed it to them.

See: Metaphor

#### What was meant by the words, “our heart burning within us”?

[24:32]

The words “our heart burning within us” was a metaphor. It meant that their hearts and minds were filled with joy, a sense of awe, hope, and excitement. It described how they felt when Jesus explained the Old Testament to them.

See: Metaphor; Old Testament (Law and Prophets)

## 24:36-49

#### Why did Jesus give the greeting “peace be to you”?

[24:36]

In ancient times, people often greeted one another by saying, “peace be to you.” This was a way people asked for blessings for someone else.

See: Bless (Blessing)

#### Why did Jesus say to the disciples, “See my hands and my feet”?

[24:39]

Jesus said to the disciples, “See my hands and my feet”. Scholars think Jesus wanted them to look at his hands and feet because they showed the scars of his crucifixion (see: John 20:25-27).

See: Disciple; Crucify (Crucifixion)

#### Why did Jesus say, “a spirit does not have flesh and bones”?

[24:39]

Some scholars think that when Jesus said a “spirit”(πνεῦμα/g4151) does not have flesh and bones, he was telling the disciples he was not a ghost. That is, a ghost does not have a real physical body.

See: Spirit (Spiritual); Disciple

#### What did Luke mean when he wrote, “They still could not believe it because of joy”?

[24:41]

Luke wrote, “They still could not believe.” Scholars think the disciples thought it was too good to be true, that Jesus was really alive again. This was because they were overcome with amazement.

#### What was meant by the words, “he opened their minds”?

[24:45]

When Jesus “opened their minds,” he caused his disciples to be able to understand all that was written in the Old Testament about the Messiah.

See: Disciple; Old Testament (Law and Prophets); Messiah (Christ).

#### What was “repentance”?

[24:47]

See: Repent (Repentance)

#### What did it mean to preach “in his name”?

[24:47]

Some scholars think that to preach in the name of Jesus happened when Jesus gave someone permission to preach. Other scholars think that someone preached in Jesus’ name when they preached about the gospel.

See: Preach (Preacher); Gospel

#### What were “these things” of which the disciples were witnesses?

[24:48]

When Jesus spoke about “these things” he was referring to his suffering, death, and resurrection, all of which the disciples were witnesses.

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

#### Why did Jesus say, “I am sending you what my Father promised”?

[24:49]

Jesus said, “I am sending you what my Father promised.” This is the promise of the Holy Spirit.

**Advice to Translators**: It may be more clear to state that Jesus said “I am going to send you what my Father promised”.

See: God the Father; Holy Spirit; Indwelling of the Holy Spirit; Filling of the Holy Spirit

#### What did it mean to be “clothed with power from on high”?

[24:49]

To be “clothed with power from on high” was a metaphor. God gave power to the disciples. Scholars think God did this soon after Jesus returned to heaven (see: Acts 1:8; 2:1-4).

See: Metaphor; Disciple; Heaven

## 24:50-53

#### What did it mean that Jesus “blessed” his disciples?

[24:50]

See: Bless (Blessing)

#### Why was Jesus carried up into heaven?

[24:51]

Jesus had completed his work and returned to heaven. Jesus said this was necessary so that the Holy Spirit could come to people in a new way (see: John 16:7-11).

See: Heaven; Holy Spirit; Indwelling of the Holy Spirit; Filling of the Holy Spirit

#### How did the followers of Jesus “worship” Jesus?

[24:52]

Some scholars think people worshipped Jesus by bow down before him, or to lay face-down on the ground before him.

See: Worship

#### Why did the followers of Jesus have “great joy” after Jesus went to heaven?

[24:52]

Scholars give several reasons the followers of Jesus had “great joy”(χαρά/g5479) after Jesus went to heaven.

Jesus is Lord in heaven and he reigns over everything.

They were no longer afraid of dying because they would also go to heaven.

They had no more doubts. They knew Jesus was the Messiah.

They believed they will complete the things Jesus wanted them to do.

See: Rejoice (Joy, Joyful); Heaven; Messiah (Christ)

#### What did it mean that the disciples were “continually in the temple”?

[24:53]

Scholars think Luke meant that the disciples were in the temple very often, likely every day. When in the temple, they were continually worshipping God and giving him thanks.

#### Luke 24:1

##### General Information:

The women return to the tomb with spices to put on Jesus's body. The tomb was like a room that was dug out of a rock hill. There was a large stone blocking the entrance to the tomb.

#### Luke 24:2

##### They found the stone rolled away

"They saw that the stone had been rolled away" or "They saw that someone had rolled away the stone"

##### the stone

This was a large, cut, round stone big enough to completely block the doorway to the tomb.

#### Luke 24:4

##### General Information:

Two angels who look like men come and speak to the women.

#### Luke 24:5

##### bowed down their faces to the earth

"bowed low to the ground"

##### Why do you seek the living among the dead?

The men use a question to mildly rebuke the women for looking in a tomb for a living person. Alternate translation: "You are looking for a living person among dead people!" or "You should not look for a living person in a place for dead people!"

#### Luke 24:6

##### but has been raised

"but has been made alive again" or "because he has become alive again"

#### Luke 24:7

##### the Son of Man must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified

"it was necessary that they hand the Son of Man over to sinful men who would crucify him"

##### third day

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was "the third day" because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day.

#### Luke 24:8

##### remembered his words

"remembered what Jesus had said"

#### Luke 24:9

##### the eleven and all the rest

"the eleven apostles and all the rest of the disciples who were with them." This is the first time Luke refers to the apostles as "the eleven." There had been twelve apostles before, but Judas left them and betrayed Jesus.

#### Luke 24:10

##### Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. In this verse and the next, Luke tells about what happened when the women spoke to the apostles.

#### Luke 24:11

##### But this message seemed like idle talk to the apostles

"But the apostles thought that what the women said was foolish talk"

#### Luke 24:12

##### Yet Peter rose up

"Rose up" means "began to act." Whether Peter was sitting or standing when he decided to act is not important. Alternate translation: "Yet Peter started out"

##### stooping

Peter had to bend over in order to see inside the tomb because the entrance was very low. Alternate translation: "bending himself at the waist"

##### the linen cloths by themselves

"only the linen cloths." This refers to the cloths that had been wrapped around Jesus's body when he was buried. Jesus was not there.

#### Luke 24:13

##### Behold

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event.

##### two of them

"two of the disciples"

##### that very day

"that same day." This refers to the day when the women found the tomb to be empty.

##### sixty stadia

"eleven kilometers." A "stadium" was 185 meters.

#### Luke 24:15

##### It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. It starts with Jesus approaching them.

##### Jesus himself

The word "himself" emphasizes the fact that the one they were talking about appeared to them.

#### Luke 24:16

##### their eyes were prevented from recognizing him

"their eyes were kept from recognizing him" or "God prevented them from recognizing Jesus"

#### Luke 24:18

##### Cleopas

This is the name of a man.

##### Are you the only person ... days?

Cleopas uses this question to show his surprise that this man appears not to know about the things that have happened in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "You must be the only person ... days."

#### Luke 24:19

##### What things

"What things have happened" or "What things have taken place"

##### a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people

"a prophet to whom God gave power to do and teach great things before all the people"

#### Luke 24:20

##### delivered him up to be condemned to death and crucified him

"gave him over in order for the governor to sentence Jesus to death and they crucified him"

#### Luke 24:21

##### who was going to redeem Israel

"who would free the the people of Israel from our enemies"

##### Yes, and what is more,

This introduces another reason why they no longer believed Jesus would free Israel. Alternate translation: "And in addition to that,"

#### Luke 24:22

##### But also

This introduces another reason why the men did not understand what was happening concerning Jesus.

##### of our company

"in our group"

##### having been at the tomb

The women were the ones who were at the tomb.

#### Luke 24:24

##### But they did not see him

"But they did not see Jesus"

#### Luke 24:25

##### slow of heart to believe

Here "heart" represents the mind. Alternate translation: "your minds are slow to believe" or "you are slow to believe"

#### Luke 24:26

##### Was it not necessary ... glory?

Jesus uses a question to remind the disciples about what the prophets said. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that it was necessary ... glory."

##### to enter into his glory

This refers to Jesus beginning to rule and to receive honor and glory.

#### Luke 24:27

##### beginning from Moses

Moses wrote the first books of the Bible. Alternate translation: "beginning with the writings of Moses"

##### Jesus interpreted to them

"Jesus explained to them"

#### Luke 24:28

##### Jesus acted as though he were going further

The two men understood from his actions that he was going on to another destination. There is no indication that Jesus wanted to deceive them.

#### Luke 24:29

##### they compelled him

"they persuade him to stay with them"

#### Luke 24:30

##### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

##### the bread

This refers to bread. It does not refer to food in general.

##### blessed it

"gave thanks for it" or "thanked God for it"

#### Luke 24:31

##### Then their eyes were opened

"Then they understood" or "Then they realized"

##### they knew him

"they recognized him." These disciples had known him before his death.

##### he vanished out of their sight

"he disappeared from their sight"

#### Luke 24:32

##### Was not our heart burning ... scriptures?

They use a question to emphasize how amazed they were about their encounter with Jesus. Alternate translation: "Our hearts were burning ... scriptures."

##### while he opened to us the scriptures

"while he explained the scriptures to us"

#### Luke 24:33

##### rose up

"got up" or "stood up"

##### the eleven

This refers to Jesus's apostles. Judas was no longer included with them.

#### Luke 24:34

##### saying

"and those people told the two men"

#### Luke 24:35

##### So they told

"So the two men told them"

##### the things that happened on the way

"what had happened while they were walking on the road"

##### how Jesus was recognized by them in the breaking of the bread

"how they recognized Jesus when he broke the bread"

#### Luke 24:36

##### Jesus himself

The word "himself" focuses on Jesus. The people in the room did not expect Jesus to appear.

##### in the midst of them

"among them"

##### Peace be to you

"May you have peace" or "May God give you peace!" The word "you" refers to the group of people.

#### Luke 24:37

##### terrified and filled with fear

"startled and afraid." These two phrases mean about the same thing, and are used together to emphasize their fear.

##### a spirit

Here it refers to the spirit of a dead person.

#### Luke 24:38

##### Why are you troubled?

Jesus uses a question to comfort them. Alternate translation: "Do not be frightened."

##### Why do questions arise in your heart?

Jesus uses a question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. Alternate translation: "Do not let doubts come up in your minds!" or "Stop doubting!"

#### Luke 24:39

##### Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having

Jesus asks them to touch him so they can know that he is not a ghost. Alternate translation: "Touch me and know. For I have flesh and bones, but ghosts do not have them"

##### flesh and bones

This is a way of referring to the physical body.

#### Luke 24:40

##### his hands and his feet

Jesus's hands and feet had wounds from when he was nailed to the cross. These gave proof that he was Jesus. Alternate translation: "the wounds in his hands and his feet"

#### Luke 24:41

##### They still could not believe it because of joy

"They were so full of joy that they still could not believe it was really true"

#### Luke 24:43

##### ate it before them

"ate it in front of them." Doing this gave proof that he has a physical body and is not just a ghost.

#### Luke 24:44

##### all that was written ... Psalms must be fulfilled

"God would fulfill all that was written ... Psalms" or "God would cause all that was written ... Psalms to happen"

##### all that was written in the law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms

The words "law of Moses," "the Prophets," and "the Psalms" are parts of the Hebrew Bible. Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law, all that the prophets wrote, and all that the writers of the Psalms wrote about me"

#### Luke 24:45

##### Then he opened their minds, that they might understand the scriptures

"Then he enabled them to understand the scriptures"

#### Luke 24:46

##### Thus it is written

"This is what people long ago wrote"

#### Luke 24:47

##### Repentance and forgiveness of sins should be preached in his name to all the nations

"People must preach in Christ's name to people in all the nations that they need to repent and that they need God to forgive their sins"

##### in his name

His "name" here refers to his authority. Alternate translation: "by the Christ's authority"

##### beginning from Jerusalem

"starting in Jerusalem"

#### Luke 24:48

##### You are witnesses

"You are to tell others that what you saw of these things." The disciples had observed Jesus's life, death, and resurrection and could describe to other people what he did.

#### Luke 24:49

##### I am sending you what my Father promised

"I will give you what my Father promised to give you." God had promised to give the Holy Spirit.

##### my Father

This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### until you are clothed with power from on high

"until you receive power from above" or "until you receive power from heaven"

#### Luke 24:50

##### Jesus led them out

"Jesus led the disciples outside the city"

##### He lifted up his hands

This was the action that priests performed when they blessed the people.

#### Luke 24:51

##### was carried up into heaven

"was taken up into heaven" or "went up into heaven"

#### Luke 24:53

##### in the temple

"at the temple" or "in the temple courtyard"

##### blessing God

"praising God"

## Translation Words

### Aaron

#### Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

* Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
* While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
* God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priests for the people of Israel.

(See also: [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:14
* Acts 07:38-40
* Exodus 28:1-3
* Luke 01:05
* Numbers 16:45

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H175, G2

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aaron, Aaron's

### Abel

#### Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

* Abel was a shepherd.
* Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
* God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
* Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 04:02
* Genesis 04:09
* Hebrews 12:24
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 23:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1893, G6

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abel, Abel's

### Abijah

#### Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

* Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
* Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
* Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
* Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 15:03
* 1 Samuel 08:1-3
* 2 Chronicles 13:02
* 2 Chronicles 13:19
* Luke 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H29, G7

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abijah, Abijah's

### Abraham

#### Related Words:

Abram

#### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

* The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
* "Abraham" means "father of many."
* God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
* Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
* Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Chaldea](../names/chaldeans.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:08
* Genesis 11:29-30
* Genesis 21:04
* Genesis 22:02
* James 02:23
* Matthew 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H87, H85, G11

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abraham, Abraham's, Abram

### Adam

#### Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

* God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
* Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
* The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
* All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
* Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Eve](../names/eve.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [life](../kt/life.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:14
* Genesis 03:17
* Genesis 05:01
* Genesis 11:05
* Luke 03:38
* Romans 05:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, G76

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Adam, Adam's, the man, mankind

### Amos

#### Facts:

Amos was an Israelite prophet who lived during the time of King Uzziah of Judah.

* Before being called as a prophet, Amos was originally a shepherd and fig farmer living in the kingdom of Judah.
* Amos prophesied against the prosperous northern kingdom of Israel regarding their unjust treatment of people.

(See also: [fig](../other/fig.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Amos 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5986

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amos, Amos'

### Andrew

#### Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

* Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
* Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
* Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 01:40
* Mark 01:17
* Mark 01:29-31
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Andrew, Andrew's

### Annas

#### Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

* Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
* After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office, so Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
* During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(See also: [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:5-7
* John 18:22-24
* Luke 03:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Annas, Annas'

### Asher

#### Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called "Asher."

* Asher's mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
* His name means "happy" or "blessed."
* Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 04:16
* Ezekiel 48:1-3
* Genesis 30:13
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H836

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asher, Asher's

### Barabbas

#### Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

* Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
* When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
* So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(See also: [Pilate](../names/pilate.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 18:40
* Luke 23:19
* Mark 15:07
* Matthew 27:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Barabbas, Barabbas'

### Bartholomew

#### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

* Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
* He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
* A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G918

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bartholomew, Bartholomew's

### Beelzebul

#### Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, "Beelzebub."

* This name literally means "lord of flies" which means, "ruler over demons." But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
* It could also be translated as "Beelzebul the devil" to make it clear who is being referred to.
* This name is related to the name of the false god "Baal-zebub" of Ekron.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Ekron](../names/ekron.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 11:15
* Mark 03:22
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 12:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G954

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beelzebul, Beelzebul's

### Bethany

#### Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

* Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
* Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
* Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(See also: [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Lazarus](../names/lazarus.md), [Martha](../names/martha.md), [Mary (sister of Martha)](../names/marysisterofmartha.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 01:26-28
* Luke 24:50-51
* Mark 11:01
* Matthew 21:15-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G963

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethany

### Bethlehem

#### Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

* Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
* The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
* Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
* The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: [Caleb](../names/caleb.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Micah](../names/micah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:16
* John 07:42
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 02:16
* Ruth 01:02
* Ruth 01:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H672, H1035, G965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethlehem

### Boaz

#### Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who was the husband of Ruth, the great grandfather of King David, and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

* Boaz lived during the time when there were judges in Israel.
* He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
* Boaz "redeemed" Naomi's widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.
* He is seen as a picture of how Jesus rescued and redeemed us from sin.

(See also: [Moab](../names/moab.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md), [Ruth](../names/ruth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:12
* 2 Chronicles 03:17
* Luke 03:30-32
* Matthew 01:05
* Ruth 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1162

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Boaz, Boaz's

### Caesar

#### Related Words:

the emperor

#### Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

* The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
* About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
* Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
* When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
* When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
* In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.
* An emperor is the ruler of an empire.

(See also: [king](../other/king.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:06
* Luke 02:01
* Luke 20:23-24
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:17
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2541, G4575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caesar, Caesar's, the emperor

### Caiaphas

#### Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

* Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
* The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
* Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(See also: [Annas](../names/annas.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:5-7
* John 18:12
* Luke 03:02
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:57-58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2533

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caiaphas, Caiaphas'

### Cain

#### Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

* Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
* Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
* As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
* God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Genesis 04:02
* Genesis 04:09
* Genesis 04:15
* Hebrews 11:4
* Jude 01:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7014, G2535

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cain, Cain's

### Capernaum

#### Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

* Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
* Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
* Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
* Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(See also: [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:12
* Luke 04:31
* Luke 07:1
* Mark 01:21
* Mark 02:02
* Matthew 04:12-13
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2584

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Capernaum

### Christ

#### Related Ideas:

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

#### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

* Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
* In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
* Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
* Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
* The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
* For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
* This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
* Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
* The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
* Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
* Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [anoint](../kt/anoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:1-3
* Acts 02:35
* Acts 05:40-42
* John 01:40-42
* John 03:27-28
* John 04:25
* Luke 02:10-12
* Matthew 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

### Cyrene

#### Related Ideas:

Cyrenian

#### Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

* In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
* Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(See also: [Crete](../names/crete.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 11:19-21
* Matthew 27:32-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2956, G2957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Cyrene, Cyrenians

### David

#### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

* When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
* David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
* King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
* David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
* Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 17:12-13
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Samuel 05:02
* 2 Timothy 02:08
* Acts 02:25
* Acts 13:22
* Luke 01:32
* Mark 02:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, G1138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

### Eliakim

#### Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
* Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
* Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(See also: [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Jehoiakim](../names/jehoiakim.md), [Josiah](../names/josiah.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:18
* 2 Kings 18:26
* 2 Kings 18:37
* 2 Kings 23:34-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H471, G1662

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eliakim, Eliakim's

### Elijah

#### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

* God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
* Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
* He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
* At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
* Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 17:1
* 2 Kings 01:3-4
* James 05:16-18
* John 01:19-21
* John 01:24-25
* Mark 09:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H452, G2243

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elijah, Elijah's

### Elisha

#### Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

* God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
* When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
* Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(See also: [Elijah](../names/elijah.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 19:15-16
* 2 Kings 03:15
* 2 Kings 05:08
* Luke 04:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H477

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elisha, Elisha's

### Elizabeth

#### Facts:

Elizabeth was the mother of John the Baptist. Her husband's name was Zechariah.

* Zechariah and Elizabeth had never been able to have children, but in their old age, God promised Zechariah that Elizabeth would bear him a son.
* God kept his promise, and soon Zechariah and Elizabeth were able to conceive, and she gave birth to a son. They named the baby John.
* Elizabeth was also a relative of Mary, Jesus' mother.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:05
* Luke 01:24-25
* Luke 01:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1665

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Elizabeth, Elizabeth's

### Enoch

#### Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

* One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
* This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
* A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [Seth](../names/seth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:03
* Genesis 05:18-20
* Genesis 05:24
* Jude 01:14
* Luke 03:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2585, G1802

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Enoch, Enoch's

### Eve

#### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

* God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
* Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
* Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:13
* 2 Corinthians 11:03
* Genesis 03:20
* Genesis 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2332, G2096

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

### Gabriel

#### Facts:

Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

* God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
* Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a "man."
* In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
* Sixth months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the "Son of God." Gabriel told Mary to name her son "Jesus."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [Elizabeth](../names/elizabeth.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 08:15-17
* Daniel 09:21
* Luke 01:19
* Luke 01:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1403, G1043

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gabriel, Gabriel's

### Galilee

#### Related Words:

Galilean

#### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

* Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
* Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
* Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
* Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](../names/nazareth.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:32
* Acts 13:31
* John 02:1-2
* John 04:03
* Luke 13:03
* Mark 03:07
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galilee, Galilean, Galileans

### Gentile

#### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

* In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
* Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
* The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
* Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
* Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 14:5-7
* Galatians 02:16
* Luke 02:32
* Matthew 05:47
* Matthew 06:5-7
* Romans 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

### God

#### Related Ideas:

the living God

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

* God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
* He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
* God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
* He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
* People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
* God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
* The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
* Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
* Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
* Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
* Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
* The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 10:7-8
* 1 Timothy 04:10
* Colossians 01:16
* Deuteronomy 29:14-16
* Ezra 03:1-2
* Genesis 01:02
* Hosea 04:11-12
* Isaiah 36:6-7
* James 02:20
* Jeremiah 05:05
* John 01:03
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Lamentations 03:43
* Micah 04:05
* Philippians 02:06
* Proverbs 24:12
* Psalms 047:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

### Greek

#### Related Words:

Grecian

#### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

* Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
* The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
* Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
* When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greece](../names/greece.md), [Hebrew](../kt/hebrew.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:29
* Acts 11:20
* Acts 14:1-2
* Colossians 03:11
* Galatians 02:3-5
* John 07:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

### Hades

#### Related Ideas:

Sheol

#### Definition:

The terms "Hades" and "Sheol" are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

* The Hebrew term "Sheol" is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
* In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going "down" to Hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going "up" to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
* The term "Hades" is coupled with the term "death" in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and Hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The Old Testament term "Sheol" could be translated as "place of the dead" or "place for dead souls." Some translations translate this as "the pit" or "death," depending on the context.
* The New Testament term "Hades" could also be translated as "place for unbelieving dead souls" or "place of torment for the dead" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
* Some translations keep the words "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation.
* A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [tomb](../other/tomb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:31
* Genesis 44:29
* Jonah 02:02
* Luke 10:15
* Luke 16:23
* Matthew 11:23
* Matthew 16:18
* Revelation 01:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7585, G86

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hades, Sheol

### Herodias

#### Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

* Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas' brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
* John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(See also: [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:19
* Mark 06:17
* Mark 06:22
* Matthew 14:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Herodias, Herodias'

### Holy One

#### Related Ideas:

holy one

#### Definition:

The term "Holy One" is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

* In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase "Holy One of Israel."
* In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the "Holy One."
* The term "holy one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal term is "the Holy" (with "One" being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as "One" or "God").
* This term could also be translated as "God, who is holy" or "the Set Apart One."
* The phrase "the Holy One of Israel" could be translated as "the Holy God whom Israel worships" or "the Holy One who rules Israel."
* It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate "holy."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [God](../kt/god.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 2 Kings 19:22
* Acts 02:27
* Acts 03:13-14
* Isaiah 05:15-17
* Isaiah 41:14
* Luke 04:33-34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6918, G40, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy One, holy ones

### Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

#### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

* The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
* Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
* Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
* When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
* The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
* Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
* Acts 08:17
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 01:1-2
* Isaiah 63:10
* Job 33:04
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 28:18-19
* Psalms 051:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

### Isaac

#### Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

* The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
* But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
* God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
* When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
* Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [eternity](../kt/eternity.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:28-29
* Genesis 25:9-11
* Genesis 25:19
* Genesis 26:1
* Genesis 26:08
* Genesis 28:1-2
* Genesis 31:18
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaac, Isaac's

### Isaiah

#### Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

* He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
* The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
* Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
* Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
* Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(See also: [Ahaz](../names/ahaz.md), [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Hezekiah](../names/hezekiah.md), [Jotham](../names/jotham.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Uzziah](../names/uzziah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:1-3
* Acts 28:26
* Isaiah 01:1
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 01:01
* Mark 07:06
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 04:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3470, G2268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Isaiah, Isaiah's

### Israel

#### Related Ideas:

Israelite

#### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

* The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
* God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
* The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
* Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
* Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:01
* 1 Kings 08:02
* Acts 02:36
* Acts 07:24
* Acts 13:23
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 24:21
* Mark 12:29
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 27:09
* Philippians 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

### Jacob

#### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

* Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
* Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
* Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
* Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
* Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
* A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [Esau](../names/esau.md), [Isaac](../names/isaac.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:11
* Acts 07:46
* Genesis 25:26
* Genesis 29:1-3
* Genesis 32:1-2
* John 04:4-5
* Matthew 08:11-13
* Matthew 22:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3290, G2384

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jacob, Jacob's

### James son of Alphaeus

#### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve disciples. Jesus also called these men apostles.

* His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
* He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Mark 14:32-34
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2385

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

James son of Alphaeus

### Jericho

#### Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

* As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
* Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
* When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:78
* Joshua 02:1-3
* Joshua 07:2-3
* Luke 18:35
* Mark 10:46-48
* Matthew 20:29-31
* Numbers 22:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3405, G2410

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jericho, Jericho's

### Jerusalem

#### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

* The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
* Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
* It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
* Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
* People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jebusites](../names/jebusites.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26-27
* John 02:13
* Luke 04:9-11
* Luke 13:05
* Mark 03:7-8
* Mark 03:20-22
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

### Jesse

#### Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

* Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
* He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
* The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(See also: [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Boaz](../names/boaz.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [king](../other/king.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Ruth](../names/ruth.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:12
* 1 Kings 12:16
* 1 Samuel 16:1
* Luke 03:32
* Matthew 01:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3448, G2421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesse, Jesse's

### Jesus

#### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

#### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

* In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
* Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
* Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:11
* 1 John 02:02
* 1 John 04:15
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* 2 Peter 01:02
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* 2 Timothy 01:10
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 05:30
* Acts 10:36
* Hebrews 09:14
* Hebrews 10:22
* Luke 24:20
* Matthew 01:21
* Matthew 04:03
* Philippians 02:05
* Philippians 02:10
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

### Jew

#### Related Ideas:

Jewish, person of Judah

#### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

* People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
* Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
* Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:05
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 14:5-7
* Colossians 03:11
* John 02:14
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jew, Jewish, Jews, Jews', a person of Judah, the language of Judah, the people of Judah

### John the Baptist

#### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

* John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
* John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
* John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
* John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(See also: [baptize](../kt/baptize.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:11-13
* Luke 01:62-63
* Luke 03:7
* Luke 03:15-16
* Luke 07:27-28
* Matthew 03:13
* Matthew 11:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G910 G2491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

John the Baptist, Baptist, John the Baptist, John's

### Jonah

#### Facts:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

* The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
* Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
* God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
* He told the men sailing the ship that he wasrunning away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did the storm stopped.
* Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
* After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and they turned from their sins.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Nineveh](../names/nineveh.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jonah 01:03
* Luke 11:30
* Matthew 12:39
* Matthew 16:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3124, G2495

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jonah, Jonah's

### Jordan River

#### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

* Today, the Jordan River separates the countries of Israel and Jordan. Israel is on the west side of the river, and Jordan is on the east side of the river.
* The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
* When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
* Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md), [Sea of Galilee](../names/seaofgalilee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 32:9-10
* John 01:26-28
* John 03:25-26
* Luke 03:3
* Matthew 03:06
* Matthew 03:13-15
* Matthew 04:14-16
* Matthew 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3383, G2446

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jordan River, Jordan

### Joshua

#### Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

* Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
* Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
* Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
* In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
* The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
* Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
* There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Haggai](../names/haggai.md), [Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
* Deuteronomy 03:21
* Exodus 17:10
* Joshua 01:03
* Numbers 27:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1954, H3091, G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joshua, Joshua's

### Judah

#### Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

* It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
* King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
* When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
* The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(See also: [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 01:09
* Genesis 29:35
* Genesis 38:02
* Luke 03:33
* Ruth 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3061, H3063

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, Judah's

### Judah

#### Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

* After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
* The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
* Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
* Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Salt Sea](../names/saltsea.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 30:26-28
* 2 Samuel 12:08
* Hosea 05:14
* Jeremiah 07:33
* Judges 01:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4438, H3063, G2455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, kingdom of Judah, language of Judah

### Judas Iscariot

#### Related Words

Judas son of Simon Iscariot

#### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

* The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
* Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
* Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
* After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
* Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [betray](../other/betray.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Judas the son of James](../names/judassonofjames.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 06:14-16
* Luke 22:47-48
* Mark 03:19
* Mark 14:10-11
* Matthew 26:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2455, G2469

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judas ... Iscariot

### Judas son of James

#### Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

* Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
* Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
* The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
* It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* Luke 06:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judas son of James

### Judea

#### Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

* Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
* Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
* If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(See also: [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Edom](../names/edom.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14
* Acts 02:09
* Acts 09:32
* Acts 12:19
* John 03:22-24
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 04:44
* Luke 05:17
* Mark 10:1-4
* Matthew 02:01
* Matthew 02:05
* Matthew 02:22-23
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 19:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judea

### King of the Jews

#### Definition:

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

* The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
* The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
* Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
* Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
* Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [wise men](../other/wisemen.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 23:03
* Luke 23:38
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 27:11
* Matthew 27:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G935, G2453

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

King of the Jews, king of the Jews

### Lamech

#### Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

* The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
* The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(See also: [Cain](../names/cain.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Seth](../names/seth.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 04:18-19
* Genesis 04:24
* Genesis 05:25
* Genesis 05:29
* Genesis 05:31
* Luke 03:36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3929, G2984

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamech, Lamech's

### Lazarus

#### Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

* Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.
* The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
* Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was named "Lazarus."

(See also: [beg](../other/beg.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Martha](../names/martha.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 11:11
* John 12:1-3
* Luke 16:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2976

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lazarus, Lazarus'

### Levi

#### Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

* The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
* All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
* The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
* Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
* Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](../names/matthew.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
* 1 Kings 08:3-5
* Acts 04:36-37
* Genesis 29:34
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

### Lot

#### Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

* He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
* Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
* Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
* When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
* The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Ammon](../names/ammon.md), [Haran](../names/haran.md), [Moab](../names/moab.md), [Sodom](../names/sodom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Genesis 11:27-28
* Genesis 12:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3876, G3091

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lot, Lot's

### Luke

#### Facts:

Luke wrote two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

* In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
* It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile who came to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
* Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
* In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(See also: [Antioch](../names/antioch.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Philemon 01:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3065

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Luke, Luke's

### Martha

#### Facts:

Martha was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

* Martha had a sister named Mary and a brother named Lazarus, who also followed Jesus.
* One time when Jesus was visiting them in their home, Martha was distracted by meal preparation while her sister Mary sat and listened to Jesus teach.
* When Lazarus died, Martha told Jesus that she believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God.

(See also: [Lazarus](../names/lazarus.md), [Mary (sister of Martha)](../names/marysisterofmartha.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 11:02
* John 12:1-3
* Luke 10:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3136

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Martha, Martha's

### Mary

#### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

* The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
* An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
* Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
* Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
* Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
* Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
* When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
* The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(See also: [Cana](../names/cana.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Herod the Great](../names/herodthegreat.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [virgin](../other/virgin.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 02:04
* John 02:12
* Luke 01:29
* Luke 01:35
* Mark 06:03
* Matthew 01:16
* Matthew 01:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Mary Magdalene

#### Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

* Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
* She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
* As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 08:1-3
* Luke 24:8-10
* Mark 15:39-41
* Matthew 27:54-56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3094, G3137

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mary ... Magdalene

### Matthew

#### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi son of Alphaeus.

* Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
* Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
* There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Levite](../names/levite.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:27
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 02:14
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 09:09
* Matthew 10:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3017, G3156

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Matthew, Levi

### Moses

#### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

* When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
* God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
* After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
* Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:21
* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:10
* Exodus 09:01
* Matthew 17:04
* Romans 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

### Most High

#### Facts:

The term "Most High" is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

* The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of "Sovereign" or "Supreme."
* The word "high" in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can also be translated as "Most High God" or "Most Supreme being" or "God Most High" or "Greatest One" or "Supreme One" or "God, who is Greater than all."
* If a word like "high" is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Acts 16:16-18
* Daniel 04:17-18
* Deuteronomy 32:7-8
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Hebrews 07:1-3
* Hosea 07:16
* Lamentations 03:35
* Luke 01:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5945, G5310

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Most High

### Mount of Olives

#### Facts:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

* In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as "the mountain that is east of Jerusalem."
* The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
* Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
* This could also be translated as "Olive Hill" or "Olive Tree Mountain."

(See also: [Gethsemane](../names/gethsemane.md), [olive](../other/olive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 19:29
* Luke 19:37
* Mark 13:03
* Matthew 21:1-3
* Matthew 24:3-5
* Matthew 26:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2132, G3735, G1636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mount of Olives, mountain that is called Olives

### Naaman

#### Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

* Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
* A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
* Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
* As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
* Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Jordan River](../names/jordanriver.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:6-7
* 2 Kings 05:01
* Luke 04:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5283, G3497

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Naaman, Naaman's

### Nahor

#### Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

* Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
* The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Rebekah](../names/rebekah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
* Genesis 31:53
* Joshua 24:02
* Luke 03:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5152, G3493

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nahor, Nahor's

### Nahum

#### Facts:

Nahum was a prophet who preached during the time when the evil King Manasseh was ruling over Judah.

* Nahum was from the town of Elkosh, which was about 20 miles from Jerusalem.
* The Old Testament book of Nahum records his prophecies about the destruction of the Assyrian city of Nineveh.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Manasseh](../names/manasseh.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Nineveh](../names/nineveh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Nahum 01:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5151, G3486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nahum, Nahum's

### Nathan

#### Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

* God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
* Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
* David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Uriah](../names/uriah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:29
* 2 Samuel 12:1-3
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5416, G3481

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nathan, Nathan's

### Nazareth

#### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it took about three to five days to travel on foot.

* Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
* Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
* Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareths synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
* The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Joseph (NT)](../names/josephnt.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:9-11
* John 01:43-45
* Luke 01:26-29
* Mark 16:5-7
* Matthew 02:23
* Matthew 21:9-11
* Matthew 26:71-72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nazareth, Nazarene

### Nineveh

#### Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyria. A "Ninevite" was a person who lived in Nineveh.

* God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people repented and God did not destroy them.
* The Assyrians later stopped serving God. They conquered the kingdom of Israel and carried the people away to Nineveh.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Jonah](../names/jonah.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:11-14
* Jonah 01:03
* Jonah 03:03
* Luke 11:32
* Matthew 12:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5210, G3535, G3536

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Nineveh, Ninevite, Ninevites

### Noah

#### Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

* Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
* When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
* Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
* Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ark](../kt/ark.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:30-31
* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:08
* Genesis 08:01
* Hebrews 11:7
* Matthew 24:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5146, G3575

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Noah, Noah's

### Passover

#### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

* The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
* The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
* God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
* It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:07
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* 2 Kings 23:23
* Deuteronomy 16:02
* Exodus 12:26-28
* Ezra 06:21-22
* John 13:01
* Joshua 05:10-11
* Leviticus 23:4-6
* Numbers 09:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6453, G3957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Passover

### Peter

#### Related Words:

Cephas, Simon

#### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

* Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
* Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
* God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
* Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:25
* Galatians 02:6-8
* Galatians 02:12
* Luke 22:58
* Mark 03:16
* Matthew 04:18-20
* Matthew 08:14
* Matthew 14:30
* Matthew 26:33-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas, Simon son of Jonah, Simon, Simon's

### Pharisee

#### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

* Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
* Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
* They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
* The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
* The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](../other/council.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Sadducee](../kt/sadducee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:04
* John 03:1-2
* Luke 11:44
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 05:20
* Matthew 09:11
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:38
* Philippians 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5330

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharisee, Pharisees

### Philip

#### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

* God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
* Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
* Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philiptheapostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 08:06
* Acts 08:13
* Acts 08:31
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 08:40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the evangelist

### Philip

#### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

* Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
* Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
* At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
* Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(See also: [Philip](../names/philip.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:14
* John 01:44
* John 06:06
* Luke 06:14
* Mark 03:17-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philip, Philip the apostle, the apostle Philip

### Pilate

#### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

* Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
* The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
* Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:27-28
* Acts 13:28
* Luke 23:02
* Mark 15:02
* Matthew 27:13
* Matthew 27:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4091, G4194

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pilate, Pontius Pilate

### Sabbath

#### Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

* After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
* The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
* Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
* Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
* Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
* Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [rest](../other/rest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
* Acts 13:26-27
* Exodus 31:14
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Lamentations 02:06
* Leviticus 19:03
* Luke 13:14
* Mark 02:27
* Matthew 12:02
* Nehemiah 10:32-33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sabbath, Sabbaths

### Sadducee

#### Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

* Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
* The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
* The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
* Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [council](../other/council.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [hypocrite](../kt/hypocrite.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:03
* Acts 05:17-18
* Luke 20:27
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4523

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sadducee, Sadducees

### Samaria

#### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The Plain of Sharon is west of this region, and the Jordan River is east of this region. The people of Samaria were called Samaritans.

* In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
* When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
* The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
* Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
* The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
* In New Testament times, the region of Galilee was north of Samaria, and the region of Judea was south of Samaria.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Galilee](../names/galilee.md), [Judea](../names/judea.md), [Sharon](../names/sharon.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:1-3
* Acts 08:05
* John 04:4-5
* Luke 09:51-53
* Luke 10:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samaria, Samaria's, Samaritan, Samaritans

### Satan

#### Related Ideas:

devil, evil one

#### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

* The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
* Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
* God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
* The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
* The word "devil" means "accuser."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
* "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
* These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
* Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:08
* 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
* 1 Timothy 05:15
* Acts 13:10
* Job 01:08
* Mark 08:33
* Zechariah 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7854, G1140, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Satan, devil, devil's, evil one

### Savior

#### Definitions:

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

* In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
* In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
* Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 04:10
* 2 Peter 02:20
* Acts 05:29-32
* Isaiah 60:15-16
* Luke 01:47
* Psalms 106:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3467, G4990

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Savior, savior

### Seth

#### Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

* Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
* Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
* Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(See also: [Abel](../names/abel.md), [Cain](../names/cain.md), [call](../kt/call.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:01
* Luke 03:36-38
* Numbers 24:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8352, G4589

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Seth, Seth's

### Shem

#### Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

* Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
* The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
* The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Arabia](../names/arabia.md), [ark](../kt/ark.md), [flood](../other/flood.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 05:32
* Genesis 06:10
* Genesis 07:13-14
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 10:31
* Genesis 11:10
* Luke 03:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8035, G4590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shem, Shem's

### Sidon

#### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

* The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
* The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
* In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Tyre](../names/tyre.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Acts 27:3-6
* Genesis 10:15-18
* Genesis 10:19
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sidon, Sidonians

### Simeon

#### Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

* In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel. They were the Simeonites.
* The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
* When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [dedicate](../other/dedicate.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 29:33
* Genesis 34:25
* Genesis 42:35-36
* Genesis 43:21-23
* Luke 02:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Simeon, Simeon's, Simeonites

### Sodom

#### Facts:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

* The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
* The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
* The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Gomorrah](../names/gomorrah.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 10:19
* Genesis 13:12
* Matthew 10:15
* Matthew 11:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5467, G4670

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Sodom

### Solomon

#### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

* When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
* Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
* Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
* Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(See also: [Bathsheba](../names/bathsheba.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:47-50
* Luke 12:27
* Matthew 01:7-8
* Matthew 06:29
* Matthew 12:42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8010, G4672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Solomon, Solomon's, King Solomon, King Solomon's

### Son of God

#### Related Ideas:

the Son

#### Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

* Unlike anyone else, God the Father, the Son of God, and the Holy Spirit are all one God.
* God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all fully and equally God.
* The Son of God has the same character as God the Father.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
* Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
* Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
* The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:10
* Acts 09:20
* Colossians 01:17
* Galatians 02:20
* Hebrews 04:14
* John 03:18
* Luke 10:22
* Matthew 11:27
* Revelation 02:18
* Romans 08:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of God, the Son

### Son of Man

#### Related Ideas:

mankind, son of man

#### Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

* In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
* Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
* The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
* Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
* These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
* Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
* Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
* When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:56
* Daniel 07:14
* Ezekiel 43:6-8
* John 03:12-13
* Luke 06:05
* Mark 02:10
* Matthew 13:37
* Psalms 080:17-18
* Revelation 14:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Son of Man, mankind, son of man

### Syria

#### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

* In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
* Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
* Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
* Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
* Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [commander](../other/commander.md), [Damascus](../names/damascus.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:23
* Acts 15:41
* Acts 20:03
* Galatians 01:21-24
* Matthew 04:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H758, G4947, G4948

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Syria, Syrian

### Terah

#### Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

* Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
* On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Haran](../names/haran.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [Mesopotamia](../names/mesopotamia.md), [Nahor](../names/nahor.md), [Sarah](../names/sarah.md), [Shem](../names/shem.md), [Ur](../names/ur.md))

#### Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

* 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
* Luke 03:33-35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8646, G2291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Terah, Terah's

### Thomas

#### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

* Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
* After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:12-14
* John 11:15-16
* Luke 06:14-16
* Mark 03:17-19
* Matthew 10:2-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2381

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thomas, Thomas'

### Tyre

#### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

* Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
* Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
* King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
* Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
* Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Phoenicia](../names/phonecia.md), [Sidon](../names/sidon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:20
* Mark 03:7-8
* Matthew 11:22
* Matthew 15:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tyre, Tyrians

### Zacchaeus

#### Facts:

Zacchaeus was a tax collector from Jericho who climbed a tree in order to be able to see Jesus who was surrounded by a large crowd of people.

* Zacchaeus was completely changed when he believed in Jesus.
* He repented of his sin of cheating people and promised to give half his possessions to the poor.
* He also promised that he would pay people back four times the amount that he had overcharged them for their taxes.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [tax](../other/tax.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 19:02
* Luke 19:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zacchaeus, Zacchaeus'

### Zebedee

#### Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

* Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
* James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [fishermen](../other/fisherman.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [John (the apostle)](../names/johntheapostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 21:1-3
* Luke 05:8-11
* Mark 01:19-20
* Matthew 04:21-22
* Matthew 20:20
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zebedee, Zebedee's

### Zerubbabel

#### Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

* One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
* A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
* Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [Cyrus](../names/cyrus.md), [Ezra](../names/ezra.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Jehoiakim](../names/jehoiakim.md), [Joshua](../names/joshua.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Nehemiah](../names/nehemiah.md), [Persia](../names/persia.md), [Zedekiah](../names/zedekiah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
* Ezra 02:1-2
* Ezra 03:8-9
* Luke 03:27-29
* Matthew 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Zerubbabel, Zerubbabel's

### abyss

#### Related Ideas:

bottomless pit

#### Definition:

The term "abyss" refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

* In the Bible, "the abyss" is a place of punishment.
* For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
* The word "abyss" could also be translated as "bottomless pit" or "deep chasm."
* This term should be translated differently from "hades," "sheol," or "hell."

(See Also: [Hades](../kt/hades.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 08:30-31
* Romans 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G12, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abyss, bottomless pit

### accuse

#### Related Ideas:

accusation, accuser

#### Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

* A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
* In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 19:40
* Hosea 04:04
* Jeremiah 02:9-11
* Luke 06:6-8
* Romans 08:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2778, H3198, H6818, G1458, G2649, G2723, G2724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accusation, accusations, accuse, accused, accuser, accusers, accuses, accusing

### adultery

#### Related Ideas:

adulterer, adulteress, adulterous, immoral woman

#### Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

* The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
* Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
* Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
* God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
* The term "adulterous" is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
* Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife."
* When "adulterous" is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God's view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of "adulterous" could be translated as "unfaithful" or "immoral" or "like an unfaithful spouse."

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [sexual immorality](../other/fornication.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 20:14
* Hosea 04:1-2
* Luke 16:18
* Matthew 05:28
* Matthew 12:39
* Revelation 02:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2114, H5003, H5004, H5237, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adulterer, adulterers, adulteress, adulteresses, adulteries, adulterous, adultery, immoral woman

### adversary

#### Related Ideas:

enemy, hostile, hostility, opponent, oppose, opposition

#### Definition:

An "adversary" is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

* Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
* When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
* In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
* Adversary may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.
* Someone who is "hostile" wants to fight other people. Such a person has "hostile intent" or acts with "hostility."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:14
* Isaiah 09:11
* Job 06:23
* Lamentations 04:12
* Luke 12:59
* Matthew 13:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H340, H341, H6146, H6862, H6887, H6965, H7379, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G485, G498, G2189, G2190, G5227

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adversaries, adversary, enemies, enemies', enemy, enemy's, hostile, hostilities, hostility, opponent, opponents, oppose, opposed, opposes, opposition

### afflict

#### Related Ideas:

affliction, difficulty

#### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

* God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
* God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
* To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
* In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
* A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
* When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
* Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
* The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [plague](../other/plague.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:06
* Amos 05:12
* Colossians 01:24
* Exodus 22:22-24
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 29:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### alms

#### Related Ideas:

merciful deeds for the poor

#### Definition:

The term "alms" refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

* Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
* Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
* This term could be translated as "money" or "gifts to poor people" or "help for the poor."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:1-3
* Matthew 06:01
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1654

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alms, merciful deeds ... for the poor

### altar

#### Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

* During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
* Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
* Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](../other/altarofincense.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [grain offering](../other/grainoffering.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:20
* Genesis 22:09
* James 02:21
* Luke 11:49-51
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar, altars

### amazed

#### Related Ideas:

amazement, appalled, astonished, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marvelous, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful

#### Definition:

Some of these terms mean to be very surprised because of something very unusual that happened. Many of these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened. Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.

* The words "amazed," "astonished," and "astounded" describe someone who is very surprised because of something very unusual that happened.
* The word "appalled" describes someone who is amazed or horrified by something that is bad or evil.
* The word "perplexed" describes someone who is to be amazed and troubled, not knowing what to think or how to act.
* People "marvel" and "wonder" when they are surprised by something very unusual.
* "Amazement" and "wonder" are what people feel when they are amazed.

Some of these terms describe things that are very unusual and surprise people.

* The words "amazing", "astonishing," "marvelous," "remarkable," and "wonderful" describe things that are very unusual and surprise people.
* The word "appalling" describes something that is very bad and causes people to be amazed or horrified.
* The word "incomprehensible" describes something that is so great that people cannot ever understand it.
* A "wonder" is an extraordinary and surprising thing that happens.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
* Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:9-11
* Acts 09:20-22
* Galatians 01:06
* Mark 02:10-12
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 15:29-31
* Matthew 19:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H943, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8047, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1411, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

amazed, amazement, amazing events, amazing things, appalled, appalling, astonish, astonished, astonishing, astounded, incomprehensible, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, marvelous things, perplexed, remarkable, surprised, wonder, wonderful, wondering, wonders

### angel

#### Related Ideas:

archangel

#### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

* The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
* The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
* In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
* Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
* Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
* Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
* A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
* The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
* Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
* The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [head](../other/head.md), [messenger](../other/messenger.md), [Michael](../names/michael.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 12:23
* Colossians 02:18-19
* Genesis 48:16
* Luke 02:13
* Mark 08:38
* Matthew 13:50
* Revelation 01:20
* Zechariah 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### anger

#### Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

#### Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

* When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
* God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
* The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
* A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
* To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](../kt/wrath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 04:26
* Exodus 32:11
* Isaiah 57:16-17
* John 06:52-53
* Mark 10:14
* Matthew 26:08
* Psalms 018:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

### anguish

#### Related Ideas:

anxious, pain

#### Definition:

The term "anguish" refers to severe pain or distress.

* Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
* Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
* For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
* The term "anguish" could also be translated as "emotional distress" or "deep sorrow" or "severe pain."

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 06:24
* Jeremiah 19:09
* Job 15:24
* Luke 16:24
* Psalms 116:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2342, H2470, H2479, H3510, H3708, H4164, H4689, H4691, H5100, H6695, H6862, H6869, H7267, H7581, G928, G3600, G4928

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anguish, inflicts pain, pain, severe pain

### anoint

#### Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

#### Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

* In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
* Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
* In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
* The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
* After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
* The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
* To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
* In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
* A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [King of the Jews](../kt/kingofthejews.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md) )

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:20
* 1 John 02:27
* 1 Samuel 16:2-3
* Acts 04:27-28
* Amos 06:5-6
* Exodus 29:5-7
* James 05:13-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

### apostle

#### Related Ideas:

apostleship

#### Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

* The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
* Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
* By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
* It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
* Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jude 01:17-19
* Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

* To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
* The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
* The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
* To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
* The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
* The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:11
* Acts 03:20
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 13:48
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [basket](../other/basket.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### armor

#### Related Ideas:

armory, body armor, weapon

#### Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

* Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
* Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
* The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
* This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: [faith](../kt/faith.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [peace](../other/peace.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 31:9-10
* 2 Samuel 20:8
* Ephesians 06:11
* Jeremiah 51:3-4
* Luke 11:22
* Nehemiah 04:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, H8302, G3696, G3833

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

armor, armory, body armor, weapon, weapons

### ash

#### Related Ideas:

powder

#### Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

* In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
* An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
* In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
* When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
* Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
* Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
* When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
* Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](../other/fire.md), [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:10
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Psalms 102:09
* Psalms 113:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

### asleep

#### Related Ideas:

sleep, sleeper

#### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

* To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
* The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
* To "sleep with one’s fathers" means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
* To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
* The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
* Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
* Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:27-29
* 1 Thessalonians 04:14
* Acts 07:60
* Daniel 12:02
* Psalms 044:23
* Romans 13:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

### authority

#### Related Ideas:

authority to judge, place in charge, put in charge, right

#### Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

* Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
* The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
* The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
* Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
* Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
* Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
* When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
* The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
* The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](../other/citizen.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:10
* Esther 09:29
* Genesis 41:35
* Jonah 03:6-7
* Luke 12:05
* Luke 20:1-2
* Mark 01:22
* Matthew 08:09
* Matthew 28:19
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2940, H4475, H4910, H4915, H6486, H6666, H6680, H7980, H7990, H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2525, G2715, G2917, G2963, G5247

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

authorities, authority, authority to judge, places ... in charge, put ... in charge, puts ... in charge, right, was ... in charge, were ... in charge

### ax

#### Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

* An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
* If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
* Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
* In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:7-8
* 2 Kings 06:05
* Judges 09:48-49
* Luke 03:9
* Matthew 03:10
* Psalm 035:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ax, axes

### banquet

#### Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

* In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
* This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 05:10
* Isaiah 05:11-12
* Jeremiah 16:08
* Luke 05:29-32
* Song of Solomon 02:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

banquet

### baptize

#### Related Ideas:

baptism

#### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

* Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
* The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
* Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
* The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
* When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:38
* Acts 08:36
* Acts 09:18
* Acts 10:48
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:14
* Matthew 28:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G907

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

baptism, baptize, baptized, baptizing

### barren

#### Related Ideas:

dried, faded, salt land, withered

#### Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

* Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
* A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
* When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."
* "Salt land" is barren because nothing can grow in salty soil.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:5
* Galatians 04:27
* Genesis 11:30
* Job 03:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H535, H1565, H2717, H3001, H4420, H5034, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barren, dried, dry, fade, fades, fading, salt land, wither, withered, withers

### basket

#### Related Ideas:

basketful, cage

#### Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

* In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
* A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
* When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
* The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."
* A "cage" is a container in which people keep animals.

(See also: [ark](../kt/ark.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:33
* Acts 09:25
* Amos 08:01
* John 06:13-15
* Judges 06:19-20
* Matthew 14:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H8392, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

basket, basketfuls, baskets, cage

### bear

#### Related Ideas:

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

#### Definitions:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

* When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
* To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
* To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
* A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
* The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
* The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
* In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](../other/burden.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md), [endure](../other/endure.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [report](../other/report.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [strength](../other/strength.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 03:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

### bear

#### Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

* These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
* In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
* While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
* Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Elisha](../names/elisha.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1677, G715

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bears

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### believe

#### Related Ideas:

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

#### Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

* believe
* To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
* To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
* To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
* believe in
* To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
* When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
* The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
* To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

* The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
* The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

* In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
* A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever":

* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:06
* Genesis 45:26
* Job 09:16-18
* Habakkuk 01:5-7
* Mark 06:4-6
* Mark 01:14-15
* Luke 09:41
* John 01:12
* Acts 06:05
* Acts 09:42
* Acts 28:23-24
* Romans 03:03
* 1 Corinthians 06:01
* 1 Corinthians 09:05
* 2 Corinthians 06:15
* Hebrews 03:12
* 1 John 03:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

### beloved

#### Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

#### Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

* The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
* God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
* In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
* Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
* In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
* Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:14
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 John 04:07
* Mark 01:11
* Mark 12:06
* Revelation 20:09
* Romans 16:08
* Song of Solomon 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

### betray

#### Related Ideas:

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

#### Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

* Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
* The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
* "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
* The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* John 06:64
* John 13:22
* Matthew 10:04
* Matthew 26:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

### blameless

#### Related Ideas:

blamelessly, faultless, without blame

#### Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

* Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
* A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
* According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:10
* 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
* 2 Peter 03:14
* Colossians 01:22
* Genesis 17:1-2
* Philippians 02:15
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1368, H2135, H2136, H8535, H8549, G273, G274, G298, G299, G410, G423, G677

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blameless, blamelessly, faultless, without blame

### bless

#### Related Ideas:

happier, happy

#### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

* Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
* In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
* When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
* The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
* "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
* "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
* "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
* Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
* In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 10:16
* Acts 13:34
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 14:20
* Isaiah 44:03
* James 01:25
* Luke 06:20
* Matthew 26:26
* Nehemiah 09:05
* Romans 04:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

### blood

#### Related Ideas:

bleeding

#### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

* Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
* When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
* Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
* The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
* The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
* Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
* If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](../kt/flesh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 14:32
* Acts 02:20
* Acts 05:28
* Colossians 01:20
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 04:11
* Psalms 016:4
* Psalms 105:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bleeding, blood

### body

#### Related Ideas:

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

#### Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

* Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
* When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
* In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
* Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
* When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
* When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
* Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](../other/head.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:12
* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* Ephesians 04:04
* Judges 14:08
* Numbers 06:6-8
* Psalm 031:09
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

### bow

#### Related Ideas:

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

#### Note

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](./bowweapon.md).

#### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

* Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
* Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
* Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
* Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
* In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
* The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
* The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
* Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](../kt/humble.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 05:18
* Exodus 20:05
* Genesis 24:26
* Genesis 44:14
* Isaiah 44:19
* Luke 24:05
* Matthew 02:11
* Revelation 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

### bread

#### Related Ideas:

food, loaf of bread

#### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

* When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
* Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
* Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.
* Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
* The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
* The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
* Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
* When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
* Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md), [yeast](../other/yeast.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:46
* Acts 27:35
* Exodus 16:15
* Luke 09:13
* Mark 06:38
* Matthew 04:04
* Matthew 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

### bride

#### Related Ideas:

bridal

#### Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

* The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
* Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church.

(See also: [bridegroom](../other/bridegroom.md), [church](../kt/church.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 22:16
* Isaiah 62:5
* Joel 02:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3618, G3565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridal, bride, brides

### bridegroom

#### Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

* In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
* In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
* Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](../other/bride.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 62:5
* Joel 02:15-16
* John 03:30
* Luke 05:35
* Mark 02:19
* Mark 02:20
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2860, G3566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridegroom, bridegrooms

### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

* In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
* In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
* A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
* In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
* If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
* Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
* Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [sister](../other/sister.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Genesis 29:10
* Leviticus 19:17
* Nehemiah 03:01
* Philippians 04:21
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

### burden

#### Related Ideas:

burdensome, heavy, load

#### Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

* A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
* A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
* A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
* The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
* The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God," usually an important or unpleasant one, that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
* The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
* Galatians 06:1-2
* Galatians 06:03
* Genesis 49:15
* Matthew 11:30
* Matthew 23:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H4931, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, H6231, G4, G916, G922, G1912, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burden, burdened, burdens, burdensome, heavy, load, loaded, loaded up, loads

### bury

#### Related Ideas:

burial

#### Definition:

The term "bury" usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term "burial" is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

* Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
* Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
* In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
* The terms "burial place" or "burial room" or "burial chamber" or "burial cave" are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
* Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
* The phrase "buried his face" usually means "covered his face with his hands."
* Sometimes the word "hide" can mean "bury" as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:[Jericho](../names/jericho.md), [tomb](../other/tomb.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 09:9-10
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Jeremiah 25:33
* Luke 16:22
* Matthew 27:07
* Psalm 079:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial, buried, buries, bury, burying

### call

#### Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

#### Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

* To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
* Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
* God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
* When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
* This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
* To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
* A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
* To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
* To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
* The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
* When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
* "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
* "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
* To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
* The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
* To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
* To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
* To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
* The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
* When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](../kt/pray.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:24
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 01:09
* Ephesians 04:01
* Galatians 01:15
* Matthew 02:15
* Philippians 03:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### camel

#### Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

* In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
* The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
* Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
* Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](../other/burden.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:21
* 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
* Exodus 09:1-4
* Mark 10:25
* Matthew 03:04
* Matthew 19:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1581, G2574

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

### captive

#### Related Ideas:

captivate, captivity, captor, capture, catch

#### Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

* The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
* Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
* Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
* The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
* The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
* In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
* He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.
* A "captor" is a person who captures another person or takes him captive.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
* The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
* The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
* Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [exile](../other/exile.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [seize](../other/seize.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 10:05
* Isaiah 20:04
* Jeremiah 43:03
* Luke 04:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H631, H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H3920, H3947, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221, G4084

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

captivate, captivated, captive, captives, captivity, captor, captors, capture, captured, captures, carried away captive, catch, caught, held captive, taken ... captive

### cast out

#### Related Ideas:

banish, cast off, compel to go, drive out, force out, outcast, put outside, throw out

#### Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

* The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
* In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.
* To "banish" someone is to force them to stay far away.
* An "outcast" is someone whom other people have rejected and forced him to go live somewhere else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
* To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."

(See also: [demon](../kt/demon.md), [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md), [lots](../other/lots.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:17-19
* Mark 03:13-16
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 12:24
* Matthew 17:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H5080, H7843, H7971, H7993, G1544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

banish, banished, cast ... off, cast ... out, casting out, compelled ... to go, drive, drive ... away, drive ... out, driven, driven ... away, driven ... out, drives ... away, drives ... out, driving ... out, drove ... out, force ... out, forced ... out, forcing ... out, outcast, outcasts, put ... outside, threw ... out, throw ... out, throwing out, thrown, thrown out

### census

#### Related Ideas:

register

#### Definition:

The term "census" refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

* The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
* Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
* For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
* When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Possible ways to translate this term could include, "name counting" or "list of names" or "enrollment."
* The phrase "take a census" could be translated as "register people's names" or "enroll people" or "write down people's names."

(See also: [nation](../other/nation.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:37
* Exodus 30:12
* Exodus 38:26
* Luke 02:03
* Numbers 04:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1538, H3789, H4662, H5674, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

census, register, registered

### centurion

#### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

* This could also be translated with a term that means, "leader of a hundred men" or "army leader" or "officer in charge of a hundred."
* One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
* The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
* God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 10:01
* Acts 27:01
* Acts 27:42-44
* Luke 07:04
* Luke 23:47
* Mark 15:39
* Matthew 08:07
* Matthew 27:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1543, G2760

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

centurion, centurions

### chaff

#### Related Ideas:

straw

#### Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food, so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

* Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called "winnowing."
* In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.
* "Straw" is the stalk of the grain left after the the seed has been taken away.

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md), [wheat](../other/wheat.md), [winnow](../other/winnow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 02:35
* Job 21:18
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chaff, straw

### chief

#### Related Ideas:

finest, first of all, important, prominent

#### Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

* Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
* It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
* When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:11-13
* Ezekiel 26:15-16
* Luke 19:02
* Psalm 004:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

### chief priests

#### Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

* The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
* They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
* The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 22:30
* Acts 26:12-14
* Luke 20:01
* Mark 08:31
* Matthew 16:21
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:59
* Matthew 27:41-42

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief priests

### children

#### Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant.

* The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child.
* The word "childless" describes a person who has no children.
* The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

* In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
* Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
* The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
* children of the light
* children of obedience
* children of the devil
* This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
* Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
* If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
* When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
* When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
* The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [beloved](../kt/beloved.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:28
* 3 John 01:04
* Galatians 04:19
* Genesis 45:11
* Joshua 08:34-35
* Nehemiah 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

child, childhood, childless, children

### circumcise

#### Related Ideas:

circumcision, uncircumcision

#### Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

* God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
* God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
* The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
* In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
* The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.

The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."

The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.

Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."

The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
* Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
* In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
* Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:11
* Genesis 17:14
* Exodus 12:48
* Leviticus 26:41
* Joshua 05:03
* Judges 15:18
* 2 Samuel 01:20
* Jeremiah 09:26
* Ezekiel 32:25
* Acts 10:44-45
* Acts 11:03
* Acts 15:01
* Acts 11:03
* Romans 02:27
* Galatians 05:03
* Ephesians 02:11
* Philippians 03:03
* Colossians 02:11
* Colossians 02:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### citizen

#### Related Ideas:

citizenship

#### Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

* Depending on the context, this could also be translated as "inhabitant" or "official resident."
* A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called "citizens" of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

( See: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 21:39-40
* Isaiah 03:03
* Luke 15:15
* Luke 19:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

citizen, citizens, citizenship

### city of David

#### Facts:

The term "city of David" can refer to the city of Jerusalem, part of Jerusalem, or Bethlehem.

* Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
* Bethlehem is where David was born.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [Bethlehem](../names/bethlehem.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 2 Samuel 05:6-7
* Isaiah 22:8-9
* Luke 02:04
* Nehemiah 03:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

city of David

### clean

#### Related Ideas:

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

#### Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

* "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
* In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
* A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
* Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

* God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
* People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
* If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
* Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
* This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
* In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean":

* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean""

* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](../other/defile.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 07:02
* Genesis 07:08
* Deuteronomy 12:15
* Psalms 051:07
* Proverbs 20:30
* Ezekiel 24:13
* Matthew 23:27
* Luke 05:13
* Acts 08:07
* Acts 10:27-29
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### clothed

#### Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

#### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

* In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
* To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
* This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
* All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
* If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
* The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

#### Bible References:

* Luke 24:49

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

### comfort

#### Related Ideas:

comforter, console, consolation

#### Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

* A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
* In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
* In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
* The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
* Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.
* To "appease" someone is to do something that causes that person to no longer be angry about the wrong that someone else has done to him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
* A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
* The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
* When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
* The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
* An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: [encourage](../other/courage.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
* 2 Corinthians 01:04
* 2 Samuel 10:1-3
* Acts 20:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

comfort, comforted, comforter, comforters, comforting, comforts, consolation, consolations, consoling, uncomforted

### command

#### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

#### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

* Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
* A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
* To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
* To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

#### Translation Suggestions

* It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
* Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
* Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](../other/decree.md), [statute](../other/statute.md), [law](../other/law.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:06
* Matthew 01:24
* Matthew 22:38
* Matthew 28:20
* Numbers 01:17-19
* Romans 07:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### commit

#### Related Ideas:

commitment

#### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

* A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
* To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
* To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
* To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
* The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
* The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
* The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 28:07
* 1 Peter 02:21-23
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Matthew 13:41
* Psalm 058:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

### compassion

#### Related Ideas:

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

#### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

* The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
* The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
* In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
* To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
* Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
* The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 01:8-10
* Hosea 13:14
* James 05:9-11
* Jonah 04:1-3
* Mark 01:41
* Romans 09:14-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

### conceive

#### Related Ideas:

conception

#### Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

* The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
* The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
* These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
* Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [womb](../other/womb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:1-4
* Hosea 02:4-5
* Job 15:35
* Luke 01:24-25
* Luke 02:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G2602, G2845, G4815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

conceive, conceived, conceives, conception

### condemn

#### Related Ideas:

condemnation, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

#### Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

* Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
* Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
* To "denounce" someone is to say that he is guilty of great evil.
* The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone. The word "judgment" means the same as "condemnation."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
* The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
* The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:20
* Job 09:29
* John 05:24
* Luke 06:37
* Matthew 12:07
* Proverbs 17:15-16
* Psalms 034:22
* Romans 05:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H6600, H7561, H8199, H8381, G843, G1349, H1882, G1935, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

condemn, condemnation, condemned, condemning, condemns, denounce, sentence, sentence of condemnation, sentenced to death

### confess

#### Related Ideas:

confession, profess

#### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

* The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
* The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
* James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
* Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
* Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: [faith](../kt/faith.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:8-10
* 2 John 01:7-8
* James 05:16
* Leviticus 05:5-6
* Matthew 03:4-6
* Nehemiah 01:6-7
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 038:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

confess, confessed, confesses, confessing, confession, profess

### contempt

#### Related Ideas:

contemptible, have no standing, insolence, not worth listening to

#### Definitions:

The term "contempt" refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called "contemptible."

* A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called "contemptible" and could be translated as "greatly disrespectful" or "completely dishonorable" or "deserving scorn."
* To "hold in contempt" means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
* The following expressions have a similar meaning: "have contempt for" or "show contempt for" or "be in contempt of" or "treat with contempt." These all mean to "strongly disrespect" or "strongly dishonor" something or someone by what is said and done.
* When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had "shown contempt for" God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 12:1-2
* Proverbs 15:5-6
* Psalms 031:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H959, H963, H1860, H2195, H2781, H7043, H7589, H5006, G1848

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

contempt, contemptible, have no standing, insolence, not worth listening to, showed ... contempt

### cornerstone

#### Definition:

The term "cornerstone" refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

* All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
* It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
* In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its "cornerstone."
* In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "cornerstone" could also be translated as "main building stone" or "foundation stone."
* Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
* Another way to translate this would be, "a foundation stone used for the corner of a building."
* It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means "large stone" (such as "boulder") but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:11
* Ephesians 02:20
* Matthew 21:42
* Psalms 118:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cornerstone, cornerstones

### courage

#### Related Ideas:

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

#### Definitions:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

* The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
* A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
* The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
* When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
* The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
* Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
* To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

* A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
* The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
* The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [exhort](../kt/exhort.md), [fear](../kt/fear.md), [strength](../other/strength.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:37-38
* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 1 Chronicles 17:25
* Matthew 09:20-22
* 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
* 2 Corinthians 07:13
* Acts 05:12-13
* Acts 16:40
* Hebrews 03:12-13
* Hebrews 13:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

### court

#### Related Ideas:

courtyard

#### Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

* The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
* The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
* These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
* The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
* The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
* Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
* The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
* The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [king](../other/king.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:4-5
* Exodus 27:09
* Jeremiah 19:14-15
* Luke 22:55
* Matthew 26:69-70
* Numbers 03:26
* Psalms 065:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

### covenant

#### Related Ideas:

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

#### Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

* This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
* When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
* Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
* Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
* In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
* In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

* God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
* This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
* The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
* God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
* The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."

Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."

Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."

The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:12
* Genesis 17:07
* Genesis 31:44
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Joshua 24:24-26
* 2 Samuel 23:5
* 2 Kings 18:11-12
* Mark 14:24
* Luke 01:73
* Luke 22:20
* Acts 07:08
* 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
* 2 Corinthians 03:06
* Galatians 03:17-18
* Hebrews 12:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

### cross

#### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

* During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
* Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
* Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
* Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
* Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:17
* Colossians 02:15
* Galatians 06:12
* John 19:18
* Luke 09:23
* Luke 23:26
* Matthew 10:38
* Philippians 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4716

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cross

### crucify

#### Related Ideas:

nail him to a cross

#### Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

* The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
* The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
* The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:23
* Galatians 02:20-21
* Luke 23:20-22
* Luke 23:34
* Matthew 20:17-19
* Matthew 27:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crucified, crucify, nailing ... to a cross

### cry

#### Related Ideas:

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

#### Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

* The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
* This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
* An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md), [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:09
* Mark 05:5-6
* Mark 06:48-50
* Psalm 022:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

### curse

#### Related Ideas:

accursed, speak evil

#### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

* A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
* To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
* It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
* In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
* The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
* The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
* The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
* "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
* However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 14:24-26
* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Galatians 03:10
* Galatians 03:14
* Genesis 03:14
* Genesis 03:17
* James 03:10
* Numbers 22:06
* Psalms 109:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

### curtain

#### Related Ideas:

covering, screen

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "curtain" refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

* The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
* Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of "linen" which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
* In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.
* The "screens" were curtains hung at the entrance to the courtyard of the tabernacle, at the entrance to the tabernacle, and in front of the ark of the covenant.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "curtain covering" or "covering" or "piece of thick cloth" or "animal skin covering" or "hanging piece of cloth."

(See also: [holy place](../kt/holyplace.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 10:20
* Leviticus 04:17
* Luke 23:45
* Matthew 27:51
* Numbers 04:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

covering, curtain, curtains, screen, screening

### cut off

#### Related Ideas:

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

#### Definition:

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

* In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
* God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

#### Picture of Cut Off From People:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/c/Cutofffrompeople.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
* Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
* In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 17:14
* Judges 21:06
* Proverbs 23:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

### darkness

#### Related Ideas:

dark, darken, gloom

#### Definition:

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

* As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
* It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
* The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
* The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
* People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
* God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
* The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
* The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
* For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [dominion](../kt/dominion.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [light](../other/light.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:06
* 1 John 02:08
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* 2 Samuel 22:12
* Colossians 01:13
* Isaiah 05:30
* Jeremiah 13:16
* Joshua 24:7
* Matthew 08:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [last day](../kt/lastday.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

* To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
* A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
* When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
* The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
* The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
* Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

* Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
* Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
* Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To translate the words "die," death," and dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when “death” refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
* In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
* The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
* The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:21
* 1 Thessalonians 4:17
* Acts 10:42
* Acts 14:19
* Colossians 2:15
* Colossians 2:20
* Genesis 2:15-17
* Genesis 34:27
* Matthew 16:28
* Romans 5:10
* Romans 5:12
* Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

### deceive

#### Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

#### Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

* The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
* A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
* The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
* To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
* To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
* To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
* To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as "lie to," "mislead," "trick," or "fool."
* "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
* Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
* The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 1:8
* 1 Timothy 2:14
* 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
* Genesis 3:12-13
* Genesis 31:26-28
* Leviticus 19:11-12
* Matthew 27:64
* Micah 6:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

### declare

#### Related Ideas:

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

#### Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

* A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
* For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
* Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
* In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
* The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
* The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
* The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
* The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
* The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 16:24
* 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
* 1 Samuel 24:17-18
* Amos 02:16
* Ezekiel 05:11-12
* Matthew 07:21-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

### decree

#### Related Ideas:

prohibition

#### Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

* God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
* Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
* An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
* To decree something, or to "issue a decree," means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
* Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."
* A "prohibition" is a decree that tells people that they cannot do something they would otherwise do.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [declare](../other/declare.md), [law](../other/law.md), [proclaim](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
* 1 Kings 08:57-58
* Acts 17:5-7
* Daniel 02:13
* Esther 01:22
* Luke 02:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3983, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6600, H6680, H7010, H7761, H8421, G1378, G3724

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

decree, decreed, decrees, prohibition

### deliver

#### Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

#### Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

* In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
* These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
* God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
* The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
* When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
* The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
* When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:10
* Acts 07:35
* Galatians 01:04
* Judges 10:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

### demon

#### Related Ideas:

demonic

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

* God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
* Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
* Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
* Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
* The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
* Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
* Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [demon-possessed](../kt/demonpossessed.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [angel](../kt/angel.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 02:19
* James 03:15
* Luke 04:36
* Mark 03:22
* Matthew 04:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demon, demonic, demons

### descendant

#### Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

#### Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

* For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
* A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
* A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:4-5
* Acts 13:23
* Deuteronomy 02:20-22
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 28:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

### desert

#### Related Ideas:

remote place, solitary place, wilderness

#### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

* A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
* Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
* "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
* This word can also be translated as "deserted place," "remote place," "solitary place," or "uninhabited place."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 13:16-18
* Acts 21:38
* Exodus 04:27-28
* Genesis 37:21-22
* John 03:14
* Luke 01:80
* Luke 09:12-14
* Mark 01:03
* Matthew 04:01
* Matthew 11:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desert, deserts, remote places, solitary place, wilderness, wildernesses

### desolate

#### Related Ideas:

alone, deserted, desolation, desolations, isolated, left alone, left without, lonely

#### Definition:

The terms "desolate" and "desolation" refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

* When referring to a person, the term "desolate" describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
* A widow is desolate because she has no man to provide for her and therefore often lacks food, shelter, and clothing.
* The term "desolation" is the state or condition of being desolated.
* If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
* A "desolate region" refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
* A "desolate land" or "wilderness" was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
* If a city is "made desolate" it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes "empty" and "ruined." This is similar to the meaning of "devastate" or "devastated," but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "ruined" or "destroyed" or "laid waste" or "lonely and outcast" or "deserted."
* A person who is "lonely" is alone. He has no friends or family or other people with whom he can enjoy being.
* The term "deserted" describes a place that everyone has left.

(See also: [desert](../other/desert.md), [devastate](../other/devastated.md), [ruin](../other/ruin.md), [waste](../other/waste.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 22:19
* Acts 01:20
* Daniel 09:17-19
* Lamentations 03:11
* Luke 11:17
* Matthew 12:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5221, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7604, H7673, H7701, H7722, H7909, H7921, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2047, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alone, deserted, deserted place, deserted places, desolate, desolation, desolations, isolated, left ... alone, left ... without, lonely, made ... desolate, making ... desolate, uninhabited

### destroy

#### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

#### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

* The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
* This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
* When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
* In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
* The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:23
* Hebrews 11:28
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Judges 16:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

### detest

#### Related Ideas:

abhor, abhorrent, abhorrence, be disgusted with, detestable, disgusting, hate

#### Definitions:

The term "detestable" describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To "detest" something means to strongly dislike it.

* Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
* God used the word "detestable" to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
* The Israelites were commanded to "detest" the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
* God called all wrong sexual acts "detestable."
* Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all "detestable" to God.
* The term "detest" could be translated as "strongly reject" or "hate" or "regard as very evil."
* The term "detestable" could also be translated as "horribly evil" or "disgusting" or "deserving rejection."
* When applied to the righteous being "detestable to" the wicked, this could be translated as "considered very undesirable to" or "distasteful to" or "rejected by."
* God told the Israelites to "detest" certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be "unclean" and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as "strongly dislike" or "reject" or "regard as unacceptable."
* To "abhor" is to strongly detest, and the adjective for something that people should abhor is "abhorrent."

(See also: [divination](../other/divination.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 43:32
* Jeremiah 07:30
* Leviticus 11:10
* Luke 16:15
* Revelation 17:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1602, H1860, H3988, H6675, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G946, G947, G948, G4767

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abhor, abhorred, abhorrence, abhorrent, abhorrently, abhors, be disgusted with, detest, detestable, detestable idol, detestable idols, detestable thing, detestable things, detested, disgusted, disgusting, hate, hated, hates

### devour

#### Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

* Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
* Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
* This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:08
* Amos 01:10
* Exodus 24:17
* Ezekiel 16:20
* Luke 15:30
* Matthew 23:13-15
* Psalms 021:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

devour, devoured, devouring, devours

### disciple

#### Definition:

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

* The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
* John the Baptist also had disciples.
* During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
* Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
* Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the twelve."
* Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
* Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
* Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
* The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:26-27
* Acts 11:26
* Acts 14:22
* John 13:23
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 11:03
* Matthew 26:33-35
* Matthew 27:64

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disciple, disciples

### divorce

#### Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to "divorce" means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

* The literal meaning of the term to "divorce" is to "send away" or to "formally separate from." Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
* A "certificate of divorce" could be translated as a "paper stating that the marriage has ended."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
* Leviticus 21:7-9
* Luke 16:18
* Mark 10:04
* Matthew 05:32
* Matthew 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

divorce, divorces

### donkey

#### Related Ideas:

mule

#### Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

* A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
* Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
* Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
* In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
* Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:32-34
* 1 Samuel 09:04
* 2 Kings 04:21-22
* Deuteronomy 05:12-14
* Luke 13:15
* Matthew 21:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

donkey, donkey's, donkeys, mule, mules, wild donkey

### dove

#### Related Ideas:

pigeon

#### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

* Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
* Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
* A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
* Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
* If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
* If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 08:09
* Luke 02:22-24
* Mark 01:10
* Matthew 03:16
* Matthew 21:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dove, dove's, doves, pigeon, pigeons

### drunk

#### Related Ideas:

intoxicated, drink much, drunkard, drunkenness

#### Definitions:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

* A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
* The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
* The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
* Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
* 1 Samuel 25:36
* Jeremiah 13:13
* Luke 07:34
* Luke 21:34
* Proverbs 23:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7686, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be ... intoxicated, became drunk, become drunk, drank freely, drink much, drunk, drunkard, drunkards, drunkenness, get drunk

### earth

#### Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

#### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

* "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
* This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
* The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
* The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
* The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
* Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
* When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
* Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
* Daniel 04:35
* Luke 12:51
* Matthew 06:10
* Matthew 11:25
* Zechariah 06:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

### elder

#### Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

* The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
* In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
* In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
* In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
* Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
* This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
* 1 Timothy 03:1-3
* 1 Timothy 04:14
* Acts 05:19-21
* Acts 14:23
* Mark 11:28
* Matthew 21:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

### evil

#### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

* While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
* The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
* The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
* Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
* Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:11
* 1 Timothy 06:10
* 3 John 01:10
* Genesis 02:17
* Genesis 06:5-6
* Job 01:01
* Job 08:20
* Judges 09:57
* Luke 06:22-23
* Matthew 07:11-12
* Proverbs 03:07
* Psalms 022:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### exalt

#### Related Ideas:

exaltation, high position, leadership position, lifted up

#### Definition:

To exalt is to lift up. Often exalt means to praise or honor someone or something. It can also mean to put someone in an honored position of leadership.

* In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for honoring God.
* When a person exalts himself, it means he thinks about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
* In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
* "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
* "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: [praise](../other/praise.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [boast](../kt/boast.md), [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 05:5-7
* 2 Samuel 22:47
* Acts 05:31
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Psalms 018:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1361, H1362, H1364, H4791, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exalt, exaltation, exalted, exalting, exalts, high position, leadership positions, lifted up, lofty

### exhort

#### Related Ideas:

exhortation, urge

#### Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

* The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
* The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
* Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
* In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
* Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 1 Timothy 05:02
* Luke 03:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5927, H6484, G3867, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exhort, exhortation, exhortations, exhorted, exhorting, urge, urged

### face

#### Related Ideas:

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

#### Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

* The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
* In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
* To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
* Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
* When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
* To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
* The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
* The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
* The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
* The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
* Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
* The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
* The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
* To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
* The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
* The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 05:04
* Genesis 33:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

### faith

#### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

* To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
* To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
* True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
* Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
* In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
* For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
* The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
* The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
* The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:07
* Acts 06:7
* Galatians 02:20-21
* James 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

### faithful

#### Related Ideas:

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

#### Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

* A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
* A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
* Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

* The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
* In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
* God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness"

* In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
* In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
* Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness"

* Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
* The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
* The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
* In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:49
* Leviticus 26:40
* Numbers 12:07
* Joshua 02:14
* Judges 02:16-17
* 1 Samuel 02:9
* Psalm 012:1
* Proverbs 11:12-13
* Isaiah 01:26
* Jeremiah 09:7-9
* Hosea 05:07
* Luke 12:46
* Luke 16:10
* Colossians 01:07
* 1 Thessalonians 05:24
* 3 John 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

### false prophet

#### Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

* The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
* False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
* This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
* The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:1-3
* 2 Peter 02:01
* Acts 13:6-8
* Luke 06:26
* Matthew 07:16
* Matthew 24:23-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

false prophet, false prophets

### family

#### Related Ideas:

family line, genealogical record

#### Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

* The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
* Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
* Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
* Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
* The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
* A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](../other/clan.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 18:18
* Exodus 01:21
* Joshua 02:12-13
* Luke 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

### famine

#### Related Ideas:

famished, hunger

#### Definition:

The term "famine" refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain. The term "famished" means extremely hungry.

* Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
* Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
* In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
* In Amos 8:11 the term "famine" is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for "famine" in your language, or with a phrase such as "extreme lack" or "severe deprivation."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
* Acts 07:11
* Genesis 12:10
* Genesis 45:06
* Jeremiah 11:21-23
* Luke 04:25
* Matthew 24:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042, G3521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

famine, famines, famished, hunger

### fast

#### Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

* Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
* Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
* Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
* The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
* The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 21:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 20:03
* Acts 13:1-3
* Jonah 03:4-5
* Luke 05:34
* Mark 02:19
* Matthew 06:18
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

### father

#### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father.
* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor.
* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father.
* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan.
* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

* The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
* The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
* "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
* When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
* Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
* When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
* The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:02
* Acts 07:32
* Acts 07:45
* Acts 22:03
* Genesis 31:30
* Genesis 31:42
* Genesis 31:53
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* John 04:12
* Joshua 24:3-4
* Malachi 03:07
* Mark 10:7-9
* Matthew 01:07
* Matthew 03:09
* Matthew 10:21
* Matthew 18:14
* Romans 04:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### favor

#### Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

#### Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

* The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoratism is considered unfair.
* Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
* The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
* When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
* A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
* The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
* The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:25-26
* 2 Chronicles 19:07
* 2 Corinthians 01:11
* Acts 24:27
* Genesis 41:16
* Genesis 47:25
* Genesis 50:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

### fear

#### Related Ideas:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

#### Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

* The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
* The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
* The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
* "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
* To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
* "Dread" is great fear.
* Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
* Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
* The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
* The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
* The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
* Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](../other/amazed.md), [awe](../other/awe.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* Acts 02:43
* Acts 19:15-17
* Genesis 50:21
* Isaiah 11:3-5
* Job 06:14
* Jonah 01:09
* Luke 12:05
* Matthew 10:28
* Proverbs 10:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

### feast

#### Related Ideas:

dinner

#### Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

* Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
* The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
* In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
* In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
* A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
* The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
* Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](../other/festival.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:12-14
* Genesis 26:30
* Genesis 29:22
* Genesis 40:20
* Jude 01:12-13
* Luke 02:43
* Luke 14:7-9
* Matthew 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

### festival

#### Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."

The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.

In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.

There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:

Passover

Festival of Unleavened Bread

Firstfruits

Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)

Festival of Trumpets

Day of Atonement

Festival of Shelters

The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

A person who "celebrates" acts as if he were at a festival.

(See also: [feast](../other/feast.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:31
* 2 Chronicles 08:13
* Exodus 05:01
* John 04:45
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, H8057, G1456, G1858, G1859

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

festival, festivals

### fig

#### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

* Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
* Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
* Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
* In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
* The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
* Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 03:17
* James 03:12
* Luke 13:07
* Mark 11:14
* Matthew 07:17
* Matthew 21:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### filled with the Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

full of the Holy Spirit

#### Definition:

The term "filled with the Holy Spirit" is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

* The expression "filled with" is an expression that often means "controlled by."
* People are "filled with the Holy Spirit" when they follow the Holy Spirit's leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could be translated as "empowered by the Holy Spirit" or "controlled by the Holy Spirit." But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
* A sentence such as "he was filled with the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "he was living fully by the Spirit's power" or "he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit" or "the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely."
* This term is similar in meaning to the expression "live by the Spirit," but "filled with the Holy Spirit" emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:31
* Acts 05:17
* Acts 06:8-9
* Luke 01:15
* Luke 01:39-41
* Luke 04:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4390, H4392, H7646, H8003, G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

filled ... with the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Holy Spirit, full ... of the Spirit

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [cypress](../other/cypress.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fire

#### Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

#### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

* A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
* A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
* To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
* To "inflame" something is to make it start burning.
* To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
* The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively.

* The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification.
* The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."
* Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](../kt/purify.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:18-20
* 2 Kings 01:10
* 2 Thessalonians 01:08
* Acts 07:29-30
* John 15:06
* Luke 03:16
* Matthew 03:12
* Nehemiah 01:3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

### firstborn

#### Related Ideas:

first issue

#### Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

* In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
* In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
* Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
* This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
* Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.
* The phrase "first issue of the womb" is another way of saying "firstborn."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "firstborn" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
* When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
* Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [son](../kt/son.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:15
* Genesis 04:3-5
* Genesis 29:26-27
* Genesis 43:33
* Luke 02:6-7
* Revelation 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, H6363, G4416, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

first ... issue, firstborn

### fishermen

#### Related Ideas:

fish, fisher

#### Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

* Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
* Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
* This term could be translated with a phrase such as "men who catch fish" or "men who earn money by catching fish."
* The word "fish" can also be a verb that means "to catch fish."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:9-10
* Isaiah 19:08
* Luke 05:1-3
* Matthew 04:19
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1728, H1770, H1771, H2271, G231

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fish, fishermen, fishers

### flesh

#### Related Ideas:

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

* The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
* In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
* The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
* The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
* The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
* When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
* When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
* The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
* Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
* The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 John 01:07
* Ephesians 06:12
* Galatians 01:16
* Genesis 02:24
* John 01:14
* Matthew 16:17
* Romans 08:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

### flock

#### Related Ideas:

herd

#### Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

* Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
* For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
* The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
* Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
* For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](../other/goat.md), [ox](../other/cow.md), [pig](../other/pig.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), )

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:28-29
* 2 Chronicles 17:11
* Deuteronomy 14:22-23
* Luke 02:8-9
* Matthew 08:30
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H504, H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7473, H7716, H7462, H7794, G34, G4167, G4168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flock, flocking, flocks, herd, herds

### flute

#### Related Ideas:

pipe, wind instrument

#### Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

* Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
* A pipe without any reeds was often called a "flute."
* A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
* Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](../other/flock.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 14:07
* 1 Kings 01:38-40
* Daniel 03:3-5
* Luke 07:31-32
* Matthew 09:23
* Matthew 11:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

flute, flutes, pipe, pipes, wind instruments

### fool

#### Related Ideas:

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

#### Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

* In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
* In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
* The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
* The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
* A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
* Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
* Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:17
* Ephesians 05:15
* Galatians 03:03
* Genesis 31:28
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 25:08
* Proverbs 13:16
* Psalms 049:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

### footstool

#### Definition:

The term "footstool" refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

* People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a "footstool" was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
* When God says "I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet" he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
* To "worship at God's footstool" means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
* David refers to the temple as God's "footstool." This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:49
* Isaiah 66:1
* Luke 20:43
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 22:44
* Psalm 110:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

footstool

### foreigner

#### Related Ideas:

alien, barbarian, foreign, sojourn, sojourner, stranger, tenant

#### Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

* In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
* A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
* For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
* The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
* Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.
* A "sojourner" is a person who is living in one country that is not his but waiting for the chance to move to his own country.
* A "barbarian" is a person from another country who does not speak the local language or obey the local customs and so the natives do not like or respect him.
* A "strangers" are persons who do not know each other.
* To be "alienated" is to no longer be living in loving relationship with another. For example, a husband and wife who are no longer living together but are not divorced are "alienated" or "estranged."
* A "tenant" is a person who rents his dwelling place.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:17
* Acts 07:29-30
* Deuteronomy 01:15-16
* Genesis 15:12-13
* Genesis 17:27
* Luke 17:18
* Matthew 17:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H312, H628, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G246, G526, G915, G3581, G3927, G3941

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alien, alienated, alienates, barbarian, foreign, foreigner, foreigners, live as a foreigner, living as foreigners, sojourn, sojourned, sojourner, sojourners, sojourning, stranger, strangers, tenant, tenants

### forgive

#### Related Ideas:

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

#### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

* Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
* This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
* When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
* Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

* This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
* In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
* Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
* The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
* If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](../kt/guilt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 50:17
* Numbers 14:17-19
* Deuteronomy 29:20-21
* Joshua 24:19-20
* 2 Kings 05:17-19
* Psalms 025:11
* Psalms 025:17-19
* Isaiah 55:6-7
* Isaiah 40:02
* Luke 05:21
* Acts 08:22
* Ephesians 04:31-32
* Colossians 03:12-14
* 1 John 02:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

### found

#### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

#### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

* The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
* The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
* A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
* To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
* The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
* Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](../kt/cornerstone.md), [create](../other/creation.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:37-38
* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* Ezekiel 13:13-14
* Luke 14:29
* Matthew 13:35
* Matthew 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

### free

#### Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

#### Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

* The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
* In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
* Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
* To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
* The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
* The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
* A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:26
* Galatians 05:01
* Isaiah 61:1
* Leviticus 25:10
* Romans 06:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

### fruit

#### Related Ideas:

bear fruit, crop, fruitful, produce, productive land, unfruitful

#### Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten.

* A "fruitful" plant is one that has a lot of good fruit.
* The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
* The term "crop" can refer to what people have planted for for food.
* The term "crop" can refer to the food that is harvested at one time.

Sometimes the term "fruit" and ideas related to it are used figuratively.

* In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
* The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces"—that is, children.
* The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
* The expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
* The term "fruitful" can be used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
* Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
* The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
* When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
* The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
* Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
* Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
* The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
* The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [grape](../other/grape.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [vine](../other/vine.md), [womb](../other/womb.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 01:11
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 03:08
* Matthew 07:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3018, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6499, H6509, H6529, H6631, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear fruit, crop, crops, fruit, fruitful, fruits, produce, productive land, unfruitful

### fulfill

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

#### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

* When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
* If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
* To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
* The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
* Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md), [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:27
* Acts 03:17-18
* Leviticus 22:17-19
* Luke 04:21
* Matthew 01:22-23
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalms 116:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

### gate

#### Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

* A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
* A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
* A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
* To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
* A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
* The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:24
* Acts 10:18
* Deuteronomy 21:18-19
* Genesis 19:01
* Genesis 24:60
* Matthew 07:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

### generation

#### Definition:

The term "generation" refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

* A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
* Parents and their children are from two different generations.
* In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
* "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
* The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
* "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:19-21
* Exodus 03:13-15
* Genesis 15:16
* Genesis 17:07
* Mark 08:12
* Matthew 11:16
* Matthew 23:34-36
* Matthew 24:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

generation, generations

### gift

#### Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

#### Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

* Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
* In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
* The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
* In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
* In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:01
* 2 Samuel 11:08
* Acts 08:20
* Acts 10:04
* Acts 11:17
* Acts 24:17
* James 01:17
* John 04:9-10
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 08:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

### gird

#### Definition:

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to wrapping a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

* The phrase "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
* This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
* The phrase "gird the sword" means to tuck the sword into one's belt in order to carry it.

#### Picture of Girding a sword:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/g/Girdsword.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/g/Girdsword.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
* The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: [loins](../other/loins.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:13
* Job 38:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H5401, H8151, G328, G1241, G2224, G4024

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gird, girded, girding, girds

### glory

#### Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

#### Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

* Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
* For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
* Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
* The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

* People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
* They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
* When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
* God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
* Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."

The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."

The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."

The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

"Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."

The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."

The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](../kt/exalt.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 24:17
* Numbers 14:9-10
* Isaiah 35:02
* Luke 18:43
* Luke 02:09
* John 12:28
* Acts 03:13-14
* Acts 07:1-3
* Romans 08:17
* 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
* Philippians 02:14-16
* Philippians 04:19
* Colossians 03:1-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:05
* James 02:1-4
* 1 Peter 04:15-16
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

### goat

#### Related Ideas:

goatskins, kid, scapegoat, young goat

#### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.

Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:

Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.

The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.

Sheep usually like to stay with their flocks, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herds.

In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.

Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.

In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.

The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](../other/flock.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:3-4
* Genesis 30:32
* Genesis 31:10
* Genesis 37:31
* Leviticus 03:12-14
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

goat, goats, goats', goatskins, kid, kids, scapegoat, young goat

### good

#### Related Ideas:

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

* In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
* Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
* Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
* A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
* A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
* In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
* The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
* The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
* Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
* "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
* To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
* "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
* The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
* To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [profit](../other/profit.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:22-24
* Genesis 01:12
* Genesis 02:09
* Genesis 02:17
* James 03:13
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

### good news

#### Related Ideas:

gospel

#### Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

* In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
* In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."
* The writers of the New Testament use a verb based on this noun to talk about telling or proclaiming good news or preaching the gospel.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news about" or "good message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:25
* Colossians 01:23
* Galatians 01:06
* Luke 08:1-3
* Mark 01:14
* Philippians 02:22
* Romans 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, G2097, G2098, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce good news, announced the good news, announcing ... the good news, being told good news, bring ... good news, brings ... good news, brought ... good news, good news, gospel, gospel's, had ... good news proclaimed, preach the gospel, preached the gospel beforehand, preaching ... the gospel, proclaim ... gospel, proclaimed the good news, proclaimed the gospel, proclaiming ... good news, proclaiming the gospel, telling ... good news, were told the good news

### governor

#### Related Ideas:

deputy, govern government, high officials, proconsul

#### Definition:

A "governor" is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To "govern" means to guide, lead, or manage them.

* The term "proconsul" was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
* In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
* A "government" consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "governor" can also be translated as "ruler" or "overseer" or "regional leader" or "one who rules over a small territory."
* Depending on the context, the term "govern" could also be translated as, "rule over" or "lead" or "manage" or supervise."
* The term "governor" should be translated differently than the terms for "king" or "emperor", since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
* The term "proconsul" could also be translated as, "Roman governor" or "Roman provincial ruler."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 23:22
* Acts 26:30
* Mark 13:9-10
* Matthew 10:18
* Matthew 27:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H323, H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5333, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deputy, govern, government, governments, governor, governors, high officials, proconsul, proconsuls, provincial governors

### grace

#### Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

#### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

* God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
* The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
* The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
* The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
* The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:33
* Acts 06:08
* Acts 14:04
* Colossians 04:06
* Colossians 04:18
* Genesis 43:28-29
* James 04:07
* John 01:16
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

### grain

#### Related Ideas:

grainfields, standing grain

#### Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

* In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
* A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
* Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](../other/head.md), [wheat](../other/wheat.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 42:03
* Genesis 42:26-28
* Genesis 43:1-2
* Luke 06:02
* Mark 02:24
* Matthew 13:7-9
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

### grape

#### Related Ideas:

raisin

#### Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

* There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
* Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
* People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
* Grapes were a very important food during Bible times, and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
* "Raisins" are dried grapes. People often dried grapes in order to keep them from rotting.
* Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](../other/vine.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 23:24
* Hosea 09:10
* Job 15:33
* Luke 06:43-44
* Matthew 07:15-17
* Matthew 21:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grape, grapes, raisin, raisins

### guilt

#### Related Ideas:

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

#### Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

* To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
* The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
* Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [iniquity](../kt/iniquity.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:36-38
* Isaiah 06:07
* James 02:10-11
* John 19:04
* Jonah 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

### hand

#### Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.

The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"

Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.

Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:

To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."

To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.

The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."

The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.

Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.

The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.

When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

#### Translation Suggestions

* These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
* The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
* When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
* An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
* To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
* The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
* In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [bless](../kt/bless.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:25
* Acts 08:17
* Acts 11:21
* Genesis 09:05
* Genesis 14:20
* John 03:35
* Mark 07:32
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### hang

#### Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

* Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
* Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
* To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 17:23
* Acts 10:39
* Galatians 03:13
* Genesis 40:22
* Matthew 27:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

### hard

#### Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

#### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

* An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
* Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
* When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
* A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
* A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively

* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent.
* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
* The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
* "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
* Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
* In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
* The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
* To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
* A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:23
* Deuteronomy 15:07
* Exodus 14:04
* Hebrews 04:07
* John 12:40
* Matthew 19:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

### harvest

#### Related Ideas:

harvester

#### Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

* The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
* The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
* In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
* The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
* The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
* The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruits](../other/firstfruit.md), [festival](../other/festival.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
* 2 Samuel 21:7-9
* Galatians 06:9-10
* Isaiah 17:11
* James 05:7-8
* Leviticus 19:09
* Matthew 09:38
* Ruth 01:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

### head

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

* Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
* Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
* The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
* The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
* The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
* The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
* The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
* The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
* The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
* The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 09:22
* Colossians 02:10
* Colossians 02:19
* Numbers 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

### heal

#### Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

#### Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

* A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
* Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
* However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
* For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
* The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
* A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
* Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:16
* Acts 08:06
* Luke 05:13
* Luke 06:19
* Luke 08:43
* Matthew 04:23-25
* Matthew 09:35
* Matthew 13:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

### heart

#### Related Ideas:

kidneys

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

* To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
* The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
* The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
* The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
* The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
* Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
* If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
* Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
* The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
* The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
* Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:17
* 1 Thessalonians 02:04
* 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
* Acts 08:22
* Acts 15:09
* Luke 08:15
* Mark 02:06
* Matthew 05:08
* Matthew 22:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

### heaven

#### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

#### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

* The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
* The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
* In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
* For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
* The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
* The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:22-24
* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:17
* Deuteronomy 09:01
* Ephesians 06:9
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 07:11
* John 03:12
* John 03:27
* Matthew 05:18
* Matthew 05:46-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### heir

#### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

* In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
* The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
* As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
* The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:1-2
* Galatians 04:07
* Genesis 15:01
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 20:14
* Mark 12:07
* Matthew 21:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

### hell

#### Related Ideas:

delivered to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

#### Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

* Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
* Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
* People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them will be punished forever in hell.
* "Tartarus" is a name for hell borrowed from Greek religion to refer to the place where evil spirits are punished.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
* Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
* The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
* The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Hades](../kt/hades.md), [abyss](../other/abyss.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 03:06
* Luke 12:05
* Mark 09:42-44
* Matthew 05:21-22
* Matthew 05:29
* Matthew 10:28-31
* Matthew 23:33
* Matthew 25:41-43
* Revelation 20:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G86, G1067, G3041, G4442, G5020, G5394

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

delivered ... to Tartarus, hell, lake of fire

### high priest

#### Related Ideas:

high priesthood

#### Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

* The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
* The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
* When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiphas' father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
* Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "chief priest."

(See also: [Annas](../names/annas.md), [Caiaphas](../names/caiaphas.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:27
* Acts 07:01
* Acts 09:01
* Exodus 30:10
* Hebrews 06:19-20
* Leviticus 16:32
* Luke 03:02
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Matthew 26:51-54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

high priest, high priesthood, high priests

### holy

#### Related Ideas:

holiness, sacred, unholy

#### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

* Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
* A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
* An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
* People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
* In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
* God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
* Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
* When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

* This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
* A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

* In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
* "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
* The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
* The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 28:22
* 2 Kings 03:02
* Lamentations 04:01
* Ezekiel 20:18-20
* Matthew 07:6
* Mark 08:38
* Acts 07:33
* Acts 11:08
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
* Colossians 01:22
* 1 Thessalonians 03:13
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:15
* 1 Timothy 05:10
* 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
* Revelation 16:06
* Revelation 20:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

### honor

#### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

#### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

* Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
* God instructs Christians to honor others.
* Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
* The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
* Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
* To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
* The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:8
* Acts 19:17
* John 04:44
* John 12:26
* Mark 06:04
* Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### hope

#### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

* In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
* To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
* The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
* To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
* The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
* The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
* Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
* 1 Thessalonians 02:19
* Acts 24:14-16
* Acts 26:06
* Acts 27:20
* Colossians 01:05
* Job 11:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H1891, H2976, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G1679, G1680, G2070, G4276

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hope, hoped, hopes, look to ... in hope, uselessly hope

### horn

#### Related Ideas:

ram's horn

#### Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

* The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
* The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
* This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
* The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.
* God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [cow](../other/cow.md), [deer](../other/deer.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [power](../kt/power.md) [royal](../other/royal.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [trumpet](../other/trumpet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
* 1 Kings 01:39
* 2 Samuel 22:03
* Jeremiah 17:01
* Psalms 022:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

### hour

#### Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

* When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
* The phrase "that hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
* When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
* The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
* The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."
* Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him" or "it was the appointed time for him."

(See also: [hour](../other/biblicaltimehour.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 14:35
* 1 Corinthians 15:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appointed time, hour, hours, moment, time, while

### house

#### Related Ideas:

home, residence

#### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

* Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
* Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
* The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
* In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
* A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
* The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
* Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
* The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
* "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [house of God](../kt/houseofgod.md), [household](../other/household.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:42
* Acts 07:49
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 08:39
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 15:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### house of God

#### Related Ideas:

house of Yahweh

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

* This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
* Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
* If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
* The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](../kt/peopleofgod.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:14-15
* 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
* Ezra 05:13
* Genesis 28:17
* Judges 18:30-31
* Mark 02:26
* Matthew 12:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of ... God, house of Yahweh

### humble

#### Related Ideas:

humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

#### Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

* To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
* When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
* Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
* Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
* The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
* "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* James 01:21
* James 03:13
* James 04:10
* Luke 14:11
* Luke 18:14
* Matthew 18:04
* Matthew 23:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

humble, humbled, humbles, humbling, humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

### hypocrite

#### Related Ideas:

hypocrisy

#### Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

* Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
* Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
* Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
* A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
* Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
* The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 02:13
* Luke 06:41-42
* Luke 12:54-56
* Luke 13:15
* Mark 07:6-7
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Romans 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G505, G5272, G5273

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hypocrisy, hypocrite, hypocrites

### image

#### Related Ideas:

carved figure, cast metal figure, statue

#### Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term "image" is a shortened form of "carved image."

* A "carved image" or "carved figure" is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
* A "cast metal figure" is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
* These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
* The term "image" when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to an idol, the term "image" could also be translated as "statue" or "engraved idol" or "carved religious object."
* It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as "carved image" or "cast metal figure," even in places where only the term "image" or "figure" is in the original text.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:9-10
* Acts 07:43
* Isaiah 21:8-9
* Matthew 22:21
* Romans 01:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1544, H1823, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carved figure, carved figures, carved image, carved images, cast metal figure, cast metal figures, cast metal images, castings, figure, figures, image, images, statue

### incense

#### Related Ideas:

censer, sweet aroma

#### Definition:

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

* God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
* The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
* The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
* The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
* The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
* Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."
* A "censer" is a pan or small pot that holds burning incence.

(See also: [altar of incense](../other/altarofincense.md), [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [frankincense](../other/frankincense.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 03:1-3
* 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
* 2 Kings 14:04
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Luke 01:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3828, H4196, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

censers, incense, incenses, sweet aroma

### inherit

#### Related Ideas:

heritage, inheritance,legacy

#### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.

A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.

The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.

God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.

In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.

There are other figurative meanings for these terms:

The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."

To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.

This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
* Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
* Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
* When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
* The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
* The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](../other/heir.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* 1 Peter 01:04
* 2 Samuel 21:03
* Acts 07:4-5
* Deuteronomy 20:16
* Galatians 05:21
* Genesis 15:07
* Hebrews 09:15
* Jeremiah 02:07
* Luke 15:11
* Matthew 19:29
* Psalm 079:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

### instruct

#### Related Ideas:

instruction, instructor

#### Definitions:

The terms "instruct" and "instruction" refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

* To "give instructions" means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
* When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
* Depending on the context, the term "instruct" could also be translated as "tell" or "direct" or "teach" or "give instructions to."
* The term "instructions" could be translated as "directions" or "explanations" or "what he has told you to do."
* When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as "commands" or "orders."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 14:04
* Genesis 26:05
* Hebrews 11:22
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 11:01
* Proverbs 01:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H631, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H3948, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1291, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2012, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3807, G3810, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822, G4929

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gave ... instructions, instruct, instructed, instructing, instruction, instructions, instructor, instructors, instructs

### interpret

#### Related Ideas:

interpretation, interpreter, translate

#### Definitions:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something.

* Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
* In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
* The term "interpret" can refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as seeing what the sky looks like and figuring out whether or not it will rain or be windy.
* The terms "interpret" and "translate" can refer to explaining what is said in one language to people who speak another language.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "interpret" include "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
* The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Daniel](../names/daniel.md), [dream](../other/dream.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* Daniel 04:4-6
* Genesis 40:4-5
* Judges 07:15-16
* Luke 12:56

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

interpret, interpretation, interpretations, interpreted, interpreter, interpreting, interprets, translated

### is written

#### Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

* Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
* Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
* This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
* Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:13-15
* Acts 13:29
* Exodus 32:15-16
* John 21:25
* Luke 03:4
* Mark 09:12
* Matthew 04:06
* Revelation 01:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H874, H3789, G1125

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... written, had ... been written, has ... been written, have ... been written, is ... written, is it ... written, it is written, it was written, Moses ... wrote, was written, were ... written

### joy

#### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

#### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

* A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
* God is the one who gives true joy to people.
* Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
* Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
* To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
* "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

* This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
* It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
* When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
* The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
* A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
* A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
* A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

#### Bible References:

* Nehemiah 08:10
* Psalm 048:02
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Jeremiah 15:15-16
* Matthew 02:9-10
* Luke 15:07
* Luke 19:37-38
* John 03:29
* Acts 16:32-34
* Romans 05:1-2
* Romans 15:30-32
* Galatians 05:23
* Philippians 04:10-13
* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 05:16
* Philemon 01:4-7
* James 01:02
* 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### judge

#### Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

#### Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

* The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
* God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
* The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
* Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
* In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
* "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
* The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
* The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
* In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](../other/decree.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:17
* 1 Kings 03:09
* Acts 10:42-43
* Isaiah 03:14
* James 02:04
* Luke 06:37
* Micah 03:9-11
* Psalm 054:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

### judge

#### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
* After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
* The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](../other/governor.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:08
* Acts 07:27
* Luke 11:19
* Luke 12:14
* Luke 18:1-2
* Matthew 05:25
* Ruth 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

### justice

#### Related Ideas:

honest, injustice, just, justification, justify, maintain someone's rights, vindicate, vindication

#### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

* To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
* To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
* To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
* Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."
* To "vindicate" someone whom others have accused of wrongdoing is to show that he has actually done what is right.

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

* An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
* Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
* Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

* When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
* "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."

The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."

To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."

In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."

The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."

The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."

Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly."

Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."

The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."

The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."

The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 44:16
* 1 Chronicles 18:14
* Isaiah 04:3-4
* Jeremiah 22:03
* Ezekiel 18:16-17
* Micah 03:8
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 11:19
* Matthew 23:23-24
* Luke 18:03
* Luke 18:08
* Luke 18:13-14
* Luke 21:20-22
* Luke 23:41
* Acts 13:38-39
* Acts 28:04
* Romans 04:1-3
* Galatians 03:6-9
* Galatians 03:11
* Galatians 05:3-4
* Titus 03:6-7
* Hebrews 06:10
* James 02:24
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3476, H3477, H4941, H5766, H5767, H6415, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8199, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G95, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1556, G1557, G1738, G2118, G2920

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

desire for justice, dishonest, honest, injustice, injustices, just, justice, justification, justified, justifies, justify, justly, maintain ... rights, unjust, unjustly, vindicate, vindicated, vindication

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kind

#### Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

* In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
* Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
* The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

#### Picture showing Kinds:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 01:21
* Genesis 01:24
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### kingdom

#### Related Ideas:

power to rule

#### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

* A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
* The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
* God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
* The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
* In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
* One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
* The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
* Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 2 Timothy 04:17-18
* Colossians 01:13-14
* John 18:36
* Mark 03:24
* Matthew 04:7-9
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 16:28
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

### kingdom of God

#### Related Ideas:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of heaven

#### Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

* The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly.
* In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
* The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
* The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
* The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
* Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
* A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [King of the Jews](../kt/kingofthejews.md), [reign](../other/reign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Thessalonians 01:05
* Acts 08:12-13
* Acts 28:23
* Colossians 04:11
* John 03:03
* Luke 07:28
* Luke 10:09
* Luke 12:31-32
* Matthew 03:02
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 05:10
* Romans 14:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom of Christ and God, kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### kiss

#### Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

* Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
* A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
* The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
* Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
* Genesis 27:26-27
* Genesis 29:11
* Genesis 31:28
* Genesis 45:15
* Genesis 48:10
* Luke 22:48
* Mark 14:45
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

### know

#### Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

* The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
* To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
* To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
* To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
* To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
* Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
* The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
* If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
* Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
* The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
* To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
* The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
* The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
* To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [understand](../other/understand.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
* 1 Samuel 17:46
* 2 Corinthians 02:15
* 2 Peter 01:3-4
* Deuteronomy 04:39-40
* Genesis 19:05
* Luke 01:77

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### labor

#### Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

#### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

* In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
* A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
* In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
* Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
* "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
* An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
* Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:09
* 1 Thessalonians 03:05
* Galatians 04:10-11
* James 05:04
* John 04:38
* Luke 10:02
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

### lamb

#### Related Ideas:

Lamb of God

#### Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

* These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
* God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
* Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
* "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
* If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
* Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 12:03
* Ezra 08:35-36
* Isaiah 66:3
* Jeremiah 11:19
* John 01:29
* John 01:36
* Leviticus 14:21-23
* Leviticus 17:1-4
* Luke 10:03
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

### lamp

#### Related Ideas:

torch

#### Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

* An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
* For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
* An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
* In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
* A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](../other/lampstand.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [light](../other/light.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:36
* Exodus 25:3-7
* Luke 08:16-18
* Matthew 05:15
* Matthew 06:22
* Matthew 25:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

### lampstand

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lampstand" generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

* A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
* In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This term could be also translated as "lamp pedestal" or "structure for holding a lamp" or "lamp holder."
* For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as "seven-lamp lampstand" or "gold pedestal with seven lamps."
* It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](../other/bronze.md), [gold](../other/gold.md), [lamp](../other/lamp.md), [light](../other/light.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 05:5-6
* Exodus 37:17
* Mark 04:21-23
* Matthew 05:15-16
* Revelation 01:12-13
* Revelation 01:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4501, G3087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lampstand, lampstands

### law

#### Related Ideas:

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

#### Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

* Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
* God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
* A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
* Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
* A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:02
* Esther 03:8-9
* Exodus 12:12-14
* Genesis 26:05
* John 18:31
* Romans 07:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

### law of Moses

#### Related Ideas:

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of God, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:

the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites

all the laws given to Moses

the first five books of the Old Testament

the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).

all of God's instructions and will

The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

#### Translation Suggestions:

* These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
* The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
* Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
* Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
* The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."
* There were people in the Bible who were experts in the Law of Moses, they were called "lawyers."

(See also: [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md), [lawful](../other/lawful.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 15:06
* Daniel 09:13
* Exodus 28:42-43
* Ezra 07:25-26
* Galatians 02:15
* Luke 24:44
* Matthew 05:18
* Nehemiah 10:29
* Romans 03:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G976, G2316, G3544, G3551, G3565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's law, book of Moses, book of the law, expert in the law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of the Lord, the law, the law of God, your law

### lawful

#### Related Ideas:

lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, permitted, unlawful

#### Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

* In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
* To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
* Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
* The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

* In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
* Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
* When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
* When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

* A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
* The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
* Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
* The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
* The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
* The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
* The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
* It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
* Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](../other/law.md), [law of Moses](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* Matthew 07:21-23
* Matthew 12:02
* Matthew 12:04
* Matthew 12:10
* Mark 03:04
* Luke 06:02
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 10:28
* Acts 22:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:03
* Titus 02:14
* 1 John 03:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lawful, lawfully, lawless, lawlessness, not lawful, permitted, unlawful

### leper

#### Related Ideas:

leprosy, leprous

#### Definition:

The term "leprosy" is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A "leper" is a person who has leprosy. The term "leprous" describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

* Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
* In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
* According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered "unclean" and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
* A leper would often call out "unclean" so that others would be warned not to come near him.
* Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "leprosy" in the Bible can be translated as "skin disease" or "dreaded skin disease."
* Ways to translate "leprous" could include "full of leprosy" or "infected with skin disease" or "covered with skin sores."

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Naaman](../names/naaman.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 05:13
* Luke 17:12
* Mark 01:40
* Mark 14:03
* Matthew 08:03
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 11:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

### letter

#### Related Ideas:

epistle

#### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

* In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
* The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
* Ways to translate this term could include "written message" or "written down words" or "writing."

(See also: [encourage](../other/courage.md), [exhort](../kt/exhort.md), [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:27
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* Acts 09:1-2
* Acts 28:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

epistle, letter, letters

### life

#### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

* Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
* A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
* Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
* It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
* The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
* In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
* To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
* A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
* The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
* Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
* The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

* A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
* This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
* The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
* Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
* The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
* The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
* The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
* Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:03
* Acts 10:42
* Genesis 02:07
* Genesis 07:22
* Hebrews 10:20
* Jeremiah 44:02
* John 01:04
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 12:23
* Matthew 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### light

#### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

#### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

* Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
* Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
* The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
* Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
* Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
* "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
* It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
* Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 John 02:08
* 2 Corinthians 04:06
* Acts 26:18
* Isaiah 02:05
* John 01:05
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 06:23
* Nehemiah 09:12-13
* Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [perish](../kt/perish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### lion

#### Related Ideas:

lioness

#### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

* Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
* Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
* Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
* When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
* Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
* A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [leopard](../other/leopard.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
* 1 Kings 07:29
* Proverbs 19:12
* Psalms 017:12
* Revelation 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

### loins

#### Related Ideass:

side, thigh, waist

#### Definition:

The term "loins" refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

* The expression "gird up the loins" refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one's robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
* The term "loins" is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
* In the Bible, the term "loins" often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man's reproductive organs as the source of his descendants.
* The expression "will come from your loins" could also be translated as, "will be your offspring" or "will be born from your seed" or "God will cause to come from you."
* When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as "abdomen" or "hips" or "waist," depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [gird](../other/gird.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:13
* 2 Chronicles 06:09
* Deuteronomy 33:11
* Genesis 37:34
* Job 15:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

loins, hips, side, thigh, thighs, waist

### lord

#### Related Ideas:

landowner, Lord, master, master of the house, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir

#### Definition:

The term "lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

* This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
* Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

* In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
* In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
* The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
* In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "lord":

* The term "lord" can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
* When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
* If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.

Translating "Lord":

* When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.
* In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
* When "Lord" refers to Jesus Christ (the Son of God), it should be translated with the same word that is used for "Lord" when it refers to God the Father. Or if it is translated with different words, both words should express the same degree of honor.
* Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
* For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 39:02
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Psalms 086:15-17
* Jeremiah 27:04
* Lamentations 02:02
* Ezekiel 18:29
* Daniel 09:09
* Daniel 09:17-19
* Malachi 03:01
* Matthew 07:21-23
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 16:13
* Romans 06:23
* Ephesians 06:9
* Philippians 02:9-11
* Colossians 03:23
* Hebrews 12:14
* James 02:01
* 1 Peter 01:03
* Jude 01:05
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H1404, H4756, H5633, H7218, H7980, H8323, G1203, G2634, G2961, G2962, G3617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lord, Lord's, landowner, lord, lord's, lords, master, master of the house, master's, masters, mistress, owner, owner of a house, sir, sirs

### lots

#### Related Ideas:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot

#### Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

* Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
* Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
* The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
* As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
* The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
* The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
* Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
* If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
* To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
* To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth](../names/elizabeth.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [Zechariah (OT)](../names/zechariahot.md), [Zechariah (NT)](../names/zechariahnt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jonah 01:07
* Luke 01:8-10
* Luke 23:34
* Mark 15:22
* Matthew 27:35-37
* Psalms 022:18-19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

### love

#### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

#### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

* Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
* When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
* In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

1. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

* This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
* The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
* In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [death](../other/death.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
* Matthew 10:37
* Nehemiah 09:32-34
* Philippians 01:09
* Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### lover

#### Definition:

The term "lover" literally means "person who loves."

* Usually "lover" refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, the term "lover" is used in a positive way.
* In other parts of the Bible, it often refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he or she is not married to.
* This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel's disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term "lovers" is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by "immoral partners" or "partners in adultery" or "idols."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hosea 02:05
* Jeremiah 03:02
* Lamentations 01:02
* Luke 16:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H868, H5689, H7453, H8566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lover, lovers

### lute

#### Definition:

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

* A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
* In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
* The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](../other/harp.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 10:11-12
* 1 Samuel 10:5-6
* 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5035, H5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lute, lutes

### magistrate

#### Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

* In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "ruling judge" or "legal officer" or "city leader."

(See also: [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:20
* Acts 16:35
* Daniel 03:1-2
* Luke 12:58

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8200, H8614, G758, G4755

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

magistrate, magistrates

### manager

#### Related Ideas:

engage, manage, management, steward, stewardship

#### Definition:

The term "manager" or "steward" in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master's property and business dealings.

* A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
* The term "manager" is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.
* The terms "management" and "stewardship" refer to the work that a manager or steward does.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could also be translated as "supervisor" or "household organizer" or "servant who manages" or "person who organizes."

(See also: [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:4-5
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 43:16
* Isaiah 55:10-11
* Luke 08:03
* Luke 16:02
* Matthew 20:8-10
* Titus 01:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4453, H6485, G2012, G3616, G3621, G3622, G3623, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

engage, manage, management, manager, managers, steward, stewards, stewardship

### mediator

#### Related Ideas:

intermediary, mediate

#### Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

* Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
* Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.
* An "intermediary" is a person who represents one person in a discussion or conflict with another person. This is different from a "mediator," who listens to both persons and tries to be neutral.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
* Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: [priest](../kt/priest.md), [reconcile](../kt/reconcile.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:05
* Galatians 03:20
* Hebrews 08:06
* Hebrews 12:24
* Luke 12:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3887, H6419, G3312, G3316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

intermediary, mediated, mediator

### member

#### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

* The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
* Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
* Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](../kt/body.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [council](../other/council.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:15
* 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
* Numbers 16:02
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

### mercy

#### Related Ideas:

kindness, merciful, spare

#### Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

* The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
* A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
* To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
* An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
* We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
* God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
* The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
* To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](../kt/compassion.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:3-5
* 1 Timothy 01:13
* Daniel 09:17
* Exodus 34:06
* Genesis 19:16
* Hebrews 10:28-29
* James 02:13
* Luke 06:35-36
* Matthew 09:27
* Philippians 02:25-27
* Psalms 041:4-6
* Romans 12:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

### messenger

#### Related Ideas:

courier, herald

#### Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

* In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
* An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
* John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
* Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
* A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 19:1-3
* 1 Samuel 06:21
* 2 Kings 01:1-2
* Luke 07:27
* Matthew 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

### mighty

#### Related Ideas:

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

#### Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

* Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
* The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
* The phrase "the Might One" refers to God.
* The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
* The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
* This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
* The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
* In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
* Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
* The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
* Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](../kt/almighty.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [strength](../other/strength.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:22
* Genesis 06:4
* Mark 09:38-39
* Matthew 11:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

### mind

#### Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

#### Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

* The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
* To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
* To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
* To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
* To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
* To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
* To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
* A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking to much wine.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
* The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
* The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
* The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
* The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:27
* Mark 06:51-52
* Matthew 21:29
* Matthew 22:37
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### mock

#### Related Ideas:

defy, laughingstock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, taunt

#### Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," "scoff at," and "taunt" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

* Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
* The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
* A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
* The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
* A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.
* A person who "defies" another mockingly challenges that other person to do something the mocker believes the other person cannot do.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:04
* Acts 02:12-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 39:13-15
* Luke 22:63-65
* Mark 10:34
* Matthew 09:23-24
* Matthew 20:19
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4426, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8437, H8591, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defied, defy, laugh in mockery, laughingstock, mock, mocked, mocker, mockers, mockery, mocking, mocks, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at, scoffing, taunted, taunting song, taunts

### month

#### Related Ideas:

monthly

#### Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

* In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
* The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
* All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
* The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 20:34
* Acts 18:9-11
* Hebrews 11:23
* Numbers 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

month, monthly, months

### mourn

#### Related Ideas:

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

#### Definitions:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

* In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
* The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
* Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
* The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
* The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
* A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 15:34-35
* 2 Samuel 01:11
* Genesis 23:02
* Luke 07:31-32
* Matthew 11:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### nation

#### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

* A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
* In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
* Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
* Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
* The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
* If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
* The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
* In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
* 2 Chronicles 15:06
* 2 Kings 17:11-12
* Acts 02:05
* Acts 13:19
* Acts 17:26
* Acts 26:04
* Daniel 03:04
* Genesis 10:2-5
* Genesis 27:29
* Genesis 35:11
* Genesis 49:10
* Luke 07:05
* Mark 13:7-8
* Matthew 21:43
* Romans 04:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

### neighbor

#### Related Ideas:

neighborhood, neighboring

#### Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

* A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
* In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
* If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
* A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
* "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [parable](../kt/parable.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26-28
* Ephesians 04:25-27
* Galatians 05:14
* James 02:08
* John 09:8-9
* Luke 01:58
* Matthew 05:43
* Matthew 19:19
* Matthew 22:39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

### noble

#### Related Ideas:

nobility, nobleman

#### Definition:

The term "noble" describes someone or something that is excellent or of high quality.

* A "nobleman" or a "noble" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
* The "nobility" refers to the people who belong to a high political or social class.
* A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

Translation Suggestion

* The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
* Daniel 04:36
* Ecclesiastes 10:17
* Luke 19:12
* Psalm 016:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H193, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

nobility, noble, nobleman, noblemen, nobles

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### oath

#### Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

#### Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

* In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
* In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
* The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
* Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
* Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
* Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
* God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
* A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
* To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
* Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
* To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
* Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](../names/abimelech.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 21:23
* Genesis 24:03
* Genesis 31:51-53
* Genesis 47:31
* Luke 01:73
* Mark 06:26
* Matthew 05:36
* Matthew 14:6-7
* Matthew 26:72

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

### obey

#### Related Ideas:

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

#### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

* Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
* For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
* Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
* When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
* To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
* Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
* The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](../other/citizen.md), [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:32
* Acts 06:7
* Genesis 28:6-7
* James 01:25
* James 02:10
* Luke 06:47
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 19:20-22
* Matthew 28:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

### offspring

#### Definition:

The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

* Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
* The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [seed](../other/seed.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 17:29
* Exodus 13:11-13
* Genesis 24:07
* Isaiah 41:8-9
* Job 05:25
* Luke 03:7
* Matthew 12:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H2233, H4138, H5209, H6363, H6529, H6631, G1081, G1085, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

offspring

### oil

#### Related Ideas:

ointment

#### Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

* Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
* In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
* Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](../other/olive.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 01:21
* Exodus 29:02
* Leviticus 05:11
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Mark 06:12-13
* Matthew 25:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

### olive

#### Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

* Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
* The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
* Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
* In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](../other/lamp.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Mount of Olives](../names/mountofolives.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
* Deuteronomy 06:10-12
* Exodus 23:10-11
* Genesis 08:11
* James 03:12
* Luke 16:06
* Psalms 052:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2132, H3323, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

olive, olives

### on high

#### Related Ideas:

in the highest

#### Definition:

The terms "on high" and "in the highest" are expressions that usually mean "in heaven."

* Another meaning for the expression "in the highest" could be "the most honored."
* This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression "in the highest tree, " which means "in the tallest tree."
* The expression "on high" could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird's nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as "high in the sky" or "at the top of a tall tree."
* The word "high" could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
* The expression "from on high" could be translated as "from heaven."

(See also: [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Lamentations 01:13
* Psalms 069:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1361, H4791, H7682, G5308, G5310, G5311

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in the highest, on high

### oppress

#### Related Ideas:

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

#### Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

* The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
* The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
* Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
* The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
* Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
* The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
* The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](../kt/bond.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:17-19
* Deuteronomy 26:07
* Ecclesiastes 04:1
* Job 10:03
* Judges 02:18-19
* Nehemiah 05:14-15
* Psalms 119:134

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

### palace

#### Definition:

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

* The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
* Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
* The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
* Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](../other/courtyard.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [king](../other/king.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
* 2 Samuel 11:2-3
* Daniel 05:5-6
* Matthew 26:3-5
* Psalms 045:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G833, G933, G4232

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

palace, palaces

### parable

#### Related Ideas:

hard question, lesson, riddle

#### Definition:

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth. It can also refer to a saying that is difficult to understand and about which the hearer will have to think carefully before he can understand what the speaker is teaching.

* Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
* Jesus used parables to reveal truth to his disciples and to hide the truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in him.
* The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
* The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.
* A "riddle" is a type of "hard question." The one who asks a hard question does not know the correct answer, but he hopes the hearer can answer correctly. The one who asks a riddle does not want the hearer to be able to answer the question correctly.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The word "parable" can be translated as "illustration".

(See also: [Samaria](../names/samaria.md))

#### Bible References:

* Proverbs 01:06
* Luke 05:36
* Luke 06:39
* Luke 08:04
* Luke 08:9-10
* Mark 04:01
* Matthew 13:03
* Matthew 13:10
* Matthew 13:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H2420, H4426, H4912, G3850, G3942

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard questions, lesson, parable, parables, riddle, riddles

### partial

#### Related Ideas:

partiality

#### Definition:

The terms "be partial" and "show partiality" refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

* This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
* Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are richer or more popular than other people.
* God instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
* In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
* The book of James teaches that it is wrong to treat rich people better than poor people.

(See also: [favor](../kt/favor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 01:17
* Malachi 02:09
* Mark 12:13-15
* Matthew 22:16
* Romans 02:10-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5234, H5375, H6440, G991, G2983, G4299, G4381, G4382, G4383

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be partial, partial, partiality, show partiality

### patient

#### Related Ideas:

impatient, patience

#### Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

* When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
* The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
* Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.
* The term "impatient" means not patient.

(See also: [endure](../other/endure.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* 2 Peter 03:8-9
* Hebrews 06:11-12
* Matthew 18:28-29
* Psalms 037:7
* Revelation 02:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3803, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impatient, patience, patient, patiently

### peace

#### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

#### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

* "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
* To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
* A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
* To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
* A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
* The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
* The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
* A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
* To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
* Acts 07:26
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Colossians 03:15
* Galatians 05:23
* Luke 07:50
* Luke 12:51
* Mark 04:39
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 10:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

### perish

#### Related Ideas:

imperishable, perishable

#### Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

* The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
* Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
* When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:23
* 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Psalms 049:18-20
* Zechariah 09:5-7
* Zechariah 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

### persecute

#### Related Ideas:

persecution, persecutor

#### Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

* Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
* The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
* People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
* The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
* After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
* Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [oppress](../other/oppress.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* Acts 13:50
* Galatians 01:13-14
* John 05:16-18
* Mark 10:30
* Matthew 05:10
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 10:22
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

### perverse

#### Related Ideas:

crooked, perversion, perversity, pervert, twisted

#### Definition:

The terms "perverse," "crooked," and "twisted" are used to describe a person or action that is morally bad. The term "perversely" means "in a perverse manner." To "pervert" something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good. "Perversity" is perverse thoughts, words, and actions.

* Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
* In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
* Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "perverse" could include "morally twisted" or "immoral" or "turning away from God's straight path," depending on the context.
* "Perverse speech" could be translated as "speaking in an evil way" or "deceitful talk" or "immoral way of talking."
* "Perverse people" could be described as "immoral people" or "people who are morally deviant" or "people who continually disobey God."
* The phrase "acting perversely" could be translated as "behaving in an evil way" or "doing things against God's commands" or "living in a way that rejects God's teachings."
* The term "pervert" could also be translated as "cause to be corrupt" or "turn into something evil."

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:47
* 1 Samuel 20:30
* Job 33:27-28
* Luke 23:02
* Psalms 101:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1942, H2015, H2555, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294, G1612, G3344, G4646

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crooked, crooked ways, perverse, perverse words, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, perversity, pervert, perverted, perverting, perverts, twisted

### pierce

#### Related Ideas:

gore, thrust through

#### Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something or to make a hole with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

* A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
* In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
* Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.
* To "thrust someone through" or "thrust a sword through someone" is to push a sword all the way through him so the sword comes out the other side.
* To "gore" is for an animal to thrust a horn into another animal or a person.

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [Simeon](../names/simeon.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 16:13
* Job 20:23-25
* John 19:37
* Psalms 022:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1856, H1920, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H5055, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gore, gored, holes, pierce, pierced, pierces, piercing, thrust ... through

### pig

#### Related Ideas:

boar, pork, swine

#### Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

* God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
* Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
* There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
* Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."
* A "boar" is a wild pig. Wild pigs are usually fierce and dangerous.

(See also: [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:22
* Mark 05:13
* Matthew 07:6
* Matthew 08:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2386, G5519

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

boar, boars, pig, pigs, pork, swine, swine's

### pit

#### Related Ideas:

pitfall, quarry

#### Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

* People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
* A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
* Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
* The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](../other/abyss.md), [hell](../kt/hell.md), [prison](../other/prison.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 37:21-22
* Job 33:18
* Luke 06:39
* Proverbs 01:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

### plague

#### Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

* Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
* In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
* This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: [hail](../other/hail.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md))

#### Picture of a Plague of skin:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/p/Plagueskin.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/p/Plagueskin.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:13-14
* Exodus 09:14
* Genesis 12:17-20
* Luke 21:11
* Revelation 09:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G3061, G4127

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

plague, plagues

### plead

#### Related Ideas:

appeal, ask earnestly, humble request, plea

#### Definitions:

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

* Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
* People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
* Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.
* The word translated "humble request" refers specifically to a humble request for favor or mercy.
* To "plead someone's cause" is to testify in court before a judge that the judge should rule in favor of the person whose cause it is.
* A "legal plea" or "cause" is what someone who is trying to get justice tells a judge in a court trial.
* An "earnest appeal" is a serious, humble request.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "plead" could also be translated as "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
* The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
* Judges 06:31
* Luke 04:39
* Proverbs 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1162, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal, asked ... earnestly, cause, earnest appeal, earnest appeals, earnestly appeal, earnestly appealed, humble request, humble requests, legal plea, moved by ... plea, plea, plea for favor, plead, plead ... cause, pleaded, pleading, pleadings, pleads, pleas

### plow

#### Related Ideas:

farmer, plowman, plowshare, unplowed

#### Definition:

A "plow" is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

* Plows have sharp, pointed prongs or blades that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
* A "plowshare" is the main cutting blade on a plow.
* In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
* Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.
* A "plowman" or a "plower" is a person who uses a plow.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The terms "plowman" and "plower" can also be translated more generally as "farmer."

(See also: [bronze](../other/bronze.md), [ox](../other/cow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:10-12
* Deuteronomy 21:04
* Luke 09:62
* Luke 17:07
* Psalm 141:5-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

farmers, plow, plowed, plowers, plowing, plowman, plowmen, plows, plowshares, unplowed

### possess

#### Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

#### Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

* In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
* When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
* Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
* The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
* The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
* "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
* The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
* When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
* The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
* The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
* The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 06:70
* 1 Kings 09:17-19
* Acts 02:45
* Deuteronomy 04:5-6
* Genesis 31:36-37
* Matthew 13:44

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

### power

#### Related Ideas:

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

#### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

* The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
* God has complete power over everything that he has created.
* God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
* Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
* Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
* An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Colossians 01:11-12
* Genesis 31:29
* Jeremiah 18:21
* Jude 01:25
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 26:64
* Philippians 03:21
* Psalm 080:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

### praise

#### Related Ideas:

praiseworthy

#### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person. Something that is praiseworthy is good and deserves to be praised.

* People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
* Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
* Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
* Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
* The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 01:03
* Acts 02:47
* Acts 13:48
* Daniel 03:28
* Ephesians 01:03
* Genesis 49:8
* James 03:9-10
* John 05:41-42
* Luke 01:46
* Luke 01:64-66
* Luke 19:37-38
* Matthew 11:25-27
* Matthew 15:29-31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1289, H1319, H1984, H2142, H2167, H7121, H8416, G1392, G1843, G2127, G2128, G2129, G2980, G3170, G3853, G5485, G5567

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

praise, praised, praises, praiseworthy, praising, sing praise, sing praises

### pray

#### Related Ideas:

prayer

#### Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

* People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
* Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
* Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
* People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
* Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
* Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
* This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:09
* Acts 08:24
* Acts 14:26
* Colossians 04:04
* John 17:09
* Luke 11:1
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 14:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

### preach

#### Related Ideas:

preacher

#### Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

* Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
* "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
* "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
* The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
* What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:1-2
* Acts 08:4-5
* Acts 10:42-43
* Acts 14:21-22
* Acts 20:25
* Luke 04:42
* Matthew 03:1-3
* Matthew 04:17
* Matthew 12:41
* Matthew 24:14
* Acts 09:20-22
* Acts 13:38-39
* Jonah 03:1-3
* Luke 04:18-19
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 10:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G312, G518, G1344, G2097, G2511, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3870, G4283

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

preach, preached, preacher, preaching

### priest

#### Related Ideas:

priesthood, priestly office

#### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

* In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
* The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
* The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
* Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
* The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
* In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
* Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
* In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
* In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
* The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
* Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
* The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](../names/aaron.md), [chief priests](../other/chiefpriests.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [mediator](../other/mediator.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 14:17-18
* Genesis 47:22
* John 01:19-21
* Luke 10:31
* Mark 01:44
* Mark 02:25-26
* Matthew 08:4
* Matthew 12:04
* Micah 03:9-11
* Nehemiah 10:28-29
* Nehemiah 10:34-36
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

### prince

#### Related Ideas:

princess

#### Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

* The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
* Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
* In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
* The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
* Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
* Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
* In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
* When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
* When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:29-32
* Genesis 12:15
* Genesis 49:26
* Luke 01:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5461, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

prince, princes, princess, princesses

### prison

#### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

#### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

* The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
* The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
* Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
* To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
* A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another word for "prison" is "jail."
* The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
* The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:04
* Ephesians 04:01
* Luke 12:58
* Luke 22:33-34
* Mark 06:17
* Matthew 05:26
* Matthew 14:03
* Matthew 25:34-36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### profit

#### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

#### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

* More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
* Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
* 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

* It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
* Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
* This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](../kt/worthy.md))

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
* The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
* To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
* In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

#### Bible References:

* Job 15:03
* Proverbs 10:16
* Jeremiah 02:08
* Ezekiel 18:12-13
* John 06:63
* Mark 08:36
* Matthew 16:26
* 2 Peter 02:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

### promise

#### Related Ideas:

binding promise

#### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

* The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
* Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
* A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
* To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:15-16
* Genesis 25:31-34
* Hebrews 11:09
* James 01:12
* Numbers 30:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

### prophet

#### Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

#### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

* Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
* A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
* Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
* Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
* In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
* For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
* An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
* Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
* A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
* The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
* Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
* The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
* The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
* When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](../names/baal.md), [divination](../other/divination.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false prophet](../other/falseprophet.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* Acts 03:25
* John 01:43-45
* Malachi 04:4-6
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 02:18
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalm 051:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

### prostitute

#### Related Ideas:

prostitution

#### Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

* In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
* The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
* To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
* In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
* This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [sexual immorality](../other/fornication.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 34:31
* Genesis 38:21
* Luke 15:30
* Matthew 21:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act like a prostitute, acted like a prostitute, acted like prostitutes, prostitute, prostitute's, prostituted, prostitutes, prostitution

### proud

#### Related Ideas:

pride, prideful

#### Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

* A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
* Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
* The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
* Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
* The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
* In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
* To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
* The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
* The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](../other/arrogant.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [joy](../other/joy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:6-7
* 2 Corinthians 01:12
* Galatians 06:3-5
* Isaiah 13:19
* Luke 01:51

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

### proverb

#### Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

* Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
* Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
* Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
* King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
* Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
* Ways to translate "proverb" could include "wise saying" or "true word."

(See also: [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 04:32-34
* 1 Samuel 24:12-13
* 2 Peter 02:22
* Luke 04:24
* Proverbs 01:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

proverb, proverbs, speak ... proverb

### punish

#### Related Ideas:

bring down judgment, deal with, inflict punishment, judgment, punishment, unpunished

#### Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

* Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
* God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
* God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
* Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
* The expression "leave someone unpunished" means to decide not to punish someone for their wrongdoing.
* The expression "go unpunished" means to sin and not be punished for it. God often allows people to go unpunished as he waits for them to repent.
* To "bring down judgment" on someone is to punish him after declaring him guilty of wrongful behavior.
* Sometimes "judgment" refers to punishment.
* Sometimes "deal with" means punish.

(See also: [just](../kt/justice.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* 2 Thessalonians 01:09
* Acts 04:21
* Acts 07:59-60
* Genesis 04:15
* Luke 23:16
* Matthew 25:46

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2403, H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5352, H5414, H5771, H6031, H6213, H6485, H6486, H7451, H7561, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G2851, G2917, G2920, G3811, G5097

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring down judgment, go ... unpunished, inflicted punishment, inflicting punishment, judgment, leave ... unpunished, punish, punished, punishes, punishing, punishment, unpunished

### purple

#### Definitions:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

* In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
* Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
* Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
* Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
* Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
* Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(See also: [ephod](../kt/ephod.md), [Philippi](../names/philippi.md), [royal](../other/royal.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
* Daniel 05:7
* Daniel 05:29-31
* Proverbs 31:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

purple

### rage

#### Related Ideas:

enrage

#### Definitions:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

* Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
* When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
* When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
* To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
* "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
* To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
* To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
* When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively.

* The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [angry](../other/angry.md), [self-control](../other/selfcontrol.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:25
* Daniel 03:13
* Luke 04:28
* Numbers 25:11
* Proverbs 19:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

### raise

#### Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

#### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

* The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
* "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

* When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
* If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
* Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
* A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
* To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
* To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
* The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
* Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
* The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
* Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](../kt/resurrection.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [exalt](../kt/exalt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* 2 Samuel 07:12
* Acts 10:40
* Colossians 03:01
* Deuteronomy 13:1-3
* Jeremiah 06:01
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 07:22
* Matthew 20:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### reap

#### Related Ideas:

reaper

#### Definition:

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

* Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
* The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
* This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants."
* Other ways to translate to "reap" and "reaper" could include to "harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [harvest](../other/harvest.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 06:9-10
* Matthew 06:25-26
* Matthew 13:30
* Matthew 13:36-39
* Matthew 25:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4672, H7114, H7938, G2325, G2327

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reap, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping, reaps

### rebel

#### Related Ideas:

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

#### Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

* A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
* A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
* Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
* The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
* "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
* The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
* The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [governor](../other/governor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 12:18-19
* 1 Samuel 12:14
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
* Acts 21:38
* Luke 23:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

### rebuke

#### Related Ideas:

correct, correction

#### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

* A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
* The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
* The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
* The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
* "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](../other/admonish.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 01:23-26
* Mark 16:14
* Matthew 08:26-27
* Matthew 17:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

### receive

#### Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

#### Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

* To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
* There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
* To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
* To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
* When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
* The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
* The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
* The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:09
* 1 Thessalonians 01:06
* 1 Thessalonians 04:01
* Acts 08:15
* Jeremiah 32:33
* Luke 09:05
* Malachi 03:10-12
* Psalms 049:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reconcile

#### Related Ideas:

reconciliation

#### Definition:

The term "reconcile" refers to "making peace" between people who were formerly enemies of each other. "Reconciliation" is that act of making peace

* In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
* Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
* Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "reconcile" could be translated as "make peace" or "restore good relations" or "cause to be friends."
* The term "reconciliation" could be translated as "restoring good relations" or "making peace" or "causing peaceful relating."

(See also: [peace](../other/peace.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:19
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Matthew 05:24
* Proverbs 13:17-18
* Romans 05:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G525, G604, G1259, G2643, G2644

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reconcile, reconciled, reconciles, reconciliation, reconciling

### redeem

#### Related Ideas:

redeemer, redemption

#### Definition:

To "redeem" and "redemption" refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. "Redemption" is the action of doing that. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

* God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
* For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
* If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
* These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
* The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "the buying back."
* The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: [free](../other/free.md), [ransom](../kt/ransom.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:13-14
* Ephesians 01:7-8
* Ephesians 05:16
* Galatians 03:13-14
* Galatians 04:05
* Luke 02:38
* Ruth 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6306, H6304, H7069, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

redeem, redeemed, redeemer, redeems, redemption

### reed

#### Definitions:

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

* The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
* These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
* The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [Nile River](../names/nileriver.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 14:15
* Luke 07:24
* Matthew 11:07
* Matthew 12:20
* Psalm 068:30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

### reign

#### Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

* The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
* God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
* When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
* This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 19:26-27
* Matthew 02:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

### reject

#### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

#### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

* To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
* To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
* To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
* An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
* In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
* In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
* In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:12-14
* Hosea 04:6-7
* Isaiah 41:09
* John 12:48-50
* Mark 07:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

### repent

#### Related Ideas:

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

#### Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

* To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
* In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
* When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
* A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
* A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
* Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
* Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:19-20
* Luke 03:3
* Luke 03:8
* Luke 05:32
* Luke 24:47
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 03:11
* Matthew 04:17
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### report

#### Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

#### Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

* "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
* The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
* Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
* A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 05:22-23
* John 12:38
* Luke 05:15
* Luke 08:34-35
* Matthew 28:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

### rest

#### Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

#### Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

* God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
* To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
* To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
* To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
* "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
* If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
* God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
* The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](../kt/remnant.md), [Sabbath](../kt/sabbath.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* Genesis 02:03
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Matthew 11:29
* Revelation 14:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

### restore

#### Related Ideas:

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

#### Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

* When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
* When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
* When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
* When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
* A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
* A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
* Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
* Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 5:10
* Acts 3:21
* Acts 15:15-18
* Isaiah 49:5-6
* Jeremiah 15:19-21
* Lamentations 05:22
* Leviticus 6:5-7
* Luke 19:8
* Matthew 12:13
* Psalm 80:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

### resurrection

#### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

* To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
* The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
* When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
* The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [death](../other/death.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:13
* 1 Peter 03:21
* Hebrews 11:35
* John 05:28-29
* Luke 20:27
* Luke 20:36
* Matthew 22:23
* Matthew 22:30
* Philippians 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

resurrection

### return

#### Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

* To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
* To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
* When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
* When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
* To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

### reveal

#### Related Ideas:

revelation

#### Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

* God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
* God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
* When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
* In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
* Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
* The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](../other/dream.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:1-2
* Ephesians 03:05
* Galatians 01:12
* Lamentations 02:13-14
* Matthew 10:26
* Philippians 03:15
* Revelation 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

### reward

#### Related Ideas:

pay, penalty, prize, recompense, retribution, rewarder, wage

#### Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives or earns because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

* A reward can be a good thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
* Sometimes a reward can refer to bad things that may result from bad behavior, such as "the reward of the wicked." This is either punishment or other painful things that happen to people because of their sinful actions.
* "Payment" and "wages" refer to what a person earns for working. These ideas can also be used to refer to a reward for doing good or to punishment for doing bad.
* A "prize" is a reward that someone receives for winning a contest.
* A "penalty" is a punishment for breaking the law.
* "Recompense" can be either good or bad. Good recompense is for good deeds, and bad recompense is for bad deeds.
* "Retribution" is punishment for doing wrong.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
* To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."

(See also: [punish](../other/punish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 32:06
* Isaiah 40:10
* Luke 06:35
* Mark 09:40-41
* Matthew 05:11-12
* Matthew 06:3-4
* Psalms 127:3-5
* Revelation 11:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H319, H814, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H2506, H3519, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8254, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pay, pay ... back, pays ... back, payment, penalty, prize, recompense, repay, repayment, retribution, reward, rewarded, rewarder, rewarding, rewards, wage, wages

### right hand

#### Related Ideas:

righthand side

#### Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

* The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
* The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
* A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
* To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
* Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
* The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
* Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
* The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power."
* The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: [accuse](../other/accuse.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [mighty](../other/mighty.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:33
* Colossians 03:01
* Galatians 02:09
* Genesis 48:14
* Hebrews 10:12
* Lamentations 02:03
* Matthew 25:33
* Matthew 26:64
* Psalms 044:03
* Revelation 02:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3225, H3231, G1188

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

right hand, right hands, righthand side

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

* These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
* Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
* When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

* These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
* Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
* Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
* "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

* The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
* A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
* Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."

God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."

When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."

The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."

Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good

Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."

The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."

The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."

If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."

Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."

The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [integrity](../other/integrity.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [unlawful](../other/lawful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:16
* Job 01:08
* Psalms 037:30
* Psalms 049:14
* Psalms 107:42
* Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
* Isaiah 48:1-2
* Ezekiel 33:13
* Malachi 02:06
* Matthew 06:01
* Acts 03:13-14
* Romans 01:29-31
* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* Galatians 03:07
* Colossians 03:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* 1 Peter 03:18-20
* 1 John 01:09
* 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### robe

#### Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

#### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

* Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
* Robes can be long or short.
* Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
* The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
* A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
* A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](../other/royal.md), [tunic](../other/tunic.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 28:4-5
* Genesis 49:11-12
* Luke 15:22
* Luke 20:46
* Matthew 27:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

### rod

#### Related Ideas:

measuring rod

#### Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

* A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
* In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
* A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
* Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
* In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
* In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](../other/staff.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:21
* 1 Samuel 14:43-44
* Acts 16:23
* Exodus 27:9-10
* Revelation 11:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

### ruin

#### Related Ideas:

rubble, ruins

#### Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

* The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
* The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
* Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
* The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
* 2 Kings 19:25-26
* Acts 15:16
* Isaiah 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1091, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2015, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2721, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5307, H5327, H5422, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H6561, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2506, G2647, G2679, G2692, G3089, G3639, G4485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allowed to become ruined, rubble, ruin, ruined, ruining, ruins

### ruler

#### Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

#### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

* In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
* God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
* In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
* Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
* Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
* The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
* To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [governor](../other/governor.md), [king](../other/king.md), [synagogue](../kt/synagogue.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:17-18
* Acts 07:35-37
* Luke 12:11
* Luke 23:35
* Mark 10:42
* Matthew 09:32-34
* Matthew 20:25
* Titus 03:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

### run

#### Related Ideas:

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

#### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

* To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
* To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
* To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
* The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
* The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [refuge](../other/refuge.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:18
* Galatians 02:02
* Galatians 05:07
* Philippians 02:16
* Proverbs 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

### sackcloth

#### Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

* A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
* The phrase "sackcloth and ashes" was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "coarse cloth from animal hair" or "clothes made of goat hair" or "rough, scratchy clothing."
* Another way to translate this term could be "rough, scratchy mourning clothes."
* The phrase "sit in sackcloth and ashes" could be translated as "show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes."

(See also: [ash](../other/ash.md), [camel](../other/camel.md), [goat](../other/goat.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [mourn](../other/mourn.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sign](../kt/sign.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 03:31
* Genesis 37:34
* Joel 01:8-10
* Jonah 03:05
* Luke 10:13
* Matthew 11:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H8242, G4526

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sackcloth

### sacrifice

#### Related Ideas:

offering

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

* The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
* Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
* The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
* Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
* Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
* The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
* Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
* The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
* Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [burnt offering](../other/burntoffering.md), [drink offering](../other/drinkoffering.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [fellowship offering](../other/fellowshipoffering.md), [freewill offering](../other/freewilloffering.md) [peace offering](../other/peaceoffering.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [sin offering](../other/sinoffering.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:06
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 21:25
* Genesis 04:3-5
* James 02:21-24
* Mark 01:43-44
* Mark 14:12
* Matthew 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

### sandal

#### Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

* A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
* Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
* John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33
* Deuteronomy 25:10
* John 01:27
* Joshua 05:15
* Mark 06:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sandal, sandals

### save

#### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

#### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

* In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
* In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
* People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

* In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
* The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

"God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."

"You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:18
* Genesis 47:25-26
* Psalms 080:03
* Jeremiah 16:19-21
* Micah 06:3-5
* Luke 02:30
* Luke 08:36-37
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 28:28
* Acts 02:21
* Romans 01:16
* Romans 10:10
* Ephesians 06:17
* Philippians 01:28
* 1 Timothy 01:15-17
* Revelation 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### scribe

#### Related Ideas:

clerk, scholar

#### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

* Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
* They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
* At times, scribes were important government officials.
* Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
* In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
* In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:05
* Luke 07:29-30
* Luke 20:47
* Mark 01:22
* Mark 02:16
* Matthew 05:19-20
* Matthew 07:28
* Matthew 12:38
* Matthew 13:52

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

### scroll

#### Related Ideas:

book, certificate, document, literature

#### Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

* After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
* Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
* Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
* Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.
* The word "book" in the Biblerefers to scrolls or paper that had writing on them.
* A "document" is an official written record.
* A "certificate of divorce" is an official document that a man could give to his wife to end their marriage.
* "Literature" is written things that educated people considered to be great.

(See also: [seal](../other/seal.md), [synagogue](../kt/synagogue.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jeremiah 29:03
* Luke 04:17
* Numbers 21:14-15
* Revelation 05:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

book, books, certificate, document, documents, literature, scroll, scrolls

### seed

#### Related Words:

semen

#### Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

* The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called "semen."
* Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
* This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
* In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
* The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
* The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
* For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
* For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people.

(See also: [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:32
* Genesis 01:11
* Jeremiah 02:21
* Matthew 13:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G2848, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seed, seeds, semen

### seek

#### Related Ideas:

go to find, look out for, search, try

#### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

* To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
* To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
* To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
* To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
* To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
* To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
* To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
* To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [just](../kt/justice.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 10:14
* Acts 17:26-27
* Hebrews 11:06
* Luke 11:09
* Psalms 027:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

### seize

#### Related Ideas:

seizure

#### Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

* When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
* When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
* In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
* This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
* The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.
* The term "seizure" refers to the action of taking someone or something by force.

#### Bible References:

* Acts 16:19-21
* Exodus 15:14
* John 10:37-39
* Luke 08:29
* Matthew 26:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H270, H1204, H1497, H1589, H2254, H2388, H2488, H3027, H3423, H3680, G3860, H3920, H3947, H4672, H4685, H5337, H5367, H5375, H5860, H5927, H7760, H8610, G724, G726, G1949, G2638, G2666, G2902, G2983, G3346, G4023, G4084, G4815, G4884, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

seize, seized, seizes, seizing, seizure

### selah

#### Definition:

The term "selah" is a Hebrew word that occurs mostly in the book of Psalms. It has several possible meanings.

* It could mean "pause and praise," which would invite the audience to think carefully about what was just said.
* Since many of the Psalms were written as songs, it is thought that "selah" may have been a musical term to instruct the singer to pause in his singing to allow for the musical instruments to play alone or to encourage listeners to think about the words of the song.

(See also: [psalm](../kt/psalm.md))

#### Bible References:

* Psalm 003:3-4
* Psalm 024:5-6
* Psalms 046:6-7

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

selah

### send

#### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

* Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
* Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
* The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
* To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
* To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
* Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [redeem](../kt/redeem.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:33-34
* Acts 08:14-17
* John 20:21-23
* Matthew 09:37-38
* Matthew 10:05
* Matthew 10:40
* Matthew 21:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

### serpent

#### Related Ideas:

adder, asp, snake, viper

#### Definitions:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake. The terms "viper," "adder," and "asp" refer to types of snakes that have venom which they uses to poison their prey.

* This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
* Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
* In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
* After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(See also: [curse](../kt/curse.md), [deceive](../other/deceive.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Eden](../names/eden.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [offspring](../other/offspring.md), [prey](../other/prey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 03:03
* Genesis 03:4-6
* Genesis 03:12-13
* Mark 16:17-18
* Matthew 03:07
* Matthew 23:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

adder, adders, asp, asps, serpent, serpent's, serpents, snake, snakes, viper, viper's, vipers

### servant

#### Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

#### Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

* A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
* In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
* In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
* In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
* In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
* Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

* In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
* To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
* People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [household](../other/household.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References

* Acts 04:29-31
* Acts 10:7-8
* Colossians 01:7-8
* Colossians 03:22-25
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 12:47-48
* Mark 09:33-35
* Matthew 10:24-25
* Matthew 13:27-28
* 2 Timothy 02:3-5
* Acts 06:2-4
* Genesis 25:23
* Luke 04:8
* Luke 12:37-38
* Luke 22:26-27
* Mark 08:7-10
* Matthew 04:10-11
* Matthew 06:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### set apart

#### Related Ideas:

distinct, make a distinction, treat differently

#### Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" people or things means to make them "set apart." This also means to "treat" them "differently." When something is "distinct," it is different from other things.

* The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
* The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
* A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
* One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
* To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
* To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 03:17-19
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Judges 17:12
* Numbers 03:11-13
* Philippians 01:1-2
* Romans 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5144, H5674, H6395, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G2564

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be distinct, making a distinction, set ... apart, sets ... apart, treat ... differently, treating ... differently

### shadow

#### Related Ideas:

overshadow, shade

#### Definition:

The word "shadow" literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. The shadow has a shape similar to the shape of the object that blocks the light.

* The word "overshadow" means to block the light from above and cause a shadow to appear on something.
* The word "shade" means a dark area where the sunlight is blocked, perhaps by a cloud or a trees.

The word "shadow" also has several figurative meanings.

* The "shadow of death" means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
* Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
* Sometimes "shadow" is used as another word for "darkness."
* The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God's wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate "shadow" in these contexts could include "shade" or "safety" or "protection."
* It is best to translate "shadow" literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [light](../other/light.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 20:09
* Genesis 19:08
* Isaiah 30:02
* Jeremiah 06:04
* Psalms 017:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

overshadow, overshadowed, shade, shadow, shadows

### shame

#### Related Ideas:

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

#### Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

* Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
* The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
* The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.
* The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
* God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
* A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
* A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
* A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [humiliate](../other/humiliate.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:15-17
* 2 Kings 02:17
* 2 Samuel 13:13
* Luke 20:11
* Mark 08:38
* Mark 12:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

### sheep

#### Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

#### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

* A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
* The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
* People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
* Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
* In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
* A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
* A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [lamb](../kt/lamb.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:32
* Genesis 30:32
* John 02:14
* Luke 15:05
* Mark 06:34
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 12:12
* Matthew 25:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### shepherd

#### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.

In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.

David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.

In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.

Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
* The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
* When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
* In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
* The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
* In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Moses](../names/moses.md), [pastor](../kt/pastor.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:24
* Luke 02:09
* Mark 06:34
* Mark 14:26-27
* Matthew 02:06
* Matthew 09:36
* Matthew 25:32
* Matthew 26:31

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsmen, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

### shrewd

#### Related Ideas:

crafty

#### Definition:

The term "shrewd" describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

* Often the term "shrewd" has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
* A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
* Other ways to translate this term could include "cunning" or "crafty" or "smart" or "clever," depending on the context.
* A "crafty" person knows how to deceive others so they will do what he wants them to do.

#### Bible References:

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2450, H6175, H6191, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crafty, shrewd, shrewdly

### sign

#### Related Ideas:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

#### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

"Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:

The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.

God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.

Signs can reveal or point to something:

An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.

Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

Signs can prove that something is true:

The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.

The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.

An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
* To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
* In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](../kt/miracle.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [circumcise](../kt/circumcise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:18-19
* Exodus 04:8-9
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Genesis 01:14
* Genesis 09:12
* John 02:18
* Luke 02:12
* Mark 08:12
* Psalms 089:5-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

### silver

#### Related Ideas:

money

#### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

* The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
* Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
* In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
* Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
* Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 02:36
* 2 Kings 25:13-15
* Acts 03:06
* Matthew 26:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### sister

#### Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person’s sister or the sister of that other person.

* In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
* Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or wife.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
* If possible, it is best to use a family term.
* If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
* When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](../kt/brother.md) [in Christ](../kt/inchrist.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
* Deuteronomy 27:22
* Philemon 01:02
* Romans 16:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H269, G27, G79

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sister, sister's, sisters, sisters'

### son

#### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

* "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
* The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
* Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
* God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
* The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
* The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
* Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
* When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
* When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
* Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
* The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:15
* 1 Kings 13:02
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* Galatians 04:07
* Hosea 11:01
* Isaiah 09:06
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 08:12
* Nehemiah 10:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

### sons of God

#### Related Ideas:

children of God

#### Definition:

The term "sons of God" is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

* In the New Testament, the term "sons of God" refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as "children of God" since it includes both males and females.
* This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
* Some people interpret the term "sons of God" that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
* The title "Son of God" is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God's only Son.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "sons of God" refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as "children of God."
* In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate "sons of God" could include "angels," "spirit beings," "supernatural creatures," or "demons."
* Also see the link for "son."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 06:02
* Genesis 06:4
* Job 01:06
* Romans 08:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

children of God, sons of ... God

### soul

#### Related Ideas:

person

#### Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

* The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
* When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
* The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
* In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
* Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
* Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
* In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Acts 02:27-28
* Acts 02:41
* Genesis 49:06
* Isaiah 53:10-11
* James 01:21
* Jeremiah 06:16-19
* Jonah 02:7-8
* Luke 01:47
* Matthew 22:37
* Psalms 019:07
* Revelation 20:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5315, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

### sow

#### Related Ideas:

plant, plantation, transplanted

#### Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "plant" something is to put it in the ground so that it can grow. To "sow" is to scatter seeds on the ground so they can go into the ground and grow. A "sower" is a person who sows seeds.

* Sometimes people plant seeds or plants by making holes in the soil and placing seeds or a plant in each hole.
* When someone plants seeds by sowing, he takes handfuls of seeds and scatters them on the ground.
* The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.
* A "plantation" is a large field where people plant crops.
* To "transplant" something is to move it from one place and plant it in another place.

#### Translations Suggestions

* The term "sow" could be translated as "plant" if that word can include planting seeds by scattering them.
* The term "sower" could be translated as "planter" or "farmer" or "person who scatters seeds."
* The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could be translated as "just as a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, a person's good actions bring good results and a person's evil actions bring evil results."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [reap](../other/reap.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 06:08
* Luke 08:05
* Matthew 06:25-26
* Matthew 13:04
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 25:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H3759, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

place ... planted, plant, plantation, planted, planting, plants, replanted, sow, sowed, sowing, sown, sows, transplanted

### spirit

#### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

#### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

* The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
* A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
* In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
* In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
* For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
* God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
* Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
* The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
* Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
* In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
* Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
* The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
* Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
* The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
* The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
* The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md), [divination](../other/divination.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 John 04:03
* 1 Thessalonians 05:23
* Acts 05:09
* Colossians 01:09
* Ephesians 04:23
* Genesis 07:21-22
* Isaiah 04:04
* Mark 01:23-26
* Matthew 26:41
* Philippians 01:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### staff

#### Related Ideas:

club, walking stick

#### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

* When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
* God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
* Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
* The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
* A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](../names/pharaoh.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 04:1-3
* Exodus 07:09
* Luke 09:03
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:8-10
* Matthew 27:29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

### statute

#### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

* The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and " command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
* King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
* The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [decree](../other/decree.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [ordinance](../other/ordinance.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:11-13
* Deuteronomy 06:20-23
* Ezekiel 33:15
* Numbers 19:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

statute, statutes

### stone

#### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

* In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
* God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
* In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
* Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
* In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [commit](../other/commit.md), [crime](../other/criminal.md), [death](../other/death.md), [Lystra](../names/lystra.md), [testimony](../kt/testimony.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:57-58
* Acts 07:59-60
* Acts 14:05
* Acts 14:19-20
* John 08:4-6
* Luke 13:34
* Luke 20:06
* Matthew 23:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

### storehouse

#### Related Ideas:

barn, storage, store cities, storerooms, treasure, treasury

#### Definition:

A "storehouse" is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

* In the Bible a "storehouse" was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
* The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
* The term "storehouse" can also be used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
* Other ways to translate "storehouse" could include "a building for storing grain" or "place for keeping food" or "room for keeping valuable things safe."
* A "treasure" is a very valuable object.
* A "treasury" is can be a place where treasures are stored, but it is more often a place where officials store money.

(See also: [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [dedicate](../other/dedicate.md), [famine](../other/famine.md), [gold](../other/gold.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Psalms 033:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H1004, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

barn, barns, storage, store cities, storehouse, storehouses, storerooms, treasure, treasures, treasuries, treasury

### strength

#### Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

* "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
* A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
* One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
* If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### Translation Suggestions

In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."

In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."

The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.

"puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."

"in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."

"will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."

"by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."

"strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."

"I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"

"in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."

"the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"

"with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."

"of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."

"with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [right hand](../kt/righthand.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 2 Peter 02:11
* Luke 10:27
* Psalm 021:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### strong drink

#### Definition:

The term "strong drink" refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

* Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
* Kinds of "strong drink" include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. Distilled alcoholic drinks had not been invented yet. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
* Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the "Nazirite vow" were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
* This term could also be translated as "fermented drink" or "alcoholic drink."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [Nazirite](../kt/nazirite.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 05:11-12
* Leviticus 10:09
* Luke 01:14-15
* Numbers 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5435, H7941, H8248, G4608

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

strong drink, strong drinks

### stumble

#### Related Ideas:

reel

#### Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

* Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
* This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
* "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing.""
* The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

#### Translation Suggestions

* In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
* When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
* The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [stumbling block](../other/stumblingblock.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 02:08
* Hosea 04:05
* Isaiah 31:3
* Matthew 11:4-6
* Matthew 18:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

### stumbling block

#### Related Ideas:

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling

#### Definition:

The term "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

* A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
* Also figuratively, a "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
* Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
* Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
* This term could also be translated as "stone that causes stumbling" or "something that causes someone to not believe" or "obstacle that causes doubt" or "obstacle to faith" or "something that causes someone to sin."

(See also: [stumble](../other/stumble.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:23
* Galatians 05:11
* Matthew 05:29-30
* Matthew 16:23
* Romans 09:33

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4383, H6697, G3037, G4349, G4625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

occasion for stumbling, stone of stumbling, stumbling block, stumbling blocks

### submit

#### Related Ideas:

submission

#### Definition:

To "submit" usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

* The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
* The instruction to "submit to one another" means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
* To "live in submission to" means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The command "submit to" could be translated as "put yourself under the authority of" or "follow the leadership of" or "humbly honor and respect"
* The term "submission" could be translated as "obedience" or "the following of authority."
* The phrase "live in submission to" could be translated as "be obedient to" or "put oneself under the authority of."
* The phrase "be in submission" could be translated as "humbly accept authority."

(See also: [subject](../other/subject.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
* 1 Peter 03:01
* Hebrews 13:15-17
* Luke 10:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3584, G5226, G5292, G5293

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in submission, submission, submit, submits, submitted, submitting

### suffer

#### Related Ideas:

misery

#### Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

* When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
* Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
* Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
* 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
* Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
* The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
* To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* Acts 07:11-13
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 06:6-8
* Matthew 16:21
* Psalms 022:24
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

### sulfur

#### Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

* Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
* In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
* During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
* In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: [Gomorrah](../names/gomorrah.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [Lot](../names/lot.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md), [Sodom](../names/sodom.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 19:24
* Isaiah 34:09
* Luke 17:29
* Revelation 20:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1614, G2303

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sulfur

### sweep

#### Definitions:

To "sweep" usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. "Swept" is the past tense of "sweep." These words are also used figuratively.

* The term "sweep" is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
* For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would "sweep through" the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
* The term "sweep" can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
* When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are "sweeping over" him.

(See also: [Assyria](../names/assyria.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 16:03
* Daniel 11:40-41
* Genesis 18:24
* Proverbs 21:7-8
* Psalms 090:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H5674, H7857, G4216, G4563, G4951

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sweep, sweep ... away, sweeping, sweeps, swept, swept up

### sword

#### Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

#### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

* In ancient times the length of a sword’s blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
* Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
* Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
* Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
* A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

#### Translation Suggestions

* A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
* One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
* Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
* If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
* A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James (brother of Jesus)](../names/jamesbrotherofjesus.md), [John (the Baptist)](../names/johnthebaptist.md), [tongue](../other/tongue.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 12:02
* Genesis 27:40
* Genesis 34:25
* Luke 02:33-35
* Luke 21:24
* Matthew 10:34
* Matthew 26:55
* Revelation 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

### synagogue

#### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

* Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
* The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
* Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
* The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](../other/heal.md), [Jerusalem](../names/jerusalem.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [pray](../kt/pray.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:09
* Acts 14:1-2
* Acts 15:21
* Acts 24:10-13
* John 06:59
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 06:1-2
* Matthew 09:35-36
* Matthew 13:54

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G656, G752, G4864

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

synagogue, synagogues

### tax

#### Related Ideas:

tax collector, taxation, taxpayers, toll

#### Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

* The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
* In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
* If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
* Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
* The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
* To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government.
* A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
* The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
* Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
* The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
* The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.
* A "toll" is a tax for using a road or a tax on things that people by or sell.

(See also: [Jew](../kt/jew.md), [Rome](../names/rom.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References

* Luke 20:21-22
* Mark 02:13-14
* Matthew 09:7-9
* Numbers 31:28-29
* Romans 13:6-7
* Luke 03:12-13
* Luke 05:27-28
* Matthew 05:46-48
* Matthew 09:10-11
* Matthew 11:18-19
* Matthew 17:26-27
* Matthew 18:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1093, H1983, H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H5065, H5674, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5057, G5058, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tax, tax collector, tax collectors, taxation, taxed, taxes, taxing, taxpayers, toll, tolls

### teach

#### Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

#### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

* A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
* When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
* Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
* The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
* The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
* Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
* A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
* A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
* A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [teacher](../other/teacher.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* John 07:14
* Luke 04:31
* Matthew 04:23
* Psalms 032:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

### teacher

#### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

* In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
* People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
* In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
* Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
* Ephesians 04:11-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Habakkuk 02:18
* James 03:02
* John 01:37-39
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 12:38-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

### temple

#### Related Ideas:

shrine

#### Definitions:

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

* Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
* The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
* God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
* King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
* In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
* A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
* Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
* Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
* Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [Solomon](../names/solomon.md), [Babylon](../names/babylon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [courtyard](../other/courtyard.md), [Zion](../kt/zion.md), [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:02
* Acts 03:08
* Ezekiel 45:18-20
* Luke 19:46
* Nehemiah 10:28
* Psalm 079:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

### tempt

#### Related Ideas:

temptation, tempter

#### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

* A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
* People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
* Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
* Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
* Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
* Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
* To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [test](../kt/test.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
* Hebrews 04:15
* James 01:13
* Luke 04:02
* Luke 11:04
* Matthew 26:41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

* Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
* For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
* The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
* The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
* When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
* The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
* To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
* To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [curtain](../other/curtain.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [tent of meeting](../other/tentofmeeting.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:10
* Daniel 11:45
* Exodus 16:18
* Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

#### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

* God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
* God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
* Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
* To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
* In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
* Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
* Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
* To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
* In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
* In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:01
* 1 Thessalonians 05:21
* Acts 15:10
* Genesis 22:01
* Isaiah 07:13
* James 01:12
* Lamentations 03:40-43
* Malachi 03:10
* Philippians 01:10
* Psalm 026:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

### testimony

#### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

#### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

* Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
* A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
* Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
* In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

* To "witness" something means to see it happen.
* At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
* Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
* A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
* The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony":

* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened."
* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said."
* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness":

* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 31:28
* Micah 06:03
* Matthew 26:60
* Mark 01:44
* John 01:07
* John 03:33
* Acts 04:32-33
* Acts 07:44
* Acts 13:31
* Romans 01:09
* 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
* 1 Timothy 05:19-20
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* 2 Peter 01:16-18
* 1 John 05:6-8
* 3 John 01:12
* Revelation 12:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses

### tetrarch

#### Definition:

The term "tetrarch" refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

* The title "tetrarch" means "one of four joint rulers."
* Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
* The kingdom of of Herod "the Great," who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as "tetrarchs," or "rulers of a fourth."
* Each division had one or more smaller parts called "provinces," such as Galilee or Samaria.
* "Herod the tetrarch" is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as "Herod Antipas."
* The term "tetrarch" could also be translated as "regional governor" or "provincial ruler" or "ruler" or "governor."

(See also: [governor](../other/governor.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 03:1-2
* Luke 09:07
* Matthew 14:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5075, G5076

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tetrarch

### the sea

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

* The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
* This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
* Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [prosper](../other/prosper.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 47:15-17
* Ezekiel 47:18-20
* Joshua 15:3-4
* Numbers 13:27-29

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### the twelve

#### Related Ideas:

the eleven

#### Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

* Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
* The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
* Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
* "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
* Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
* Acts 06:02
* Luke 09:01
* Luke 18:31
* Mark 10:32-34
* Matthew 10:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1427, G1733

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

the eleven, the twelve

### thief

#### Related Ideas:

bandit, booty, loot, marauding band, plunder, raider, revolutionary, rob, robber, robbery, steal

#### Definitions:

The term "thief" refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of "thief" is "thieves." The term "robber" often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

* Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
* Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
* In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan's plan is to try to get God's people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
* Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.
* "Marauding bands" and "raiding parties" are large groups people who go from place to place to steal things and cause others harm.
* "Bandits" are thieves who work together.
* "Plunder" and "loot" are words that mean the same thing as "steal." They are used to speak of stealing many things at one time.
* "Raiders" are people who attack others, stealing and destroying property, and often killing and harming the people whose property they are stealing.
* The words "booty," "loot," and "plunder" also refer to the things that are stolen.

(See also: [bless](../kt/bless.md), [crime](../other/criminal.md), [crucify](../kt/crucify.md), [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [destroyer](../other/destroyer.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [Samaria](../names/samaria.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:10
* Luke 12:33
* Mark 14:48
* Proverbs 06:30
* Revelation 03:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H957, H962, H1214, H1416, H1497, H1589, H1590, H1980, H4455, H6530, H7703, H7997, G727, G941, G2417, G2812, G3027

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bandits, booty, loot, marauding band, marauding bands, plunder, plundered, plundered things, raiders, raiding parties, raiding party, revolutionary, rob, robbed, robber, robbers, robbery, robbing, robs, steal, stealing, steals, stolen, thief, thieves

### thorn

#### Related Ideas:

thistle, thornbush

#### Definitions:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

* A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
* A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
* Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
* A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
* If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](../other/crown.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 06:7-8
* Matthew 13:07
* Matthew 13:22
* Numbers 33:55

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

thistle, thistles, thorn, thorn hedge, thornbush, thornbushes, thorns

### thresh

#### Related Ideas:

beat out

#### Definition:

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

* Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
* In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
* A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
* A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.
* To "beat out" is to separate the grain from the straw either by spreading the stalks on the ground and hitting them with a stick or board or by holding the base of a bundle of stalks and hitting the heads on a hard surface.

(See also: [chaff](../other/chaff.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [winnow](../other/winnow.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* 2 Kings 13:07
* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Daniel 02:35
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Ruth 03:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, H2742, G248

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beat ... out, beaten ... out, floors for threshing, thresh, threshed, threshes, threshing, threshing floor, threshing sledges

### throne

#### Related Ideas:

enthroned, seat of authority

#### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

* A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
* The word "throne" is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
* In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
* Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, "where God reigns as king."
* "Seat of authority" is another way to refer to a throne.
* "Enthroned" means "sitting on a throne." In the Bible, this talks about Yahweh ruling from heaven or his presence being between the cherubim on the ark of the covenant.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [king](../other/king.md), [reign](../other/reign.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 01:15-17
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 01:32
* Luke 22:30
* Matthew 05:34
* Matthew 19:28
* Revelation 01:4-6

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

enthroned, seat of authority, throne, thrones

### time

#### Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

* In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
* In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
* "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
* To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
* Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](../other/age.md), [tribulation](../other/tribulation.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:07
* Daniel 12:1-2
* Mark 11:11
* Matthew 08:29
* Psalms 068:28-29
* Revelation 14:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### tomb

#### Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

#### Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

* The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
* In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
* If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
* A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
* The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](../other/bury.md), [death](../other/death.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 02:29-31
* Genesis 23:06
* Genesis 50:05
* John 19:41
* Luke 23:53
* Mark 05:1-2
* Matthew 27:53
* Romans 03:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

### tongue

#### Related Ideas:

language

#### Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of "tongue" in the Bible.

* In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
* Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
* Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
* The expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire.
* In the expression "my tongue rejoices," the term "tongue" refers to the whole person.
* The phrase "lying tongue" refers to a person's voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](rc://en/ta/man/jit/figs-metonymy))

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated by "language" or "spiritual language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
* When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
* The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
* The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
* Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](../kt/gift.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [joy](../other/joy.md), [praise](../other/praise.md), [rejoice](../other/joy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:10
* 1 John 03:18
* 2 Samuel 23:02
* Acts 02:26
* Ezekiel 36:03
* Philippians 02:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

language, languages, tongue, tongues

### torment

#### Related Ideas:

tormentors, torture, torturer

#### Definitions:

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To "torment" or "torture" someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

* Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
* Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
* The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
* The term "torment" could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.
* A "tormentor" or a "torturer" is someone who torments or tortures other people.

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md), [Job](../names/job.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [suffer](../other/suffer.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 02:08
* Jeremiah 30:20-22
* Lamentations 01:11-12
* Luke 08:28-29
* Revelation 11:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3013, H6735, G928, G929, G930, G931, G3600

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors, torture, torturers

### trample

#### Related Ideas:

tread, trod, trodden

#### Definition:

To "tread" on something is to step on it. To "trample" something is to step on it and smash it with the feet.

* An example of "trampling" is the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field.
* In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by treading on grapes, or trampling grapes, to remove the juice from them.
* The term "trample" is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean "destroy" or "defeat" or "humiliate."
* Other ways that "trample" could be translated include "crush with the feet" or "smash down with the feet" or "stomp on and crush" or "smash into the ground."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [humiliate](../other/humiliate.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [rebel](../other/rebel.md), [thresh](../other/thresh.md), [wine](../other/wine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hebrews 10:29
* Psalms 007:5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H947, H1758, H1792, H1869, H3381, H4001, H4823, H5674, H1790, H7429, H7512, H7533, G2662, G3961

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trample, trample over, trampled, tramples, trampling, trampling place, tread, treader, treading down, trod, trodden

### trial

#### Related Ideas:

case, on trial, plead a case

#### Definition:

The term "trial" refers to a situation in which something or someone is "tried" or tested.

* A "trial" can be a judicial hearing in a court in which evidence is given to prove whether the person "on trial" is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
* A "case" is a person's problem or complaint and the reasons he thinks he is right. A judge listens to the case during a trial and decides what should be done.
* To "plead" someone's case is to represent his case in court, telling why the person is right about what happened and about what should be done.

The term "trial" is also used figuratively.

* The term "trial" can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is "testing. "Temptation" is a particular kind of trial.
* Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](../kt/tempt.md), [test](../kt/test.md), [innocent](../kt/innocent.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 04:34
* Ezekiel 21:12-13
* Lamentations 03:58-61
* Proverbs 25:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3198, H4531, H4941, H7378, H7379, G178, G350, G1383, G2919, G3986, G4822

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

case, on trial, plead ... case, trial, trials

### tribe

#### Related Ideas:

tribal

#### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

* People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
* In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
* A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](../other/clan.md), [nation](../other/nation.md), [people group](../other/peoplegroup.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:19
* 2 Kings 17:16-18
* Genesis 25:16
* Genesis 49:17
* Luke 02:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribal, tribe, tribes

### tribute

#### Definition:

The term "tribute" refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

* A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
* In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
* Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "tribute" could be translated as "official gifts" or "special tax" or "required payment."

(See also: [gold](../other/gold.md), [king](../other/king.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [tax](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
* 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 2 Kings 17:03
* Luke 23:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H4864, H6066, H7862, G5411

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribute

### trouble

#### Related Ideas:

troublesome

#### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

* Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
* In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
* The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
* The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
* "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
* The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
* Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](../other/afflict.md), [persecute](../other/persecute.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:18-19
* 2 Chronicles 25:19
* Luke 24:38
* Matthew 24:06
* Matthew 26:36-38

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

### true

#### Related Ideas:

certain, certainly, certainty, indeed, real, sure, surely, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

#### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

* True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
* The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
* To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
* The word "truly" is used to emphasize what the speaker is saying. "Truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly."
* Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
* Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
* God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.
* The word "certainty" refers to a truth about which one can be certain that it is true.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
* Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
* The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
* The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
* To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [fulfill](../kt/fulfill.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [understand](../other/understand.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 1 John 01:5-7
* 1 John 02:08
* 3 John 01:08
* Acts 26:24-26
* Colossians 01:06
* Genesis 47:29-31
* James 01:18
* James 03:14
* James 05:19
* Jeremiah 04:02
* John 01:9
* John 01:16-18
* John 01:51
* John 03:31-33
* Joshua 07:19-21
* Lamentations 05:19-22
* Matthew 08:10
* Matthew 12:17
* Psalm 026:1-3
* Revelation 01:19-20
* Revelation 15:3-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H543, H551, H571, H3330, H5229, H6664, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G281, G803, G804, G1103, G3483, G4103, G4137, G5198, G5199

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

certainly, certainty, for certain, indeed, real, sure, surely, true, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

### trust

#### Related Ideas:

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

#### Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

* Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
* Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
* To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
* A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
* For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
* The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
* The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 1 Timothy 04:09
* Hosea 10:12-13
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Nehemiah 13:13
* Psalm 031:05
* Titus 03:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

### tunic

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

* A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
* Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
* A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
* This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See Also: [robe](../other/robe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 03:21-23
* Isaiah 22:21
* Leviticus 08:12-13
* Luke 03:11
* Mark 06:7-9
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

tunic, tunics

### turn

#### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

#### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

* The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
* To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
* To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
* To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
* To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
* To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
* To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
* To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
* To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
* "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
* An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
* The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
* In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
* The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
* The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
* When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
* Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
* When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
* The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
* The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
* "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
* The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:02
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 11:21
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 01:17
* Malachi 04:06
* Revelation 11:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

### twelve tribes of Israel

#### Related Ideas:

children of Israel, descendants of Israel, people of Israel, twelve tribes, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes of the sons of Israel

#### Definition:

The term "twelve tribes of Israel" refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

* Jacob was Abraham's grandson. God later changed Jacob's name to Israel.
* These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
* The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
* Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
* There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph's two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](../kt/inherit.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md), [tribe](../other/tribe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 26:07
* Genesis 49:28
* Luke 22:28-30
* Matthew 19:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

children of Israel, descendants of Israel, people of Israel, twelve tribes, twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes of the children of Israel, twelve tribes of the sons of Israel

### understand

#### Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

#### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

* The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
* To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
* A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
* While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
* Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
* Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
* "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
* "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
* An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
* To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [know](../other/know.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 34:16-17
* Luke 02:47
* Luke 08:10
* Matthew 13:12
* Matthew 13:14
* Proverbs 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

### unleavened bread

#### Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

* When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
* Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
* Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
* In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](../other/bread.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [feast](../other/feast.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [servant](../other/servant.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [yeast](../other/yeast.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
* 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
* Acts 12:03
* Exodus 23:14-15
* Ezra 06:21-22
* Genesis 19:1-3
* Judges 06:21
* Leviticus 08:1-3
* Luke 22:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4682, G106

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

### vine

#### Related Ideas:

grapevine

#### Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

* In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
* The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
* Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 40:09
* Genesis 49:11
* John 15:01
* Luke 22:18
* Mark 12:03
* Matthew 21:35-37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

grapevine, vine, vines

### vineyard

#### Related Ideas:

vine grower

#### Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

* A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
* God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
* Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
* A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [vine](../other/vine.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 09:20-21
* Luke 13:06
* Luke 20:15
* Matthew 20:02
* Matthew 21:40-41

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

### virgin

#### Related Ideas:

virginity

#### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

* The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
* Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
* Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin.
* If a person has their "virginity", it means they have never had sexual relations.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:15-16
* Luke 01:27
* Luke 01:35
* Matthew 01:23
* Matthew 25:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

virgin, virginity, virgins

### vision

#### Definitions:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

* Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
* God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

#### Translation Suggestion

* The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
* Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](../other/dream.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:10-12
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 10:11
* Acts 12:9-10
* Luke 01:22
* Luke 24:23
* Matthew 17:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

vision, visions

### voice

#### Related Ideas:

rumbling, sound

#### Definition:

The term “voice” refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

* God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
* This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert…."
* To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
* Sometimes the word "voice" isused for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md), [proclaim](../other/preach.md), [splendor](../other/splendor.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 05:36-38
* Luke 01:42
* Luke 09:35
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 12:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

### walk

#### Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

* "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
* To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
* To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
* When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
* To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
* To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
* Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
* The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
* To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
* The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Kings 02:04
* Colossians 02:07
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 17:01
* Isaiah 02:05
* Jeremiah 13:10
* Micah 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

### waste

#### Related Ideas:

lay waste, wasteland

#### Definition:

To "waste" something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely.

* To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
* A "wasteland" is a land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore. It may also be called a "waste."
* Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.
* To "waste away" means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 06:06
* Leviticus 26:39
* Matthew 26:08
* Revelation 18:15-17
* Zechariah 07:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2470, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H4923, H5307, H6313, H7334, H7503, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

laid waste, lays waste, waste, waste away, wasted, wasteland, wastelands, wastes, wastes away, wasting

### watch

#### Related Ideas:

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

#### Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

* To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
* To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
* To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
* A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

* To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
* The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
* Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:06
* Hebrews 13:17
* Jeremiah 31:4-6
* Mark 08:15
* Mark 13:33-34
* Matthew 25:10-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

### water

#### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

* The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
* The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
* To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
* The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
* When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
* Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 08:36-38
* Exodus 14:21
* John 04:10
* John 04:14
* John 04:15
* Matthew 14:28-30

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

### week

#### Related Ideas:

sevens

#### Definition:

The term "week" literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

* In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
* In the Bible, the term "week" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
* The "Festival of Weeks" is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called "Pentecost."
* The word "sevens" can refer to either seven days, seven weeks, or seven years.

(See also: [Pentecost](../kt/pentecost.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:7-8
* Deuteronomy 16:09
* Leviticus 23:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, G4521

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sevens, week, weeks

### well

#### Related Ideas:

cistern

#### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

* A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
* A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
* Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
* Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
* Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
* Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
* Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
* Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
* These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
* The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [strife](../other/strife.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:17
* 2 Samuel 17:17-18
* Genesis 16:14
* Luke 14:4-6
* Numbers 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### wheat

#### Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

* The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
* After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
* After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
* People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](../other/barley.md), [chaff](../other/chaff.md), [grain](../other/grain.md), [seed](../other/seed.md), [thresh](../other/thresh.md), [winnow](../other/winnow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 27:36-38
* Exodus 34:21-22
* John 12:24
* Luke 03:17
* Matthew 03:12
* Matthew 13:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

wheat

### wine

#### Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

* The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
* To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
* In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
* Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
* A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
* Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](../other/grape.md), [vine](../other/vine.md), [vineyard](../other/vineyard.md), [winepress](../other/winepress.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 05:23
* Genesis 09:21
* Genesis 49:12
* John 02:3-5
* John 02:10
* Matthew 09:17
* Matthew 11:18

smashed

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

### winnow

#### Related Ideas:

sift

#### Definition:

The terms "winnow" and "sift" mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words are also used in a figurative sense to refer to separating or dividing people.

* To "winnow" means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
* The word "sift" refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
* In the Old Testament, "winnow" and "sift" are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
* Jesus also used the term "sift" in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
* To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be "shaking" or "fanning." If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [chaff](../other/chaff.md), [grain](../other/grain.md))

#### Bible References:

* Isaiah 21:10
* Luke 22:31
* Matthew 03:12
* Proverbs 20:08
* Ruth 03:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2219, H5130, G4425, G4617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sift, sifting, winnow, winnowed, winnowing, winnows

### wise

#### Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

#### Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

* Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
* People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
* A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
* "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
* In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
* "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
* It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](../other/obey.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:03
* Colossians 03:15-17
* Exodus 31:06
* Genesis 03:06
* Isaiah 19:12
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Matthew 07:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

### woe

#### Definition:

The term "woe" refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

* The expression "woe to" is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
* In several places in the Bible, the word "woe" is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
* A person who says "woe is me" or "woe to me" is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "woe" could also be translated as "great sorrow" or "sadness" or "calamity" or "disaster."
* Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, "How terrible it will be for (name of city)" or "The people in (that city) will be severely punished" or "Those people will suffer greatly."
* The expression, "Woe is me!" or "Woe to me!" could be translated as "How sad I am!" or "I am so sad!" or "How terrible this is for me!"
* The expression "Woe to you" could also be translated as "You will suffer terribly" or "You will experience terrible troubles."

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 13:17-18
* Habakkuk 02:12
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Jeremiah 45:1-3
* Jude 01:9-11
* Luke 06:24
* Luke 17:1-2
* Matthew 23:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

woe

### womb

#### Related Ideas:

pregnant

#### Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

* This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
* A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
* Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
* Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
* A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

#### Picture showing location of a Womb:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/w/Womb.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/w/Womb.png" ></a>

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 25:23
* Genesis 25:24-26
* Genesis 38:27-28
* Genesis 49:25
* Luke 02:21
* Luke 11:27
* Luke 23:29
* Matthew 19:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pregnant, womb, wombs

### word

#### Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

* An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
* Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
* Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
* A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md)

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:02
* Acts 08:04
* Colossians 04:03
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 27:04
* John 01:03
* John 01:14
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 02:08
* Matthew 07:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

### word of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

* The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
* The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
* Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
* In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

* God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
* This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."

It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."

The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."

The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."

When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

"Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."

It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [word](../other/word.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:01
* 1 Kings 13:01
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 08:11
* John 05:39
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 12:24
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 06:07
* Ephesians 01:13
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* James 01:18
* James 02:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

### work

#### Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

* God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
* The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
* The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
* People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
* The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
* When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
* The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
* The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
* The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
* The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Acts 02:8-11
* Daniel 04:37
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Galatians 02:15-16
* James 02:17
* Matthew 16:27-28
* Micah 02:07
* Romans 03:28
* Titus 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

### world

#### Related Ideas:

universe, worldly

#### Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

* In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
* In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
* Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
* The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
* People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
* The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
* Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
* Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
* The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
* In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15
* 1 John 04:05
* 1 John 05:05
* John 01:29
* Matthew 13:36-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

### worship

#### Related Ideas:

worshiper

#### Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

* When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
* Often people bow down when they worship someone.
* Some people worshiped false gods.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
* In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [praise](../other/praise.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* Colossians 02:18-19
* Deuteronomy 29:18
* Exodus 03:11-12
* Luke 04:07
* Matthew 02:02
* Matthew 02:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

### worthy

#### Related Ideas:

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

#### Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

* Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
* To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
* To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
* To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
* To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
* The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
* The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
* The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
* Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
* The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:04
* 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
* Acts 13:25
* Acts 25:25-27
* Acts 26:31
* Colossians 01:9-10
* Jeremiah 08:19
* Mark 01:07
* Matthew 03:10-12
* Philippians 01:25-27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

### wrath

#### Related Ideas:

furious, fury

#### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

* In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
* The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
* God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
* When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](../kt/judge.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Timothy 02:8-10
* Luke 03:7
* Luke 21:23
* Matthew 03:07
* Revelation 14:10
* Romans 01:18
* Romans 05:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H639, H2194, H2195, H2197, H2534, H2740, H3707, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7267, G2205, G2372, G3709

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

furious, fury, wrath

### wrong

#### Related Ideas:

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

#### Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

* Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
* The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."
* The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
* The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
* Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or, "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Exodus 22:21
* Genesis 16:05
* Luke 06:28
* Matthew 20:13-14
* Psalms 071:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

### year

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

* A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
* In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
* In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](../other/biblicaltimemonth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 23:31
* Acts 19:8-10
* Daniel 08:01
* Exodus 12:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years

### yeast

#### Related Ideas:

leaven, unleavened

#### Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

* In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
* In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
* When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.

The ideas of "leaven" and "yeast" can also be used in figurative ways.

* The terms "leaven" and "yeast" are used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
* They can also refer to false teaching which can spread to many people and influences them.
* They are also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

#### Translation Suggestions

* This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
* If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md), [unleavened bread](../kt/unleavenedbread.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:08
* Galatians 05:9-10
* Luke 12:1
* Luke 13:21
* Matthew 13:33
* Matthew 16:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

leaven, leavened, leavens, unleavened, yeast